Explanation of
Important Lessons
(For Every Muslim)

By
Abdul-Aziz bin Abdullah bin Baz

Compiled by
Muhammad bin Ali bin Ibrahim Al-Arfaj

Translated by
Darussalam

Published by
DARUSSALAM
Publishers & Distributors
Riyadh, Saudi Arabia
ALL RIGHTS RESERVED ©

No part of this book may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying and recording or by information storage and retrieval system, without the permission of the publisher.

First Edition: October 2002

Supervised by:

ABDUL MALIK MJAHID

Headquarters:
P.O. Box 22743, Riyadh 11416, KSA
Tel: 03966-1403392/4/064932
Fax: 03966-14021699
E-mail: darussalam@naeoj.com
Website: http://www.darussalam.com
Bookshop: Tel: 03966-1-4614683
Fax: 03966-1-4644945

Branches & Agents:
K.S.A.

● Jeddah: Tel & Fax: 03966-26803752
● AlHabob: Tel: 03966-34993400
Fax: 03966-3-8691651

U.A.E.

● Tel: 03971-6632623 Fax: 6632624

PAKISTAN

● 504,Lower Mall, Lahore
Tel: 0321-42724034 Fax: 7350722
● Rahman Market, Ghazi Street
Udu Bazaar, Lahore
Tel: 0332-4272035 Fax: 7320735

USA

● Houston: P.O. Box: 79194 Tx: 77279
Tel: 011-713-722 0419
Fax: 011-713-722 0431
E-mail: sales@darussalam.com
Website: http://www.darussalam.com
● New York: 572 Atlantic Ave, Brooklyn
New York-11217
Tel: 011-718 662 9225

UK

● London: Darussalam International
Publications Ltd., 226 High Street,
Walhamstow, London E17 7JH UK
Tel: 0208-230 6266

Mobile: 0044-794 730 6706
Fax: 0044-208 221 7645

● Darussalam International Publications
Limited, Regent Park Mosque,
145 Park Road, London NW8 7RG,
Tel: 0208-207 7243 5335

FRANCE

● Editions & Librairie Essalam
135, Boulevard Malesherbes 75011
Paris (France)
Tel: 01 43 381966/4439 Fax: 01 43574438
Website: http://www.essalam.com
E-mail: essalam@essalam.com

AUSTRALIA

● Lakemba NSW 1208, Ground Floor
165-171, Haldon St.
Tel: (02) 9758 4040 Fax 9758 4030

MALAYSIA

● E.S.D. BOOKS SDN BHD,
321 B 3rd Floor, Suria KLCC,
Kuala Lumpur City Center 50088
Tel: 0063-2-63433 Fax: 639 72023

SINGAPORE

● Muslim Converts Association of Singapore
Singapore 424484
Tel: 665-440 6324, 348 6344
Fax: 440 6724

SRI LANKA

● Darul Ilm, 6, Nimal Road, Colombo-4
Tel: 0094-1-389 038 Fax 0094-722433

KUWAIT

● Islamic Presentation Committee
Enlightenment Book Shop, P.O. Box: 1613
State 13017 Kuwait
Tel: 00965-244 7532 Fax: 240 0057
## Contents

Preface To The First Edition ................................................................. 7  
Important Points To Consider Before Reading The Book .................. 9  
Foreword .......................................................................................... 12  
Introduction .................................................................................... 15  

### Lesson One

*Surat Al-Fatihah And Other Short Surahs* .......................................... 17  
*Surat Al-Fatihah* .......................................................................... 20  
*Surat Az-Za‘zarah* ....................................................................... 26  
*Surat Al-Adiyat* .......................................................................... 32  
*Surat Al-Qari‘ab* ......................................................................... 36  
*Surat Al-Takathur* ....................................................................... 40  
*Surat Al-Asr* ................................................................................ 46  
*Surat Al-Humazah* ................................................................. 50  
*Surat Al-Fil* .................................................................................. 54  
*Surah Quraish* ........................................................................... 57  
*Surat Al-Ma‘un* .......................................................................... 62  
*Surat Al-Ka‘bah* ......................................................................... 65  
*Surat Al-Kafirun* ........................................................................ 68  
*Surat An-Nasr* ........................................................................... 71  
*Surat Al-Masad* .......................................................................... 76  
*Surat Al-Ikhlas* .......................................................................... 80  
*Surat Al-Falaq* ........................................................................... 84  
*Surat An-Nasr* ........................................................................... 89  

### Lesson Two

The Pillars Of Islam ........................................................................ 93  

### Lesson Three

The Pillars And Branches of Faith .................................................. 155  

### Lesson Four

The Categories Of Tawhid And Shirk ............................................. 207  

### Lesson Five

*Ilhsan* ......................................................................................... 232  
The Levels Of *Ilhsan* .................................................................. 234  

### Lesson Six

The Conditions For Prayer ................................................................ 236
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lesson</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Seven</td>
<td>The Pillars (<em>Arkan</em>) of Prayer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eight</td>
<td>The Obligatory Elements of Prayer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nine</td>
<td>An Explanation of the <em>Tashabbud</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ten</td>
<td>The <em>Sunan</em> Elements of Prayer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Sajdah As-Salah</em>: The Prostration for Forgetfulness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Actions That Are Disliked During the Prayer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eleven</td>
<td>Actions That Nullify One’s Prayer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Twelve</td>
<td>The Conditions of <em>Wuḍūʿ</em> (Islamic Ablution)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thirteen</td>
<td>Elements That Are Obligatory (<em>Fard</em>) in the <em>Wuḍūʿ</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fourteen</td>
<td>Actions That Nullify One’s Ablution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fifteen</td>
<td>Every Muslim Must Adorn Himself with Manners That Are Legislated By Islam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sixteen</td>
<td>Taking on Islamic Manners</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seventeen</td>
<td>A Warning Against <em>Shirk</em> (Associating partners with Allāh) and Different Kinds of Sins</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eighteen</td>
<td>Preparing the Dead Person’s Body, Praying Over Him, and Burying Him</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Study Questions: 384
Preface To The First Edition

Indeed, all praise is for Allāh, we praise Him, repent to Him, and seek His forgiveness and help. We seek refuge in Allāh from the evil of our own selves and our wicked deeds. Whomsoever Allāh guides, none can lead astray; and whomsoever Allāh leaves astray, none can guide. And I bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped except Allāh alone, and He has no partner; and I bear witness that our Prophet Muhammad is His servant and Messenger. May Allāh, send peace and blessings upon him, his family and his Companions until the Day of Judgement.

Indeed Allāh Almighty has protected this religion and raised its status among the nations, sending to the world the final Messenger, Muhammad ﷺ, and with him the final and most complete religion — as Allāh Almighty says:

الَّاتِي أَنْعُمْتَ عَلَيْهِمْ بِأَمْثَالَكُم مِّنَ الْإِسْلَامِ وَغَدَّتْ عَلَيْهِمْ ٱلْيَمَنَّ

This day, I have perfected your religion for you, completed My Favor upon you, and have chosen for you Islam as your religion.\[^{1}\]

Allāh Almighty has made the scholars inheritors of the Prophets, they explain to the people their religious duties and they enlighten them, so that their worship of Allāh Almighty is based on knowledge and insight. One such scholar, whom the Muslims recently lost, is the noble Shaikh and Imam, ‘Abdul-‘Aziz bin ‘Abdullah bin Baz — may Allāh Almighty have mercy on him, for he spent his life in knowledge, in teaching, in passing scholarly judgements and rulings. But over and above his knowledge, he was a man who was righteous and pious; he sought little from this world, and his manners were truly noble. From the many works in which the Shaikh served the different branches of Islamic knowledge — *Aqidah, Fiqh, Hadith, Dar’ah*, and so on — is this very important work, *Important Lessons For Every Muslim*,\[^{2}\] a book that is much needed at the present time.

\[^{1}\text{(Al-} Ma‘ālidah 5:3)\]

\[^{2}\text{A translation of the text has been published by Darussalam.}\]
because so many Muslims lack a grasp on the fundamentals of the 
religion, in terms of belief, worship, and manners.

Seeking reward, seeking to benefit others, and seeking to apply the 
Hadith:

"خَيرُ النَّاسِ آتِمُهُمْ لِلَّدُنْسِيَّةِ"

The best of people is he who benefits others most.

I decided to explain this important book, expanding on the clear 
concepts and rules mentioned by the Shaikh. In explaining and 
expanding on the Shaikh’s words, I relied heavily, first upon Allâh 
Almighty, and then upon the many other works of the Shaikh 
himself.

I chose to explain the copy printed by the Ministry of Islamic Affairs,
Endowments, Preaching and Guidance; it is the last edition that was 
printed during the life of the Shaikh — may Allâh have mercy upon 
him. I chose it because it is the best copy in terms of organization 
and editing; moreover, it has an additional section on the topic of 
Ihsan.

To further help and encourage the reader — whether he is a student, 
teacher, caller to Islam, male, or female — I inserted questions for 
each lesson (at the end of the book), to help the student both 
understand and digest the material.

I ask Allâh Almighty by His Beautiful Names and Most High Attributes 
to rectify our intentions and to make our children righteous, and to 
grant us sincerity in speech and in deed; indeed, He is the One upon 
Whom we rely, and He is Most Capable of answering our prayers.

And the last of our supplications is that all praise is due to Allâh, the 
Lord of all that exists.

Muhammad bin ʿAli Al-ʿArafaj

(May Allâh forgive him, his parents, and all Muslims)
Important Points To Consider
Before Reading The Book

1. We invite fathers and mothers who are in their old age, especially those who didn’t have the opportunity to learn while they were young, to strive to correct their worship, so that by the Will of Allâh Almighty, they can have a good ending. When we say that they should correct their worship, we mean that they should worship Allâh Almighty based on correct knowledge. There are some Muslims, for example, who cannot properly recite Al-Fatihah, yet it is one of the pillars of prayer. The way to correct that problem is to seek guidance from those who are studying, whether it be from our own children or from students of knowledge, for Allâh Almighty says:

فَقَلَلْ أَحَدُ الْذِرْكَرِينَ إِنَّ كُلُّ مَذَةٍ لَا تَعْمَلُونَ

So, ask of those who know the Scripture (learned men of the Tawrah and the Injil), if you know not.\(^1\)

Beware, brother Muslim, and do not allow Iblis to make you too proud to learn from those who are younger than you. The noble Companions, may Allâh be pleased with them, learned their religion from the Prophet ﷺ, and some of them were his elder relatives, and others though not relatives, were in their old age.

2. We invite the youth who have learned the precepts of their religion to correct the mistakes of their relatives, whether they are, for instance, their parents, grandfathers, or brothers. The youth should not be shy in this regard, nor should they disparage themselves, thinking they are too young to teach. If the youth have knowledge, they must teach their relatives, but with gentleness, manners, and wisdom, applying the saying of the Prophet ﷺ,

إِنَّ اللَّهَ رَحِيمٌ يُحِبُّ الرَّفِّيقَ فِي الأَمْرِ كَأَمْوَالِ وَيُعْطِي عَلَى الرَّفِّيقِ مَا لَا يُعْطِي عَلَى الْعَلَّافِ

Indeed Allâh is Most Gentle and He loves gentleness in all matters, and He gives for gentleness that which He doesn’t

\(^1\) (An-Nâabl 16:43)
give for harshness.

Some historians related that once Al-Hasan and Al-Husain, may Allah be pleased with them, saw an old man who was performing ablution incorrectly. They wanted to teach him in a gentle and kind way, so they approached him and said, “O uncle, we disagree about which of us performs ablution the best, and we want you to judge between us.” Each of them took his turn in performing ablution before the man, and they said, “Rule between us.” He said, “Indeed you have both done well, may Allah bless the two of you (i.e. he realized that his own ablution was not done properly).” They said, “(We are) Al-Hasan and Al-Husain, the sons of Ali bin Abi Talib.” He hugged them both and said admiringly, “Children, who take after their father.”

Some historians related that on the day ‘Umar bin ‘Abdul-‘Aziz, may Allah be pleased with him, assumed the duties of the Khilafah, after burying Sulaiman bin ‘Abdul-Malik (the previous Khilafah), he began to work immediately. He didn’t sleep that night; instead, he stayed up to return important wealth to the Muslim treasury, to set free some slaves so that they could return to their families, and to take care of other important matters that related to the welfare of the Muslims. He continued working until Zubr the following day. He prayed and then went out in search for a place to take a short afternoon nap. His son, ‘Abdul-Malik, met him and said, “O leader of the believers, what are you intending to do?” He answered, “My son, I want to take a nap.” “To take a nap without ruling between people, and returning the rights to their proper owners?” He said, “My son, I stayed up all night in the affairs of your uncle, Sulaiman. Even if I sleep, I will wake up and rule between people to return the rights to their proper owners.” ‘Abdul-Malik said, “O leader of the believers, who can guarantee for you that you will wake up and return them (i.e. the rights).” ‘Umar said, “My son, come close.” When he came close, his father took hold of him, kissed him between the eyes and said, “All praise is for Allah, who has brought from my loins someone to help me in my religion.” He went to work, without taking a nap or resting.

Notice — may Allah have mercy on you — how ‘Abdul-Malik was not shy to advise his father, and how ‘Umar — may Allah have mercy on him — was not too proud to take advice, even though he was, in this
instance, both *Khalifah* and father.

3. Know that you must learn all that Allâh Almighty has made obligatory upon you in terms of your religious duties; give time to those duties just as you give time — perhaps a great portion of your time — to your worldly affairs.

May Allâh grant success to all, with that which He loves and is pleased with.
Foreword

1) Islam is the religion that Allâh Almighty created people upon, it is the religion that the Prophets and Messengers called to. Every Prophet invited his people to become Muslims, as Allâh Almighty said in His Magnificent Book regarding the father of Prophets and the Khabîlî of the Most Merciful, Ibrahîm, peace be upon him:

وَأَوْحَىٰ عَلَىٰ بُنيَّتِهِ إِنَّكُم مِّلَٰلٰعِينَ إِلَّا مِن سِّمَاتِنَا ۚ وَأَفْقَدْ أَصَفَّتْنَاهُ فِي الدُّنْيَا وَإِذْ

in the other religion the Children offelden. If you say, "Submit (i.e. be Muslim)." He said, "I have submitted myself (as a Muslim) to the Lord of all that exists." And this (submission to Allâh Almighty, Islam) was enjoined by Ibrahîm upon his sons and by Yâ’qîb, (saying), "O my sons! Allâh Almighty has chosen for you the (true) religion, then die not except as Muslims"[1]

2) At the time when Allâh Almighty sent His Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, with this great religion, the Jews and the Christians were in a state of ignorance and misguidance after having distorted and corrupted the Tawrâh and the Injîl. Their desires led them to join the ranks of the disbelieving Quraish, and they too attacked Muhammad ﷺ and his mission, especially the Jews, even though they knew with certainty — from their own Scriptures — that they were supposed to believe in and follow the way of the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ:

فَأَلَّهُمْ مَا نُزِّلَتِهِمُ الْكِتَابُ يُعْرَفُونَ كَمَا يُدْعَوْنَ إِنَّا هُمُ الْمُعْلُونُ الْأَخْلَصُ

Those to whom We gave the Scripture, recognize him as they recognize their sons. But verily a party of them conceal the

[1] (Al-Baqarah 2:130-132)
truth while they know it.\footnote{\textit{Al-Baqarah} 2:146}

3. As soon as our Prophet, Muhammad ﷺ, established himself in Al-Madinah, he sent messengers to the kings of the earth at that time, inviting them to the religion of Allah Almighty, to remove them from the shadows of darkness to the light. When Rustum, the leader of Faris (Persia), asked one such messenger, Rabii\text{'} bin \textquote{Amir}, may Allah be pleased with him, “What are you (people)?” Rabii answered in a few words, “We are a people whom Allah has sent, to take whom He wishes from people away from the worship of creatures to the worship of Allah alone, from the narrowness of this world to the spaciousness (and comfort) of this world and the Hereafter, and from the injustice of religions to the justness of Islam.”

4. This final message came to put matters in their rightful place and to direct people in the right direction; singling out Allah, believing in His Prophets and Messengers, having faith in them, and inviting to their message of singling out Allah and submitting oneself entirely to Him.

5. The merits of the religion of Islam are many and cannot be counted. It is the religion of Allah Almighty, Who knows all things. His is the complete wisdom and irrefutable proofs. He is the All-Wise, the All-Knowing - in all that He willed and decreed, and in all that He legislated for His creatures. Therefore there is no matter that is good except that our Messenger ﷺ invited this nation to it, and there is no evil thing, except that he ﷺ has warned us against it. In his \textit{Sa\text{'}ebah}, Muslim recorded that ‘Abdullah bin ‘Amr bin Al\text{'}Aas narrated from the Prophet ﷺ:

\begin{quote}
ما بعث الله من نبي إلا كان تعلمًا على الله علامةً على سبيله، لا يعلمه علامةً على سبيلٍ
ويليموه على سبيلهم
\end{quote}

Allah never sent a Prophet except that it was his duty to guide his nation to what he knew was good for them and to warn them against what he knew was evil for them.

In \textit{Musnad Ahmad}, with an authentic chain of narration, it is recorded that Abu Hurairah, may Allah be pleased with him, narrated that the Prophet ﷺ said:

\footnote{\textit{Al-Baqarah} 2:146}
Indeed I have been sent only to complete good manners.

Al-Hafiz Al-Khara’iti recorded it with a good ḥadīth chain, but with the wording:

"إِنَّمَا بَعْثَنِيُّ لَأَنْقِمَ صَلَاتٍ الْأَخْلَاقِ"

Indeed I have been sent only to complete the most noble of manners.

6. Indeed what we see today, that multitudes of people are entering the fold of Islam — people who were previously disbelievers, polytheists, People of the Book, both Jews and Christians — is a clear proof that other religions and philosophies have utterly failed to give peace, comfort, and happiness to people. Muslims then, and especially the callers, must be active among those nations in calling them to the religion of Allah. But before we do that, we must not forget to exemplify Islam ourselves, in our knowledge and in our behavior, for human beings are in dire need of someone to remove them from the shadows of darkness to the light, by the Will of Allah; Allah Almighty says:

"وَمَنْ أَحْسَنَ فَوَلَّهُ مَنْ دَعَاهُ إِلَى اللَّهِ وَعَمِلَ صَالِحًا وَقَالَ إِنِّي مِنَ الْمُتَّقِينَ" (41:33)

...and who is better in speech than he who invites men to Allah, and does righteous deeds and says: "I am one of the Muslims."[1]

I ask Allah to make us from those who call to good and to make us knowledgeable about our religion, just as I ask Him to grant us success when we are calling others to Him. Indeed He is able to grant that and He is All-Powerful over that. May Allah send peace and blessings upon Muhammad, his family and his Companions.[2]

---

[1] Fussilat 41:33
Introduction

All praise is due to Allâh, Lord of all that exists; the successful ending is for those who have Taqwa. May Allâh send peace and blessings upon His servant and Messenger, our Prophet, Muhammad, upon his family and upon all of his Companions.

The following is a short work to explain what every Muslim needs to know about the religion of Islam. I called it, “Important Lessons For Every Muslim.” I ask Allâh to cause the Muslims to benefit from it, and that He accept it from me. Indeed, He is Most Generous.

‘Abdul‘Aziz bin ‘Abdullah bin Baz
Explanation of Important Lessons
Lesson One

**Surat Al-Fatihah And Other Short Surahs**

One must learn *Surat Al-Fatihah* and whatever possible from the other short *Surahs*; from *Surat Az-Zalzalah* to *Surat An-Nas*, reciting them correctly; memorizing them, and their explanations which are required for one to understand.

---

أَعُوذ بِاللَّهِ مِنَ السَّيِّئِينَ الرَّجُم

**The Explanation of Al-Ist’athab**

That is to say: *’A’oothu billahi minash-Shaitaanir-Rjeem* (I seek refuge in Allâh from the accursed Shaitan).

(أَعُوذ) *’A’oothu*: I seek refuge, protection, and fortification in You, O Allâh.

(بَالِهِ) *Billahi*: The Lord of all things; the true God Who is worshipped alone, and He has no partner.

(السَّيِّئِينَ) *Ash-Shaitaan*: Otherwise known as Iblis or the Devil, may Allâh’s curse be upon him.

(الرَّجُم) *Ar-Rjeem*: The one who is stoned, repelled, and banished - banished from all mercy and good; he has no power to harm us, neither in our worldly affairs nor in our religion.

**The Meaning of Al-Ist’athab**

I seek refuge and fortification from Allâh my Lord, against Shaitan (Satan) the accursed, that he confuse me while I recite, or that he should make me go astray, to destruction and misery.

When the Prophet ﷺ would stand up at night to pray, he would
begin his prayer with the Takbir, then say:

أَعُوذُ بِاللهِ السَّمِيعِ العَلِيمِ مِنِ النَّارِ وَالسَّطَانِ الرَّجِيمِ

I take refuge with Allâh, the All-Hearing, the All-Knowing, from the accursed Shaitan — from his pride, his poetry, and his madness. (It was recorded by the Sunan Compilers)

The Ruling On Al-Ist'âbah

Whenever one is about to recite the Qur'an — whether it is a chapter or more — it is Sunnah to first say, "I seek refuge in Allâh from the accursed Shaitan." It is also recommended to say this phrase when one is angry or when one has evil thoughts.

The Explanation of Al-Basmalah

That is to say:

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ الرَّحْمَٰنِ الرَّحِيمِ

Bismillaahir Rahmaanir Rabeem (In the Name of Allâh, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful).

The Meaning of Al-Basmalah

Before doing anything, I begin by naming and remembering Allâh Almighty, seeking His help in everything, asking Him alone for support in all of my affairs. Indeed, He is the Lord, the One worshipped, His favors are many and great, His generosity is vast, and His mercy encompasses all creatures.

The Exalted Word (âlî) Allâh: The Possessor of divinity and the right to be worshipped over all creatures. It is the Name known and recognized to refer to the Lord, Glorious and Most High.

(الرحمن) Ar-Rahmaan (The Most Beneficent): This is one of Allâh's Names; it is derived from Ar-Rahmah, or mercy, and it signifies its vastness. This name signifies a mercy that embraces all of creation, for Allâh Almighty creates them and provides for them; that is from the completeness of His favors, which is why it is said, "O Rabbaan over this world."

(الرحيم) Ar-Rabeem (The Most Merciful): This is also one of Allâh's Names, and it too is derived from Ar-Rahmah (mercy), signifying the
greatness of His mercy, but this time specifically for the believers in the Hereafter. Allāh Almighty says:

```
وَسَيْلَوْاٰ رَبَّهُمْ رَحِيمًاُ
```

And He is Ever Most Merciful to the believers.[1]

And that is why it is said, “O Raheem of the Hereafter.”

**The Ruling On Al-Basmalah**

It is legislated for the worshipper, or one asking, to say, “In the Name of Allāh, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful,” with his recitation of every *Surah* from the Book of Allāh Almighty except for *Surat Al-Tawbah*, in which case it is not recited. In the obligatory *Salat* one says it silently, even during the audible prayers. It is Sunnah for the worshipper to say *Bismillah* when eating and drinking, wearing clothing, entering and exiting the *Majāz*, sitting on a mount, and for every important matter. Just as it is obligatory for him to say *Bismillah* and *Allāhu Akbar* when slaughtering (a sheep) or sacrificing a camel.

**Methodology In Explaining The Selected Surahs**

The following shall be the methodology in explaining the short *Surahs* that were chosen:

- The name of the *Surah*
- The subject of the *Surah*
- Its relation to what is before it
- Vocabulary
- To summarize the meaning
- The lessons from the *Surah*

---

[1] (Al-Ahzab 33:43)
**Surat Al-Fatihah**

1. In the Name of Allāh, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful. 2. All the praise is due to Allāh, the Lord of Al-‘Alamin. 3. The Most Beneficent and the Most Merciful. 4. The only Owner (and the Only Ruling Judge) of the Day of Reckoning (i.e. the Day of Resurrection). 5. You (alone) we worship and You (alone) we ask for help (for each and everything). 6. Guide us to the straight path, 7. The way of those on whom You have bestowed Your grace, not the way of those who went astray.

**The Names Of This Surah**

1) The Opening Chapter (Fatihatul-Kitab)
2) The Mother of the Book (Ummul-Kitab)
3) The Mother of the Qur‘an (Ummul-Qur‘an)
4) The Seven Oft-Recited and the Magnificent Qur‘an (As-Sab‘ul-Mathi‘uwal-Qur‘anul-Azim)
5) The Praise (Al-‘Hamd), because it begins with the mention of praise.
6) The Prayer (As-Salat), because (the Prophet ﷺ mentioned that Allāh Almighty said):
Lesson One

“فَسَمَّتِ السَّلَاتَ نِئْبَ وَبَنِيٌّ عَلِيٍّ بِعَصَمٍ” [رواه مسلم]

“I have divided the Salat into two halves between Me and My servant.” (Reported by Muslim)

7) The Cure (Asb-Sha’fa)
8) The Incantation (ArRuqyah)
9) The Protection Al-Waqyab

The Virtues Of Surat Al-Fatihah

1) Surat Al-Fatihah is the greatest Surah of the Qur’an. The Prophet ﷺ said to Abu Sa’id bin Al-Muralla:

«أَعْلَمْكُمُ أَعْلَمَ مِنْ شَأْنِ الدُّنْيَا كَلِئْ أَنْ نُحْلِفُ مِنْ الْمَسْجِدِ»

I will teach you the greatest Surah of the Qur’an before you leave the Masjid.

He then said to him:

«الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ رَبِّ الْكُلِّيِّ»

All praise is for Allah, Lord of all that exists.

2) In the story of the scorpion sting, which was recorded by Abu Bakr, it implies that it is a sufficient cure, and that it may be used for Ruqyah.

3) To recite this chapter is one of the pillars of prayer: for both the Imam and the one who prays alone; therefore one’s prayer is incomplete without it. As for the one who prays behind the Imam, reciting it is obligatory. Abu Hurairah narrated that the Prophet ﷺ said:

«فَسَلَّمَ صَلَاةُ اللهِ عَلَيْهِ وُرُقَّاً أَبَاهُ النَّبِيِّ ﷺ مَا نُؤْمِنُ بِالْكُلِّيِّ خَانَجَةٌ - تَلَاءَا - عَرْبِ نَعْمَانٍ [رواه مسلم]»

Whoever performs Salat, without reciting Unmuk-Qur’an in it, then it is insufficient (he said it three times), it is not complete. (It was recorded by Muslim)

The Meanings Of Its Words

(الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ) Al-Hamdu illah: Al-Hand is praising Allah with His perfect Attributes, loving Him, glorifying Him, and exalting Him.
(Rabbil-Aalameen) *Ar-Rabb* is the worshipped King, the Disposer of affairs. He is the Educator of all the worlds with all types of education. He is the One Who created them, provides for them, and blesses them with blessings that are apparent as well as hidden.

(Aalameen) *Ar-Alameen* All that exists other than Allah Almighty.

(Rahmaan) *Ar-Rahmaan* *Ar-Rahmeen*: Two of Allah’s Names that indicate that He is the Possessor of the vast magnificent mercy that reaches everything, and embraces every creature. He is *Ar-Rahmaan*, with a mercy that is for all of His creation in this world, *Ar-Rahmeen*, with a special mercy for the believers. Allah Almighty says:

> وَسَيْتُ لِلْمَلَائِكَةِ وَالْمَلَكِينَ رَسُولًا١<ref>
>
> And He is Ever Most Merciful to the believers.\(^{[1]}\)

And He said:

> فَأَذَّنْ فِي ذِي الْخَيْرِ أَوْ اذْكُرْ أَرْحَمَيْكَ إِنَّمَا أَذَّنْتُ لِلْمَلَائِكَةِ لِيُحْكُمَ عَلَيْهِمْ الْأَمْسِيَاتُ وَالْفَضْلُۢ<ref>
>
> Say: “Invoke Allah or invoke the Most Beneficent (Allah), by whatever name you invoke Him (it is the same), for to Him belong the Best Names.”\(^{[2]}\)

(Yaumul Deen) *Maaliki* *Yaumul Deen*: The One Who alone has control on the Day of Recompense and Reward, the Day when everyone is rewarded for his deeds - if good, then the recompense is good, and if evil, then the recompense is the same, except for he whom Allah Almighty pardons. He said:

> وَمَا أَذَكَّرْكَ مَعَ الْأَلْبَيْنِ إِنَّمَا أَذَكَّرْتُكَ مَعَ الْأَلْبَيْنِ يَتَّقُونَ نَفْسَ أَنفُسَهُمَا وَالأَمَرُ يَوجَهُ إِلَيْهِۢ<ref>
>
> And what will make you know what the Day of Recompense is? Again, what will make you know what the Day of Recompense is? (It will be) the Day when no person shall have power (to do) anything for another, and the Decision, that Day, will be

\(^{[1]}\) (Al-Alzab 33:43)

\(^{[2]}\) (Al-Isra’ 17:110)
(wholly) with Allâh.\(^1\)

\(\text{Al-Maalik: He is the One Who is attributed the most perfect attributes of majesty by which the title King is desired. It indicates that He orders and forbids, rewards and punishes, dispensing with all matters in the higher and lower worlds with complete control, with the rulings of Preordainment, of legislation, and of reward. This is why He mentioned His Sovereignty over the Day of Recompense, which is the Day of Resurrection, for on that Day, Allâh Almighty will recompense the creatures according to their deeds and Will give them a just recompense.}\)

\(\text{Lyâaaka Na'budu wa Lyâaaka Nastae'en:} \) “You (alone we worship, and You (alone we ask for help. We worship none other than You, and we seek help from none other than You when asking, and we rely upon none other than You.” This phrase signifies a covenant between the worshipper and his Lord - that the worshipper will worship Him alone and seek help from Him alone.

\(\text{Al-Ibaadah (worship) is a comprehensive term for all that Allâh loves and is pleased with; it includes sayings and deeds that are both apparent and hidden.}\)

\(\text{Ihânas-Straatal-Mustaâqeen: Guide us, lead us, and keep us on the straight path, the path in which there is no crookedness, that is knowledge and application of the truth, both of which lead to Allâh, His Paradise, and His Generosity.}\)

\(\text{Straatal-Latheena An'amta 'Alaibim: i.e., that path of those You have blessed with guidance and facilitation to faith and righteousness. These are the Prophets, the truthful believers, the martyrs, and the righteous.}\)

\(\text{Ghaairîq-Maghâboobi 'Alaibim waalaab-Dbaaeeen: They are the ones who recognized the truth but abandoned it: the Jews and those like them.}\)

Following other than the path of the misguided ones, refers to those who have strayed from the truth, such as the Christians and those who are like them that have forsaken knowledge: they wander in

\(^1\text{(Al-Jîhâd 82:17-19)}\)
their misguidance without being guided to the truth.

Both in and outside of the prayer, when you finish reciting Surah, it is recommended for you to say, “Aameen,” which means: “O Allah, answer us.” The Prophet ḥ would say, “Aameen,” after reciting this Surah, and he ordered us to do so as well. It is confirmed from the Prophet ḥ that Surat Al-Fatiha is the greatest chapter of the Qur’ān and that there is no prayer for the one who doesn’t recite it.

Some Benefits That Can Be Derived From
Surat Al-Fatiha

1) The recitation of Al-Fatiha is one of the pillars of prayer, for the Prophet ḥ said:

«لا صلاته بينَيَّ وَمُعَاذَةُ نَارَةُ الكُبَارِ»

There is no prayer for he who doesn’t recite the Opening of the Book.

This applies to both the Imam and the one who prays alone.

2) As for the one who follows an Imam during prayer, it is obligatory according to the correct opinion, in both the quiet and audible prayers.

3) This chapter embraces those principles that necessitate faith in Allah’s perfect Names and exalted Attributes, principles that the Imams and the early generations of Islam upheld. They would affirm for Allah a quality that He affirmed for Himself or that His Messenger ḥ affirmed - without distorting the meaning of that Name, without comparing any of Allah’s Qualities with those of creation, without likening them to those of His creation, and without trying to explain the reality of those qualities. They believed, for example, that Allah is Rahman and Raheem, the Possessor of mercy that these Names describe; that He is the All-Knowing, the Possessor of knowledge, Who knows all things; that He is All-Capable, the Possessor of ability Who is able to do all things.

4) It includes the meaning of worship, which is comprehensive. It signifies all that Allah loves and is pleased with, from sayings and deeds, both apparent and hidden.

5) The Muslim must remember the Day of Recompense, the Day of
accountability and reward. When one remembers that Day, one will be better able to perform the obligatory deeds and avoid unlawful deeds.

6) When *Shirk* is mixed with worship, the act of worship becomes nullified.

7) It includes the three categories of *Taubid*:
   i) *Taubid An-Rububiyyah* (Lordship), which is taken from Allah's saying, "the Lord of all that exists."
   ii) *Taubid A'llahiyab*, which means to single out Allah for worship; and it is inferred from the word "Allah" and from, "You alone do we worship and from You alone do we ask for help."
   iii) *Taubid Al-Asma' u-as-Sifat*, which means to affirm those perfect Qualities of Allah that He affirmed for Himself, or that the Prophet affirmed for Him. And this is indicated by the statement, "All praise is for Allah."

8) “Guide us to the straight path,” affirms Prophethood.

9) “Owner of the Day of Recompense,” affirms that we will be punished or rewarded according to our deeds.

10) And “Guide us to the straight path,” includes an affirmation of the Divine Will and a refutation of the people of innovation and misguidance, since it is a recognition of the truth and acting upon it.

11) “You (alone) we worship and (from) You (alone) we ask for help,” clearly shows that worship must be dedicated purely and sincerely for Allah alone.\(^{[1]}\)

\(^{[1]}\) This was taken from *Al-'Abkamul-Mu'immab 'Alad-Durusul-Mu'immab* by 'Abdul-'Aziz Al-Fayiz.
Surat Az-Zalzalah

In the Name of Allāh, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful

1. When the earth is shaken with its (jina) earthquake. 2. And when the earth throws out its burdens. 3. And man will say: “What is the matter with it?” 4. That Day it will declare its information (about all what haspened over it of good or of evil). 5. Because your Lord has inspired it. 6. That day mankind will proceed in scattered groups that they may be shown their deeds. 7. So whosoever does good equal to the weight of an atom (or a small atom) shall see it. 8. And whosoever does evil equal to the weight of an atom (or a small atom), shall see it.

Its Name

It is called Az-Zalzalah, or Az-Zilzal (The Earthquake) because it begins by informing us about the fierce earthquake that will take place just prior to the Day of Judgement.

The Subject Matter Of This Surah

A description of the Day of Judgement and the recompense for good and evil.
Its Relation to What is Before It
Allâh Almighty described in the previous Surah • Al Ba‘iyyinah • the warning to the disbeliever and the promise for the believer, the fire of Hell for the former and Paradise for the latter. Here Allâh Almighty clarifies the time for giving those rewards and mentions what will happen just prior to that time: that there will be an earthquake and the earth will throw out its burdens. And Allâh Almighty informs us that we will be rewarded for a deed even if it is the size of the smallest thing.

The Virtues Of This Surah
At-Tirmithi recorded a Hadîth - and he said it was Hasan - from Anas bin Malik, that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said that this Surah is equivalent to one-fourth of the Qur’an.

In What Context Was This Surah Revealed
Since the disbelievers would frequently ask about the time of the Hour and the Day of Reckoning, Allâh Almighty here mentions not the exact time, but some of the signs of its coming, letting them know that the knowledge of when that time will arrive is with Allâh Almighty alone. Therefore there is no way for us to specify when that time will come.

The Meanings Of Its Words
Ibn 'Abbas, may Allâh be pleased with them, said:
(يَا تَلَّى الْأَلْلَةِ الْفَوْقَانِ) Ihaa Zulzilatiil-Arabu-Zilzaalabaâa: The shaking of the bottom of the earth. Allâh Almighty informs us, about the Day of Judgement, and that the earth will shake and give a violent jolt, causing all buildings and structures to fall; the mountains will be crushed and hills will be levelled; the earth will become like a level floor; with no crookedness in it.
(وَأَزُوَّرَتْ الأَلْلَهُ الْأَرْضَ الْعَلَّامِ) Wa Akhrjult-Arabu Albaalaba: meaning the earth will throw out its treasures and the dead.
(وَقَالَ الْإِنسَانُ) Wa Qaalul-Insaanu: (When he sees the enormous matters that are happening.)
(مَا لَكِ) Ma labaa: Man will say: “What is happening to it?”
(وَأَيْنَ هُدِيْتُ أَنْتُمْ؟) Yaumaitiln Tubaaddithu Akbaaraaba: The earth
will bear witness to what mankind perpetrated over it, both the
good and bad of it. The earth is one of the many witnesses that
will give testimony regarding the deeds of Allâh’s creatures. Abu
Huraiyah, may Allâh be pleased with him, related that the Prophet
recited:

«إِنَّهُمْ لَا يَحْمِلُونَ عَنْهَا»

That Day it will declare its information.[1]

He said:

«أَنْتُونَ ما أَخْبَرْتُمُوهُ؟»

Do you know what its information is?
The Companions said, “Allâh and His Messenger know best.” He said:

إِنَّهُمْ لَا يَحْمِلُونَ عَنْهَا أَنْ يُنَبِّئُوهُمْ عَلَى كُلِّ عَدْلِ أَوْ أَمَامٍ يُبَيِّنُ عَمَلٌ عَلَى شَهَادَةٍ، نَفْوَتُ

Its news is that it will give testimony about the deeds performed over it by every male and female slave (of Allâh).

It will say, ‘Such and such person performed such and such deeds on such and such day’: that will be its information.

And about Allâh’s saying:

(2) Bianna Rabbaka Au芭 Labaa: Because your Lord has inspired it.[2]

Ibn ‘Abbas, may Allâh be pleased with them, said, “Its Lord will say, ‘Speak,’ and it will speak.” Mujahid, may Allâh have mercy upon him, said, “It means that He orders it to speak of those deeds that were performed over it, and it will not disobey His Order.”

(3) Yauma’ithbin Yasdurun-Naasu Ashtaatan: It is about the Resurrection, Ashtaat means divided groups, some miserable and some happy, some ordered to go to Paradise and others ordered to go to the Fire.

(4) Li Yuna’ A’maalubum: So that Allâh Almighty may

[1] (Âs-Zalsalâh 99:4)
[2] (Âs-Zalsalâh 99:5)
show them their good and bad deeds, and the rewards they receive for them.

(Faman Ya‘mal Mubahala Tharratin Khairan Yarah. Wa Man Ya‘mal Mubahala Tharratin Sharran Yarah: Tharrab means the weight of the smallest ant. So when one sees a good deed equal to that weight in his book (of deeds), he will be pleased by it. The principle is the same for both the righteous and wicked persons: for each bad deed performed one has one sin held against him, and for each good deed performed, one has ten good deeds written for him. And on the Day of Judgement, Allâh Almighty further multiplies the good deeds of the believers. Here, it is important to understand that since the smallest of deeds is judged, any deed that is greater than that will also be judged. Allâh Almighty says:

وَقَدْ جَاءَكُمُ الْعَدَلُ مُبَارَكًا وَجَاءَكُمُ الْإِدْنَانُ مُبَارَكًا وَجَاءَكُمُ الْأَيَّامُ الْخَيْرَةُ مُبَارَكًا

On the Day when every person will be confronted with all the good he has done, and all the evils he has done, he will wish that there were a great distance between him and his evil.[1]

وَخَافُوا النَّارَ وَلَوْ شَيَّدَنَّكُمُ الْأَعْجَامَ وَلَوْ شَيَّدَنَّكُمُ الْمُكَرِّمَاءَ «أَمَّا الْكَارِثُ وَلَوْ شَيَّدَنَّكُمُ الْأَعْجَامَ وَلَوْ شَيَّدَنَّكُمُ الْمُكَرِّمَاءَ "»

And they will find all that they did, placed before them.[2]

Allâh Almighty encourages us to do good deeds — even if they are small — and warns us against performing evil deeds — even if they are small, which is why the Prophet ﷺ used to say:

Protect yourselves from the Fire, even if you do so with a part of a date (by giving it in charity); when one doesn’t find (anything), then with a good word.

He ﷺ also said:

كَانَ ضَلَّلَ اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ يُقُولُ يَا عَابِثَةُ إِبَلًا وَمَحَفَّرَاتُ النَّجْرُ فَإِنَّهُ

[1] (Aal Imran 3:30)
[2] (Al-Kauthar 18:9)
O ‘Aishah! Stay away from those sins that are belittled, for indeed they will be taken account of by Allâh.

Muslim and At-Tirmithi recorded from Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with him, that Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ said:

"The earth will spew forth its treasures, such as pillars of gold and silver. The murderer will come and say, “For this I have killed.” The one who breaks ties with relatives will come and say, “For this I have broken ties (with relatives).” And the thief will come and say, “For this my hand was cut off.” Then all of them will leave (the treasures), taking nothing from it.

The Meaning in Summary
When Allâh wills for the end of this world to occur and the time of the Hour to begin, He will order the earth to shake, and it will quake with unprecedented violence. It will throw up its burdens and those things buried inside; when man sees this epic occurrence, he will say, “What is the matter with it?” Meaning, what is happening to the earth, for neither has its like occurred nor is its cause known. At that time, the earth will speak its information to you, and it will articulate with the language of events not with the language of speech, as was said by the great scholar, At-Tabari in his Ṭafsîr. For these are events occurring in the earth without a precedence or apparent reason, but by Allâh’s inspiration to it. Even though some things occur in the universe by an obvious cause and others by a hidden cause, all that takes place in the universe happens by Allâh’s Will and Command.

People will come out of their graves in scattered groups, and each person will be shown his deeds. Whoever does a good deed equal to the weight of the smallest ant, he will be rewarded for it; whoever does an evil deed equal to the weight of the smallest ant, he will be
recompensed according to the deed. Allâh Almighty says:

وَضَعْ النُّورَ الْقَبْضَةَ بِبُكْرَةَ الْقَبْضَةَ فَلَا تَفْسَدُنَّ فِيهَا وَإِنَّ حَكِيمَةَ مُنْفَكَالَ

And We shall set up Balance for justice on the Day of Resurrection, then none will be dealt with unjustly in any thing. And if there be the weight of a mustard seed, We will bring it. And Sufficient are We as Reckoners. [1]

In this Surah, we are equally encouraged to do good deeds and warned against perpetrating evil ones.

What Can Be Derived From These Verses

1) The belief in the Resurrection and recompense are acknowledged.

2) We are informed of an epic transformation, the transformation of the earth and the heavens into another earth and other heavens.

3) Inanimate objects speaking is from Allâh's signs that indicates His perfect Ability, Knowledge, and Wisdom; moreover, it indicates His divine and complete power, which necessitates from us that we worship Him alone, without associating partners with Him.

4) It supports the authentic Hadith:

«إِنَّكُمْ عَلَيْنَا نَفْسَكُمْ وَإِنَّمَا تُقْتَلُنَّ لَعِبَةً»

Protect yourselves from the Fire, even if you do so with a part of a date (by giving it in charity).

5) The disbeliever reaps the rewards of his good deeds in this world, but not in the Hereafter.

6) The believer is recompensed for evil in this world, and his good deeds are saved to help him in the Hereafter.

[1] (Al-Anbiya' 21:47)
Surat Al-'Adiyat

In the Name of Allah, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful.

1. By the (steeds) that run, with panting breath), 2. Striking sparks of fire (by their hooves), 3. And scouring to the raid at dawn. 4. And raise the dust in clouds the while. 5. And penetrating forthwith as one into the midst (cf the foe); 6. Verify! Man is ungrateful to his Lord; 7. And to that he bears witness (by his deeds); 8. And verify, be is violent in the love of wealth. 9. Knows he not that when the contents of the graves are brought and poured forth (all mankind is resurrected). 10. And that which is in the breasts (cf man) shall be made known. 11. Verify, that day (i.e. the Day of Resurrection), their Lord will be Well-Acquainted with them (as to their deeds), (and will reward them for their deeds).

Its Name

It is called Surat Al-'Adiyat (Those That Run) because Allâh Almighty begins it swearing by “those that run,” referring to the horses of those who fight in Jihâd, those who are riding quickly to meet their enemy.

Its Relation to What is Before it

Both Surahs discuss the time when the earth will spew forth the
dead: In Surat Al-Zukarah:

وَلَتَكُنَّ تُرُدِّ الأَرْضَ أَنْتَ حَاجَاتٌ

And when the earth throws out its burdens

And in this Surah:

إِذَا بَعَزَتْ مَا فِي الْقُبُورِ

When the contents of the graves are brought out and poured forth.

Az-Zukarah ends by mentioning that we will be recompensed for both good and evil deeds. Al-A'adiyat ends with the same:

إِنَّ رَبِّي ۖ لَا تُضِرُّ مَا كُنْتُ أَعْمَالَكَ

Verily, that Day their Lord will be Well-Acquainted with them (as to their deeds), (and will reward them for their deeds).

The Meanings of Its Words

Wal-A'adiyaat: Dhabba: The horse that races at an amazingly strong and fast pace, which causes it to make the sound of the “Dhabb.” The “Dhabb,” is the breathing sound that emanates from the chest of a horse when it races at top speeds.

Al-Mooriyaat: The striking of their hooves on the rocks on the ground.

Qaaba: meaning the fire that sparks from the hardness of their hooves and the strength of their racing.

Fal-Mughbeeraat: Those that attack their enemy by making a raid.

Subba: Morning time. For the most part, raids took place in the morning, for when the Prophet ﷺ wanted to attack, he waited until the morning; if he heard the call to prayer, he would stop, and if he didn’t, he would attack. He advised those who went on group missions to follow the same strategy.

Fa-Abarna Bihi: By their racing and raids they stir up:

Naqa: dust from the intensity of their moving.

Fa-us satin Bihi: meaning on their mounts
(Jam'a) They would surround the enemy they were raiding.

(Annal Insaana LiRabbibi Lakanood) Man as a species hates to share with others the good he has, good that Allāh Almighty has blessed him with, and he refuses to acknowledge the good that Allāh Almighty bestows upon him.

(Wa Innabu 'Ala Thalika Lashabheed) Man bears witness, through his ingratitude and refusal, that he is averse to doing good and that he is greedy.

(Wa Innabu Lilubbil Khairi Lashabheed) Man loves wealth with such a violent passion that he is stingy with it.

(Jama Ya'lamu Ikhā) Knows he not that.

(But'īrā Maa Fil Quboor) Corpses are taken out of their graves, and this is referring to the time when Allāh Almighty resurrections man.

(Wa Hussila Ma Fis-Su'door) What people hide in their hearts will become clear and apparent, whether it is good or evil.

(Annal Rabbahum Bihih Yau'ma'ihih La-Khabeeer) Indeed, Allāh Almighty knows all of man's deeds, both apparent and hidden, and He Almighty will reward man for those deeds.

The Meaning in Summary

Because the horse has certain good qualities that are non-existent in other animals, and as it has been authentically established, there is good in the forelocks of the horse until the Day of Judgement, so Allāh Almighty swore by them. For among the Arabs, the horse has always been a means of waging war, and as an animal, it has always had a high status with the believers. Therefore we should take care of horses and train on them for fighting in the way of Allāh Almighty and we should take possession of horses for noble aims, just as we should strive and work hard in all important and significant matters.

After making the oath, Allāh Almighty clarifies the nature of man: that he is ungrateful, that he forgets Allāh's many favors — a nature that might lead him to rejecting Allāh's religion and commands. Here, the believers should take pause to understand the realities of this world and the Hereafter; they must strive against the desires of their
own selves, doing good deeds, and avoiding evil ones. Also, Allâh Almighty clarifies man's ardent love for wealth, a love that promotes the characteristic of miserliness. But there is a further consequence: man strives so eagerly after wealth that he forgets the Hereafter, forgets Allâh’s rights upon him and upon what He gave him, which is why Allâh Almighty warns man against possessing those abominable qualities.

Does not the one who refuses — who feigns to forget Allâh’s order and prohibitions — know that he will be taken out of his grave, that even his innermost intentions will become clear, that Allâh Almighty knows all that he does including the deeds he does privately, and finally, that Allâh Almighty will give him just recompense for all of his actions. Therefore, one should never allow the love of wealth to deviate him from gratefulness to his Lord, from worshipping Him, and from striving for the Hereafter.

What Can Be Derived From These Verses

1) We are encouraged to *Jihād* and to make preparations for war.

2) The nature of man is explained: he forgets the many favours of His Lord while he only remembers a misfortune that may have befallen him — except he who believes and does good deeds.

3) Man’s eager love for wealth is made known; here, as Muslims, we are implicitly invited to improve ourselves — by having faith, by performing good deeds, and by spending in the way of Allâh Almighty.

4) The belief in Resurrection and Recompense is established.
**Surat Al-Qari'ab**

*In the Name of Allah, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful*

1. Al-Qari'ab (the striking Hour, i.e., the Day of Resurrection).
2. What is the striking (Hour)? 3. And what will make you know what the striking (Hour) is? 4. It is a Day whereon mankind will be like moth scattered about. 5. And the mountains will be like carded wool. 6. Then as for those whose Balance (cf good deeds) will be heavy. 7. He will live a pleasant life (in Paradise). 8. But as for those whose Balance (cf good deeds) will be light. 9. He will have his home in Hat'iyyah (pity, i.e., Hell). 10. And what will make you know what it is? 11. (It is) a hot blazing Fire!

**Its Name**

It is called Surat Al-Qari'ab (The Striking Hour) because it begins by mentioning it, to send fear into the hearts of man, just like Surat Al-Haqah (The Ineptible) and Surat Al-Ghashiyah (The Overwhelming). Al-Qari'ab is one of the names of the Day of Judgement, because it strikes horror into hearts.

**The Subject Matter Of This Surah**

This Surah is a Makkah Surah (i.e., it was revealed before the
Prophet ﷺ emigrated to Al-Madinah), it outlines some of the awesome and frightening events that will take place on the Day of Judgement, a time when mankind will be divided into two groups: those that are happy and those that are miserable.

**Its Relation To What is Before It**

As the previous Surah ended by mentioning certain aspects of the Day of Judgement — “Knows he not that when the contents of the graves are brought out and poured forth, And that which is in the breasts (of men) shall be made known. Verily, that Day their Lord will be Well-Acquainted with them,” — this Surah continues by describing some of the awesome events that will take place at that time.

**The Meanings Of Its Words**

(ﬁ) *Al-Qaari'ab*: This is one of the names of the Day of Judgement, and it is thus called because it strikes hearts and ears with its frightening events, and *Qaari'ab* is taken from the word *Qara*, which means to strike violently.

(َََْ) *Wa Maa Adhaaka Mal-Qaari'ab*: What will make you know what the *Qaari'ab* is, a question that is used to instill fear, for such terrifying are the events of the Day of Judgement, that no man can perceive its reality. The question is repeated, adding intensity to the description of that day.

(قَالَ) *Kal-Farash*: *Al-Farash* is a flying insect, known for its foolish habit of crowding over fire.

(اَلْيَزْبُع) *Al-Mabooth*: Scattered in great numbers over a large area, many people will be confused and humiliated, crowding some over the other, waiting in panic to be called for the settlement of their accounts.

(َََْ) *Wa-Takoonul,hibaalu Kal-Ibnil-Marfoos*: In other words, like carded wool, so light will the mountains be in their movement and in the way they disperse until finally, they will be level with the earth.

(ُفِي مَوْصِف) *Thaqulat Mawaczeenlu*: Meaning, that his good deeds outweigh his bad ones.

(ٍ) *Fabuua Fee *Eezeer-Raabiiyab*: A life pleasing
to him, in Paradise.

\( Khaw\dot{a}t \textit{Maawazeeenubu}: \) One whose bad deeds outweigh his good ones.

\( Fa \textit{Ummuubu Haaawiyab}: \) i.e., his home and place to reside in will be the Fire of Hell.

\( Wi\textit{ Maa Adraaka}: \) What will make you know? This is a question that instills fear.

\( Maa \textit{Hiyab}: \) And what will make you know what the \textit{Haaawiyab} is? \textit{Haaawiyab} is one of the names of the Hellfire.

\( Na\textit{aarrun Haaamiyab}: \) It is a blazing hot fire.

There are some \textit{Abadith} that describe the Hellfire. Al-Bukhari, Muslim, Malik and others recorded from Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with him, that the Prophet ﷺ said:

\( "\text{إِنَّ نَارَ بَيْنَ آيِمَيْنِ أَمْيَلٌ يُفْقَدُونَ جَرَاءَ مِنْ صِبْرٍ يُفْقَدُونَ جَرَاءَ مِنْ نَارٍ جَهْنَمَّ}"

Indeed the fire of the children of Adam that you ignite is one part out of seventy parts of the fire of Hell.

They asked, “O Messenger of Allâh, isn’t it (i.e. the fire of this world) sufficient (in punishment)!” He ﷺ said:

\( "\text{إِلَيْهَا فُصِّلَتْ عَالِمَيْنَ يَتْبَعُونَ وَيَتْبَعُونَ جَرَاءً}"

The fire of Hell is more intense by sixty-nine parts.

Ahmad recorded from Abu Hurairah that the Prophet ﷺ said:

\( "\text{إِنَّ آخَوَنَ أَهْلَ الْيَلْوَامَ عَلَيْيَ بِهِ وَعَلَيْيَ رَبِّي وَعَلَيْيَ رَبِّي}"

The least-punished of the people of the Fire will be he who will have two shoes: from them (from the intensity of their heat), his brain will boil.

At-Tirmithi and Ibn Majah recorded that Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with him, said, “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said:

\( "\text{وَإِيَّمَ عَلَى الْيَلْوَامِ عَلَى الْيَلْوَامِ حَتَّىَ الحَمَّارُ، وَمَنْ أَوْفِقَ عَلَيْهِ افْتَأَدَّ، وَمَنْ أَوْفِقَ عَلَيْهِ افْتَأَدَّ حَتَّىَ اشْرَكَ كَفَّاهُ مَثْلَ الْمَرْأَةِ}"

The Fire was ignited for one thousand years until it became red; it was then ignited for one thousand years until it became
white; and then it was ignited for one thousand years until it became black; it is black and dark.”

The Meaning in Summary
This *Suūh* highlights some of our beliefs regarding the Resurrection and recompense, beliefs that the polytheists and disbelievers vehemently reject. Allāh Almighty informs us that on the Day of Judgement — the Day that will strike terror into the hearts of people — people, who are the noblest of species on the earth, will be like scattered moths, frightened, alarmed, and in a state of panic. Humans are likened to moths that, in their large numbers, crowd on top of one another, not guided to any specific course.

The mountains, despite their size and height, will be like carded wool, flying here and there, breaking apart. When man will be brought before His Lord, whoever’s good deeds outweigh his bad ones will be saved from the Fire, and he will have a most pleasant and pleasing life: Paradise, the abode of eternal bliss. Whoever’s bad deeds outweigh his good ones, or whoever has only bad deeds (such as the disbelievers and polytheists), then his mother, who holds him close and keeps him at her side, will be the fire of Hell, a blazing fire that has no counterpart in terms of the punishment felt by those who touch it (may Allāh protect us from it). The life of the dwellers of the Fire is one of eternal loss (we seek protection in Allāh Almighty from it). The *Qarīfah* is described by some of the things that will take place during it, and not its reality, because our human mind cannot perceive its reality, so awesome is that reality.

What Can be Derived From These Verses
1) It supports the belief in Resurrection and recompense since it mentions some events related to that.
2) It warns of the terrors of the Day of Judgement and Allāh’s punishment that will take place at that time.
3) It supports the belief that deeds — both good and evil — will be weighed and assigned recompense accordingly.
4) It acknowledges that people will be in two groups on the Day of Judgement: A group in Paradise and a group in Hell, in accordance with their deeds.
Surat At-Takathur

In the Name of Allah, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful

1. The mutual rivalry for piling up worldly things diverts you. 2. Until you visit the graves (i.e., till you die). 3. Nay! You shall come to know! 4. Again, nay! You shall come to know! 5. Nay! If you knew with a sure knowledge (the end result of piling up, you would not have occupied yourself in worldly things). 6. Verily, you shall see the blazing Fire (Hell)! 7. And again, you shall see it with certainty (cf. sight)! 8. Then, on that Day, you shall be asked about the delight (you indulged in, in this world).[1]

Its Name

It is called Surat At-Takathur because of the mention of the mutual rivalry for piling up. It means: “You busy yourselves with boasting, by deeds, children, and servants.”

The Subject Matter of This Makkah Surah

Deeds done purely for this world are condemned; we are warned not to avoid preparing for the Hereafter, which is why this Surah includes three major points:

1) It explains that some people become so occupied with the pleasures and temptations of this world that they will remain in such a state until death overtakes them:

\[
\text{أَلْحَمِّمُ لَا تَكُونُ ۚ إِنَّ رَزْمَ الْمَغَارِبِ ۡمَكُونَ}
\]

The mutual rivalry for piling up of worldly things diverts you, until you visit the graves (i.e. until you die)

2) We are given notice that we will be asked about all of our deeds on the Day of Judgement:

\[
كَلَّا سُوفْ تَعْلَمُونَ
\]

Nay! You shall come to know! Again, nay! You shall come to know!

3) We are informed that we will see the Hellfire with certainty of sight; at that time, when we witness the horrors of the Fire, we will be asked about the pleasures of this world.

\[
كَلَّا سُوفْ تَعْلَمُونَ
\]

Nay! If you knew with a sure knowledge (the end result of piling up, you would not have occupied yourselves in worldly things).

**Its Relation To What is Before it**

*Surat Al-Qari'ah* deals with some of the awesome events that will take place on the Day of Judgement; then it discusses the rewards awaiting those who will be eternally happy and those who will be eternally miserable. In this *Surah*, one of the reasons why some people deserve eternal misery and the Fire is given - the perpetration of sins and preoccupation with worldly matters rather than with the religion. This *Surah*, in very clear terms, warns us that we will be held responsible in the Hereafter for our actions in this world.

**In What Context Was This Surah Revealed**

In *Sahih Muslim* it is recorded that Muta'arraf related that his father said, “As I approached the Prophet ﷺ, he was reciting *Al-Haakumut-Takaatib*. He then said:

\[
يَقُولُ بُنُوَٰ آيَمَ مَالِيَ مَالِيَ، وَكَلَّٰكَ لَا أَنْعَمُ بِنَٰفِيُّ آيَمَ مَالِيَ مَالِيَ إِلَّا مَا أَنْعَمُ
\]
The son of Adam says, “My wealth, my wealth!” O, son of Adam! Do you have other than that which you ate and depleted, that which you wore and worn out, and that which you gave in charity and preserved. Everything else is fleeting, and being left for the people (i.e., heirs).

**The Meaning Of Its Words**

(-) **Al-Haakum**: It keeps you so busy and occupied that you turn away from obedience to Allâh Almighty.

(-) **At-Takaathur**: i.e., flaunting and showing-off because one has a lot of wealth.

(-) **Hatira-Zurtumul-Maqaabiir**: You will continue to be preoccupied in accumulating and flaunting wealth until you die and are transported to your grave.

(-) **Kaila**: You must not do that, so leave your preoccupation of amassing wealth.

(-) **Saufa Ta'alamoona**: When you enter your graves, you will know that you made a huge mistake by boasting about your wealth and your children.

(-) **Kaila**: here it means: “Truly!”

(-) **Laو Ta'alamoona Ilmal-Yaqaan**: If you knew results of amassing wealth with certainty, then you would not boast of the wealth you possess.

(-) **Lataaraamnaa Jabeem**: You will indeed see the Hellfire.

(-) **Yaumaa'tibin**: On the day that you will see the Hellfire with certainty of sight.

(-) **'Anin-Nareem**: (You will be asked) about the blessings you enjoyed, such as health, free time, safety, food, and drink.

**The Meaning in Summary**

Allâh Almighty begins the *Surah* by mentioning those who are so
busy in amassing wealth to compete and boast that they turn away from obedience to Allāh Almighty and His Messenger ﷺ. These are people who will die without producing any good deeds for themselves, deeds that would have served them in the Hereafter.

Allāh Almighty mentions that such people will continue on their evil path until they die; then they are transported to their graves and will stay therein until the Day of Judgement, the time of recompense. He warns us that we should avoid this path, a path that leads to our destruction and ultimate loss.

“You shall come to know”: i.e., we shall come to know the evil results of turning away from the obedience of Allāh Almighty and His Messenger ﷺ. And then in the next verse, Allāh Almighty repeats the warning.

“Truly! If you knew with a sure knowledge”: Meaning, truly, if we knew what is awaiting us in the grave and in the Hereafter, we would not occupy ourselves with accumulating wealth.

Next, we are informed that we will see the Hellfire with our very eyes on the Day of Judgement: the disbeliever will see it and then roast in it; the believer will see it and then Allāh Almighty will save him from it. Here, Allāh Almighty says that without a doubt, we will all see the Hellfire.

And finally, we are told that on that Day, the Day we will see the Hellfire, the Day of Judgement, we will be asked about the pleasures we enjoyed in this world, such as health, free time, safety, food, and drink. Whoever is grateful for those pleasures will be saved; whoever is not grateful will be held responsible. Some of the people of knowledge say that he will not be pardoned (for his ungratefulness) except for the garment that covers his private areas, for the piece of bread that saves him from hunger, and for the room that protects him from heat and cold.

In Sahih Muslim it is recorded that Abu Hurairah ﷺ said, “Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ went out one day, or night. He met up with Abu Bakr and ‘Umar, may Allāh be pleased with them. He ﷺ said to them:

«ما أخرجتما من بيوتكم ما هذه الساعة؟»

“What has made you come out of your homes at this time?”
They said, “Hunger, O Messenger of Allâh.” He said:

وَأَلَّيْنِي نَسِيَ بِيْدِيِ لَا خَرَجِيِّي الَّذِي أَخْرَجْتُهُ، فَوَقَ…”

“And I, by the One Who has my soul in His hand, what has made me to come out is the same reason that has caused you to come out.”

They continued with him until he approached the house of a man from the Ansar, who was not at home. When the man’s wife saw them, she said, “Welcome.” The Prophet ﷺ said:

»أَيُّهَا فَلَيْنِ؟<

“Where is so and so?”

She said, “He is gone to get some water for us.” At that point the man returned, and when he saw the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ and his two Companions, he said, “All praise belongs to Allâh, for no one has more honored guests with him today than I.” The man went and returned with a cluster of ripe dates, unripe dates, and dried dates. He said, “Eat from this.” The man took a knife, intending to slaughter an animal, and the Prophet ﷺ said:

»إِنَّكُنَّ تَخَولْتُونَ<

“Do not slaughter the one that gives milk.”

He slaughtered a sheep for them, and they ate from the slaughter and from the dates and they drank as well — until they became full.

The Prophet ﷺ said to Abu Bakr and ‘Umar:

وَأَلَّيْنِي نَسِيَ بِيْدِيِ لَا خَرَجِيِّي الَّذِي أَخْرَجْتُهُ، فَوَقَ…”

“By the One Who has my soul in His hand, you will indeed be asked about the pleasures of today on the Day of Judgement. Hunger caused you to leave your homes and you would not have returned to your homes until you had been given these delights.”

The name of the man from the Ansar is Malik bin At-Tayihan, and is also known as Abul-Haitham, may Allâh be pleased with him.

In another authentic narration, he ﷺ said:
Lesson One

الدرس الأول

«لا تزول قلوبنا عليه يوم القيامة حتى يسأل عن عمرو فيهم أقناة، وعَنِّ
شُفَاعَة فيم أبلاها، وعَنِّ عَلَيْه مَا عَمِلَه، وعَنِّ ماله من أين تشتَبه وهم
أنفسهم»

“The servant will not cease being questioned on the Day of Judgement until he is asked about his life and how he spent it; his youth and how he spent it; his knowledge and what he did because of it; and his wealth, and where he acquired it from and in what he spent it.”

What Can Be Derived From These Verses

1) We are warned not to do two things at once: 1) gathering wealth, 2) not being thankful for it and not obeying Allâh Almighty and His Messenger ﷺ for its sake.

2) Here, our belief in the punishment of the grave is affirmed and emphasized: “Until you visit the grave. Nay! You shall come to know!” Meaning, you shall come to know when you are in your grave.

3) Our belief in Resurrection and recompense is affirmed; we will be justly recompensed after we will be questioned for our deeds.

4) The worshipper of Allâh will be asked regarding the blessings that Allâh Almighty poured upon him in this world; if he was grateful here, he will be successful there; if he denied those favors here, he will be taken to account there. And we seek protection in Allâh Almighty.
**Surat Al-'Asr**

_In the Name of Allah, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful_

1. _Ey Al- Asr (the time)._ 2. _Verily! man is in loss._ 3. _Except those who believe in and do righteous good deeds, and recommend each other to the truth, and recommend one another to patience._[1]

**Its Name**

Because Allah Almighty swears by Al-'Asr (the time) in the beginning of the Surah, it is given that name.

**Its Relationship to What is Before It**

In the previous Surah, we are told that a preoccupation with worldly pursuits is a most objectionable way to live; in this Surah, we are informed about those pursuits that we must preoccupy ourselves with: faith in Allah, good deeds, advising one another to follow the truth, and advising one another to be patient upon the truth, for these pursuits reap good for both individual and society.

**The Virtues Of This Surah**

At-Tabarani mentioned that `Ubadullah bin Hafs said, “When two men from the Companions of the Messenger of Allah would meet, they wouldn’t part from one another until one of them recited Surat

[1] (Al-'Asr 103:1-3)
Lesson One

Al-'Asr, until its end; then they would give greetings of peace to one another after it.” It was also recorded by Al-Bayhaqi from Abu Huthaifa, Ash-Shafi'i said, “If Allâh had revealed only this Surah to His creatures, it would have been enough for them.” He said that because in this Surah stages are mentioned, that if one completes all of those stages, he achieves his completion. The stages are as follows:

1) To know the truth.
2) To apply it in practice.
3) To teach it to one who doesn’t know it or who is weak in his knowledge of it.
4) To be patient regarding the preceding stages: patient when you are learning the truth, patient when you are applying the truth, and patient when you are teaching the truth.

To strengthen your knowledge you must have faith, and to strengthen your application you must perform good deeds. Then you should be patient in your knowledge, your actions, and in your teaching.

This Surah, despite its brevity, is one of the most comprehensive Surahs of the Qur'an, and all praise is due to Allâh.

The Meanings Of Its Words

(ٌالقصري) Wal-'Asr: 'Asr means time; there are many lessons to be learnt through the passing of time - the continual succession of day and night, night and day - because that consistent pattern clearly indicates the Creator, Glorious is He and Most High, and that He should be singled out for worship.

They say that Al-'Asr means the time in which the good and evil actions of man take place.

(ٌأنا لكم) Innal-Insaana: Man as a species.

(ٌللفيء كهوش) Lfee Khusr: Man is in a state of loss since his life is his most valuable wealth; if he dies without believing and performing good deeds, he will have suffered the ultimate loss. This is the reason for the oath.

(Illallatheena Aamanu wa Amilus-Saaibhaat):
This refers to those who have faith and do good deeds, for they are in profit, not loss. This is because they worked for the Hereafter, and were not preoccupied with worldly pursuits. Every male and female believer falls under this exception; the wording is general, and embraces all who have faith and do good deeds.

(Watāwaaasaaw Bib-Hagg): They advise one another to believe in the truth, to speak it, and to apply it. That is faith in Allāh alone, and upholding what Allāh legislated and staying away from what He forbade.

(Watāwaaasaaw Bis-Sabr): Those who advise one another to be patient upon their belief of the truth, upon their true speech, and upon their application of the truth. Patience is strength in the soul that calls one to bear hardship, yet to continue to work. There are many forms of patience. One must be patient in staying away from sins; patient in performing obligatory deeds; patient when one is faced with the vicissitudes of life, those decrees that we find it painful to bear. That we are supposed to advise one another to patience after having been ordered to advise one another to the truth indicates the superiority of patience and the great rewards waiting for those who are patient:

إِنَّ اللَّهَ مَعَ الْمُتَّمِمِينَ

Truly! Allāh is with the patient ones.[1]

The Meaning in Summary

Allāh Almighty swears in this chapter by “the time,” and Allāh Almighty may swear by anything from his creation, according to His Will: all others, however, may swear only by Allāh alone. Here, Allāh Almighty swears by “the time” that every human being is in a state of loss, except for those who believe and do good deeds. The first stage includes those who know the truth and believe in it; the second stage those who do good deeds because of the truth they have believed in; the third stage includes those who advise one another to do good and teach one another about the truth. The final stage includes those who advise one another to be patient and steadfast upon the truth. At the end of this last stage, one achieves

[1] (Al-Baqarah 2:155)
Lesson One

completeness, for completeness means for one to not only be complete alone, but also to help make others complete. One can achieve that by strengthening his knowledge and ability of application, by having faith and by performing good deeds. Then he completes others by teaching them and by advising them to have patience upon knowledge and good deeds. This Surah, despite its brevity, is one of the most comprehensive Surahs of the Qur'an, and all praise is due to Allâh.

What Can Be Derived From These Verses

1) In only three verses, Surat Al-'Asr explains the way to salvation. Imam Ash-Shaftî said, “If Allâh had revealed only this Surah to His creatures, it would have been enough for them.”

2) We are informed of the end for the disbeliever: complete and utter loss.

3) We are informed of the ultimate success awaiting those who believe and do good deeds, those who stay away from Shirk and disobedience.

4) It is compulsory to advise one another to follow the truth and to be patient.

5) Here, Allâh Almighty swore by “the time,” for in the passing of time, things change constantly; a reality from which we can learn many lessons.

Other General Benefits

1) When we are informed that we must advise one another and cooperate with one another to promote truth, good deeds, and patience, we learn what the life of the believer should be; a life in which one patiently establishes the truth despite the hardships he may suffer while working for the benefit of Islam and his nation.

2) One of the best of deeds is to repent from sins.

3) “And recommend one another to the truth and recommend one another to patience”: In regards to this verse, Ar-Razi said, “This verse indicates that the truth is heavy and that hardships necessarily accompany it, that is why recommending one another about patience is mentioned directly after it.”
Surat Al-Humazah

In the Name of Allah, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful

1. Woe to every slanderer and backbiter. 2. Who has gathered wealth and counted it. 3. He thinks that his wealth will make him last forever! 4. No! Verily, he will be thrown into the crushing Fire. 5. And what will make you know what the crushing Fire is? 6. The Fire of Allah Almighty kindled. 7. Which les ts up over the hearts. 8. Verily, it shall be closed in on them. 9. In pillars stretched forth.\(^1\)

Its Name

It is called Surat Al-Humazah because Allah said in the beginning of it:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ورَبِّ لَيْسِيَ لَهُ نَعَشٌ لَّمْ يَوَّدُ أنَّ مَالَهُ}
\end{align*}
\]

Woe to every Humazah Lumazah.

Its Relation To What is Before It

After Allah Almighty mentioned in the last Surah that man as a species is in a state of loss and destruction. He Almighty clarifies what the state will be of he who loses; here, Allah Almighty also gives

\(^{[1]}\) (Al-Humazah 104:1-9)
an example of those who will suffer the ultimate loss.

**In What Context Was This Surah Revealed**

Abu Haiyan said, “This was revealed about Al-Akhnas bin Shuraiq, Al-‘Aas bin Wa’il, Jamil bin Ma’mar, Al-Walid bin Al-Mughirah, or Umayyah bin Khalaf. These are the different opinions, and it is possible that it was revealed with regard to all of them. At any rate, it is general in that this chapter applies to anyone who has the characteristics described herein.”

**The Meanings Of Its Words**

(٥٨) *Wa’il*: Ignominy and a painful punishment; it has been said that it is a valley in the Hellfire.

(٤٠) *Likulli Humazatin Lumazab*: Humazab means a backbiter, but more extreme: one who always attacks the honor and dignity of others. Lumazab: One who finds fault with others, and is expressive in doing so, usually with the movements of his eyebrows, eyes, hand, or head; he always puts on airs of superiority over others.

(٤١) *Jama’a Maala wa ‘Addadab*: Who gathers wealth and then counts it.

(٤٢) *Yaksabu*: He thinks;

(٤٣) *Anna Maalabu Akbadab*: He thinks that his wealth makes him immortal in this world.

(٤٤) *Kalla*: A word that has a meaning of deterrence. No, the situation isn’t as he supposes it to be (his wealth will not prevent him from dying).

(٤٥) *Layunbatabanna*: He will be thrown in a most humiliating fashion...

(٤٦) *Fit-Hutamah*: (Into) the fire of Hell; *Hatm* means to crush or smash, so the Hellfire crushes all that is thrown into it.

(٤٧) *Al-Mu‘aqaqahab*: That is ablaze or aflame.

(٤٨) *Tattafa’ ‘Alafa’ fidab*: Goes over the center of hearts, surrounding them. The heart is specifically mentioned here because it is the place where false and evil beliefs reside and it is
the starting point or source of evil and wicked deeds.

(۷۶۷۲۳) Muṣadāb: (The Fire) will be closed in and covering them.

(۷۶۷۲۴) Fee ‘Amadīn Muṣadāb: In long pillars, so the Fire will be inside the pillars.

The Meaning in Summary

Allāh Almighty warns us of a valley in the Hellfire that flows with the pus (liquid that issues forth from a wound) of its inhabitants. Allāh Almighty describes people who backbite and slander, people who constantly find faults in others, and a person who has no care other than to amass wealth and count it, without having the slightest desire to spend it in the way of good, such as spending it to join ties with relatives. In his ignorance, he thinks that his wealth makes him immortal in this life; he works and strives to gather even more wealth, thinking that the more he has, the longer he will live. He doesn’t realize that in reality, miserliness causes one’s life to shorten, and homes to be destroyed. Meanwhile, righteousness and generosity cause one’s life span to increase. Then Allāh Almighty says:

(۷۶۷۲۵) 

Nay! Verily, he will be thrown into the crushing Fire. And what will make you know what the crushing Fire is? This repetition affirms the terror and awesome destructive power of the Fire.

(۷۶۷۲۶) 

The Fire of Allāh, kindled.

The fuel of that Fire is men and stones, and from its violence, it

(۷۶۷۲۷) 

leaps up over the hearts

penetrating bodies and reaching their hearts. Living in the intensity of that heat, the inhabitants of the Fire are stuck therein, having no hope of coming out, which is why Allāh Almighty says:

(۷۶۷۲۸) 

إِنَّهُ عَلَيْهِمْ مَوْعِدَةٌ} ۸ فِي عَمَّل...
It shall be closed in on them, in pillars...

These long pillars will be behind doors, and the inhabitants of the Fire will not be able to come out. Allâh Almighty says:

١٣٤٤٧

Every time they seek to get away therefrom, from anguish, they will be driven back therein.¹

We ask Allâh Almighty to protect us from that.

**What Can Be Derived From These Verses**

1) Our belief in Resurrection and recompense is affirmed.

2) It warns against backbiting and slander.

3) Those who are enamoured with wealth are censured.

4) It describes the intensity and the horror of the Hellfire.

5) Ignominy, punishment and destruction — these await the one who backbites, the one who slanders, the one who always finds faults in others, and the one who is miserly with his wealth.

¹ (Al-Hajj 22:22)
Surat Al-Fil

In the Name of Allāh, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful

1. Have you not seen how your Lord dealt with the owners of the Elephant? 2. Did He not make their plot go astray? 3. And sent against them birds, in flocks. 4. Striking them with stones of Sāmīl. 5. And made them like an empty field of stalks. [1]

Its Name

This chapter is called Al-Fil (The Elephant) because it begins by introducing the story about the People of the Elephant.

Its Relation To What is Before It

In the last Surah, Allāh Almighty described people who backbite, who slander, who sow dissension among people, who gather wealth and are boastful of what they have amassed; and Allāh Almighty clarified that wealth will not benefit its boastful owner when he faces Allāh Almighty. In this Surah, Allāh Almighty relates a story that proves the futility of wealth, a story about the People of the Elephant. They were a people who were much more powerful than the Qurash; they were also wealthier and more arrogant. Despite that, Allāh Almighty destroyed them with tiny, weak birds; their wealth, numbers, and strength were all of no avail to them.

[1] (Al-Fil 105:1-5)
The Meanings Of Its Words

(ٓ) Alam Tara Kaja Fa’ala Rabuka: Did you not know - Allah’s Messenger ﷺ is being addressed, and though he was not alive at the time this story took place, he was alive to see its effects.

(فَأَكَلْتُ الْأَلْبَادُ) Ashaab al-Feel: There were 13 elephants, the largest of which was called Mahmud. Their owner was Abrahah, the ruler of Ethiopia.

(ٓ) Alam Yajal Kadalum: Kaid means plot; they were plotting to destroy the Ka’bah.

(ٓ) Fee Taableel: Allah Almighty caused their plan to fail and He destroyed them.

(ٓ) AbTa:yr: It is used to refer to anything that flies in the air, be it big or small.

(ٓ) Aabaabel: In many groups: in flocks.

Si. jeel: Baked clay.

(ٓ) Ka’a. jam:Ma’koool: Like the leaves of crops that have been eaten by animals and trampled under their feet.

The Meaning in Summary

This Surah relates the story of a momentous occurrence, which took place before the birth of the Prophet ﷺ. Abrahah Al-Ashram, the governor of Yemen at the time, served under the rule of the King of Habashah. Abrahah had an idea to build a house in San’a, Yemen, hoping that the Arabs would make pilgrimage to it instead of to Makkah. By doing that, he wanted to shift the center of trade and profits from Makkah to Yemen, and when he mentioned his idea to the Ethiopian King, the latter agreed and was most pleased by the plan.

When the house — Church — was built, he called it Al-Qullais; no structure comparable to it was built before. One day, a man from the Quraish was so angry at this house being built that he defecated inside of it and then soiled the walls with his own excrement. When Abrahah saw what happened, he grew furious and prepared an army to attack Makkah and to destroy the Ka’bah. He had thirteen elephants with him, the largest of which was called Mahmud. As they
were going to Makkah, they destroyed any Arab or tribal resistance that came in their way, until finally, they reached a place close to Makkah. Negotiations took place between them and the chief of Makkah, 'Abdul-Muttalib bin Hashim, the grandfather of the Prophet \( \舌 \). An agreement was made: Abrahah returned camels that he usurped from 'Abdul-Muttalib; in return, he was free to approach the Ka'bah. The men, women, and children of Makkah were ordered to leave and to seek safety in the peaks of the neighboring mountains, for the fear that the tyrannical army approaching would harm them.

As they reached a nearby valley, many flocks of birds sent down stones from above; each stone ranged between the size of a chickpea and a lentil. As soon as a stone fell on a man, he would melt and his flesh would scatter; thus the army was destroyed. As Abrahah was fleeing, his flesh was falling off and he died on the way. This was a great blessing from Allâh Almighty for the dwellers of His inviolable city and for the keepers of His House. Until this day, the Arabs venerate the Ka'bah and honor the residents of Makkah.

**What Can Be Derived From These Verses**

1) Allâh's Messenger \( \舌 \) is consoled in this Surah for the harm inflicted on him by the Quraish.

2) Allâh Almighty reminds the Quraish of what He Almighty did with Abrahah and his army, to instill fear into them.

3) We should appreciate Allâh's All-Powerful Abilities, and we should learn a lesson after learning of how Allâh Almighty destroys His enemies.

4) Allâh Almighty protects His House from the enemies of His religion.

5) This occurrence had serious effects on events to take place afterwards; the year it took place, 580, is called the year of the Elephant, and it is the year in which the Prophet \( \舌 \) was born.
Surah Quraish

In the Name of Allah, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful.

1. For the protection of the Quraish. 2. The caravans to set forth safe in winter, and in summer. 3. So let them worship the Lord of this House. 4. Who has fed them against hunger, and has made them safe from fear.

Its Name
The Surah is named Quraish to remind the tribe of Quraish of Allah’s favors upon them, favors that are mentioned at the beginning of the Surah.

Its Relation To What is Before It
Both of these Surahs mention Allah’s favors on the people of Makkah. The first relates the destruction of their enemies, enemies who came to destroy their inviolable House; the second relates that because Allah united them, they were able to pursue a life of trade with two expeditions, one in the summer and one in the winter. Through those excursions, they were able to bring back stores of supplies. So strong is the relation between both Surahs that Ubai bin Ka’b considered them to be one Surah; it has been related that he wouldn’t separate the two chapters by Basmalah (reciting Bismillah).

[1] (Al-Quraish 106:1-4)
The Virtues Of This Surah

It was recorded by Al-Hakim, and Al-Bayhaqi in Al-Khila’fiyyat, that Umm Hani bint Abu Talib said that Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said:

"فَضَّلَ اللَّهُ قُرَابَى بِسُجُودٍ خَليَّةٍ: إِنَّ مَجْهُومِهِم، وَإِنَّ النُّفُوٰدَ فِيهِمْ، وَالْجَمِيعَةُ وَالْكَتَابَةُ فِيهِمْ، وَإِنَّ اللَّهَ نَصَرَهُمْ عَلَى الْمُجِبِّينَ، وَإِنَّهُمْ أَنْعَمَّا اللَّهُ عَلَى وَجْلٍ عَشْرٍ سَيِّئٍ لَا يَعْتَدَّهُ عَشْرَهُمْ، وَإِنَّ اللَّهَ أَرَزَّلَ فِيهِمْ سُورَةً مِنَ الْقُرْآنِ."

Allah has blessed the Quraysh with seven qualities; I am one of them; the Prophethood is in them; they are responsible for the curtain of the Kabah; providing water for the pilgrims is theirs; Allah has made them victorious over the Elephant; indeed, they worshipped Allah for ten years during a period that no one else worshipped Him; and Allah revealed about them a chapter of the Qur’an.

After having said that, the Prophet ﷺ began to recite,

"إِبْنَيْفُ سُرَهِّيْنِ"

[For the protection of the Quraysh.] Ibn Kathir said, “It is Gharib.”

In What Context Was This Surah Revealed

It was recorded by Al-Hakim, and Al-Bayhaqi in Al-Khila’fiyyat, that Umm Hani bint Abu Talib said that Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said:

"فَضَّلَ اللَّهُ قُرَابَى بِسُجُودٍ خَليَّةٍ وَذِكْرُ الْحَلِيبٍ، وَفِيهِ"

Allah has blessed the Quraysh with seven qualities. One of the qualities he enumerated is as follows:

"وَرَزَّلَتْ سُورَةً مَّنْ يَذْكُرُ فِيهَا أَحَدَهُ عَشْرَهُمْ"

...And He revealed a chapter that contained a mention of none except them.

The Meanings Of Its Words

(إِبْنَيْفُ سُرَهِّيْنِ) Li-Belah fi Quraysh: Belahf comes from the verb Alifa.

[1] Quraysh 106:1}
which means to stick to something and to be devoted to it • each with a sense of familiarity, not aversion.

(قريش) *Quraish*: The name of Arab tribes that descended from An-Nadhr bin Kinanah.

(ربى) *Riblah*: A people’s journey or their setting off to travel.

(أمانة) *At'amanah*: i.e., given them a comfortable amount of sustenance, and the way to acquiring that sustenance made easy for them.

(أمانة) *Aamanah*: Kept them safe from external transgression and from those who desire to wrongfully take their wealth and lives.

**The Meaning in Summary**

Many of the scholars of *Tafsir* said that the beginning of this *Surah* is grammatically connected to the end of the *Surah* preceding it, meaning: We dealt in the way We did with the companions of the Elephant for the sake of the *Quraish*, for their safety, for their welfare, for their trade and profits, so that they could make the winter journey to Yemen and the summer journey to Sham.

Allâh destroyed those who intended to do evil to the *Quraish* while He raised the status of the inviolable city of Makkah and its inhabitants. So venerated became the *Quraish* in the hearts of the Arabs that the latter would not stand in the way of the former whenever they wanted to travel anywhere.

That is why Allâh ordered them to be grateful: He said:

```
فَلْيَبْعَذَّبُوا رَبَّهُ هَذَا الْبَيْتَ
```

So let them worship (Allâh) the Lord of this House.

So let them worship Him, making that worship pure for Him alone.

```
ْأَلْدَرُتُ أَهْمَمَتُ مِنْ حُجُّوْبٍ وَمَقُومَتِ مِنْ حُوْبٍ
```

Who has fed them against hunger, and has made them safe from fear.

Bountiful provisions and safety are some of the greatest of worldly blessings, blessings that require gratefulness to Allâh. For You, O Allâh, is praise and gratitude - for Your apparent favors and for Your
favors that we do not perceive. The Prophet ﷺ said:

«فَنَّ أَشْهَعُ عَيْنَاً فِي سُرُرِ مَعَاهِي فِي بَدْنِه عَلَّمَهُ فُوُتُّ يُؤْوِي وَلَيْلَهُ فَكَانَ مَا
خَازُ النَّاسِ يَخَافُ فِيهَا»

Whosoever dawns safe in his bed, healthy in his body, while he has enough to sustain him for his day and night, then it is as if he has gained the entire world.

Allāh has specified His Lordship over the House, even though He is the Lord of all that exists; He singled out the mention of the House to honor it.

«وُفِّي إِنَافِهِمْ مِنْ خَوْفِي»

And made them safe from fear.

Because He has given them the favors of safety and stability, they should worship Him alone without associating partners with Him, and without worshipping anyone other than Him, such as a statue, a rival, or a child.

Ibn Kathir said, "Whoever answers this command, Allāh will give him both safety in this world and in the Hereafter. Whoever disobeys Him, He Almighty will take it away from him in both worlds. Allāh Almighty says:

وَأَطْلَبُوا مِنِّي نَجَارًا وَأَطْلَبُوا مِنِّي ثَقَالًا فَأَطْلَبُوا مِنِّي نَجَارًا وَأَطْلَبُوا مِنِّي ثَقَالًا وَأَطْلَبُوا مِنِّي نَجَارًا وَأَطْلَبُوا مِنِّي ثَقَالًا

And Allāh puts forward the example of a township (Makkah), that dwelt secure and well content; its provision coming to it in abundance from every place, but it (its people) denied the favors of Allāh (with ungratefulness). So Allāh made it taste the extreme hunger (famine) and fear, because of that which they used to do. And verily, there had come to them a Messenger from among themselves, but they denied him, so the torment overtook them while they were wrongdoers. [1]

[1] (Al-Nabd 16:112,113)
What Can Be Derived From These Verses

1) When one reflects on this *Sunah*, one appreciates Allâh’s wisdom, mercy, and planning. How perfect He is! The All-Wise, Most Merciful.

2) Allâh Almighty relates His favors on the Quraysh: the destruction of their enemies, preventing those enemies from entering Makkah, providing them with safety, giving them abundant provisions - all of which require gratitude.

3) It is compulsory to worship Allâh Almighty alone and to leave the worship of anyone other than Him.

4) We must be thankful for Allâh’s blessings by praising Him and by using His favors in a way that pleases Him.

5) Life revolves around two: food to protect one from hunger and safety from fear.
**Surat Al-Ma‘un**

_In the Name of Allah, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful_

1. Have you seen him who denies the recompense? 2. That is he who repulses the orphan. 3. And urges not the feeding of the poor. 4. So woe unto those performers of Salat, 5. Who delay their Salat from their stated fixed times. 6. Those who do good deeds only to be seen. 7. And refuse Al-Ma‘un.¹

**Its Name**

It is called _Surat Al-Ma‘un_ because at the end of it Allâh Almighty condemned those who withhold _Al-Ma‘un_. It is also called _Surat Al-Deen_ because at the beginning Allâh reproaches those who disbelieve in the _Deen_, meaning recompense in the Hereafter.

**Its Relation To What is Before It**

1) In the last _Surah_ Allâh reminds the Quraish of one of His many favors: that it is He Who has fed them against hunger. Here, Allâh reproaches those who do not encourage the feeding of the poor.

2) Ordering us to worship Him alone, Allâh previously ordered them to worship the Lord of this House (the Kurbah in Makkah). In this _Surah_, Allâh censures those who delay the prayers from their stated fixed times.

¹ _Al-Ma‘un_ 107:1-7
3) In the previous Surah, Allâh mentioned that despite His many favors on the Quraish, they still disbelieved in both resurrection and recompense. Here, Allâh Almighty follows up by warning and threatening them of His punishment.

The Meanings Of Its Words

(عَلَّمْتُكَ) Ara’aitu: Did you know? This is asked in a way to attract the attention of the listener.

(عَلَّمْتُكَ) Ad-Deen: Accountability and recompense (in the Hereafter).

(عَلَّمْتُكَ) Allathee Yaddu’ul-Yateem: One who violently pushes away an orphan, viciously repelling him, and taking away his rights.

(عَلَّمْتُكَ) Wa laa Yadhuhu ‘Ala Ta’aamil-Miskeen: i.e., he neither encourages himself nor others to feed the poor.

(عَلَّمْتُكَ) Fau’ilul-il-Musaleen: Ultimate ignominy and punishment for those who delay their prayers from their stated fixed times.

(عَلَّمْتُكَ) ‘An Salaathim Saaboon: They delay their prayers from the fixed times.

(عَلَّمْتُكَ) Yura’a’oon: They pray and do good deeds to show them off to others, not to perform them sincerely and purely for Allâh Almighty.

(عَلَّمْتُكَ) Wa Yamna’oonal-Ma’oon: Ma’oon means all small things that are helpful in life, such as a needle, an axe, or a cooking pot. So Allâh Almighty is referring to people who refuse to give simple things to help others, things that can be used and returned without damage, such as kitchen utensils.

The Meaning in Summary

This Surah discusses two kinds of people:

1) The disbeliever who refuses to even acknowledge Allâh’s favors and who disbelieves in the Day of Judgement, when deeds will be judged and just recompense will be given.

2) The hypocrite who does deeds not for the sake of Allâh Almighty; rather, he does them to show off to others.
As for the first group, Allah Almighty mentions some of their contemptible deeds: they humiliate the orphan, repelling him viciously, and they do not perform good deeds; they do not even encourage others to help the poor. They do not fulfill the rights of their Lord, nor do they show the least bit of kindness to His creatures.

The second group, the hypocrites, delay their prayers, and when they do perform the prayer, they perform it in form, but not in spirit. In fact, they do deeds simply so others can watch and appreciate them. Both groups are threatened with ignominy and destruction; Allah Almighty highlights their villainy by using a style that shows wonder at their contemptible deeds.

**What Can Be Derived From These Verses**

1) The emphasis on feeding orphans and the poor, and encouraging others to do so as well.

2) Belief in recompense and accountability are affirmed.

3) Being cautious about prayer, maintaining it in its time, being sincere while praying as well as when performing all other deeds.

4) We are encouraged to do good deeds, to help others in large and small matters, even if it is by lending, for instance, a pot or a book. This is because Allah Almighty strongly reproached those who do not do even the small acts of kindness.

5) We must be careful and avoid adopting any of the characteristics of the hypocrites.
Surat Al-Kauthar

In the Name of Allah, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful

1. Verily, We have granted you Al-Kauthar. 2. Therefore turn in prayer to your Lord and sacrifice (to Him only). 3. For he who hates you, he will be cut off.[1]

Its Name
The name of this Surah, Al-Kauthar, is mentioned in the first verse:

إِنَّا كَنَّا نَزَّلْنَاهُ ﺑُنْيَانَ مُؤَذِّنٍ

Verily, We have granted you Al-Kauthar.

Al-Kauthar means much and perpetual good in this world and in the Hereafter. It is also said to mean a river in Paradise.

The Subject Matter Of This Surah
It discusses the blessed favors given to the Prophet ﷺ.

In What Context Was This Surah Revealed
It was revealed to refute one of the disbelievers, Al-Aas bin Wa’il. When the Prophet’s son from Khadijah, ‘Abdullah, died, Al-Aas said that the Prophet ﷺ was Abtar, or a man who has no son. This was said by Ibn ‘Abbas, Muqatil, Al-Kalbi, and most scholars of Tafsir. It is also reported that Ibn ‘Abbas said, “It was revealed about Abu Jahl.” Nonetheless, its meaning embraces all those who show enmity to the

Prophet ﷺ, those who are mentioned above, and others as well.

**The Meanings Of Its Words**

(الاثنى) *Inna A’tainaaka:* We (Allâh Almighty) have bestowed upon you, O Muhammad.

(الثالث) *Al-Kautbar:* i.e., a river in Paradise, or much and perpetual good in this life and in the Hereafter.

(الرابع) *Fa-Sallî Lî-Rabbîka:* So consistently perform the prayer, purely and sincerely for Allâh Almighty, showing gratefulness for His blessings.

(الخامس) *Wanbar:* The sacrifice, or the *Hādî* (the *Hajj* sacrifice), or *Labbihyyah* (sacrificed on ‘Eid Al-‘A’dha).

(الستُّم) *Shaaanti’aka:* The one who detests you.

(السبع) *Al-‘Abtar:* (The one who detests you) is the one who is cut off; cut off from all good, or cut off from having offspring.

**The Meaning in Summary**

Allâh Almighty says to His Prophet, Muhammad ﷺ, “Verify, We have granted you *Al-Kautbar,*” much good and blessings, which also includes a river in Paradise called *Al-Kautbar.* The Prophet ﷺ is also granted the *Hawdb* (on the Day of Judgement), which in size is one month (the time it takes to cross it) in length and one month in width. The water of the *Hawdb* is whiter than milk and sweeter than honey. Its containers are like the stars in the sky, in terms of their numbers and brightness. Whoever takes a drink from the *Hawdb* will never feel thirst afterwards, for eternity.

After mentioning His favors upon the Prophet ﷺ, He ordered him: “turn in prayer to your Lord and sacrifice.” Allâh Almighty mentions these two forms of worship because they are the best forms of worship and the best means of getting closer to Allâh Almighty. During the prayer, one submits both his heart and limbs to Allâh Almighty. And when one makes the sacrifice, he gives up the most valuable thing he has, which is his wealth, and the hearts of men innately love wealth and love to keep it to themselves. Then Allâh Almighty continues by mentioning the situation of the one who hates the Prophet ﷺ and who belittles him; such a person, Allâh
Almighty says, is cut off from all good, cut off from being remembered.

As for the Prophet ﷺ, he is truly complete, the most complete a human being can possibly be. His name is remembered and his helpers and followers are many. The Surah ends by giving glad tidings to the Prophet ﷺ that his enemies will be humiliated and cut off from all good, both in this life and in the Hereafter. On the other hand, the Prophet’s name is mentioned on the pulpit and in other places; the tongues of men will continue to mention his noble name until the end of this world.

**What Can Be Derived From These Verses**

1) Alláh clarified His honor for His Messenger Muhammad ﷺ.
2) The Ahadith about Al-Kawthar emphasize this, and that it is a river in Paradise.
3) The prayer, the sacrifice, and all other acts of worship • must be performed purely and sincerely for the sake of Alláh Almighty only.
4) Supplicating against the oppressor is legislated.
5) Alláh Almighty granted victory to His servant and Messenger, Muhammad ﷺ. He consoled the Prophet ﷺ and refuted his enemies.
**Surat Al-Kafirun**

*In the Name of Allah, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful*

1. Say: "O you disbelievers! 2. I worship not that which you worship. 3. Nor will you worship that which I worship. 4. And I shall not worship that which you are worshipping. 5. Nor will you worship that which I worship. 6. To you be your religion, and to me my religion. [1]

**Its Name**

It is called *Surat Al-Kafirun* because Allah Almighty ordered His Prophet Muhammad ﷺ to address the disbelievers, telling them that he will not worship the idols and statues that they worship: “Say: ‘O you disbelievers! I do not worship what you worship...’” It is also called *Surat Al-Ikhlas* and *Surat Al-Mumahathah* (the rejection) and *Al-Bara‘ah* (the innocence) from *Shirk*.

**The Subject Matter Of This Surah**

It is a *Surah* about *Tawhid* and declaring one’s innocence from *Shirk* and misguidance. The idolators of Makkah invited Allah’s Messenger ﷺ to a truce, requesting him to worship their gods for one year in return for them worshipping his God for one year. This *Surah* was revealed to put a stop to the ambitions of the disbelievers, making a distinction between the people of faith and the worshippers of idols,

and it rejects the base offer that was presented by the disbelievers for the present and future.

**Its Relation to What is Before It**

In the previous *Surah*, Allāh Almighty ordered us to sincerely worship Him Almighty alone, without associating any partners with Him. In this *Surah*, the *Surah of Tawhid* and innocence from *Shirk*, Allāh makes it clear that our worship is different, independent, and autonomous from the worship of the disbelievers, for the Prophet ﷺ and his followers worship Allāh Almighty alone: they worship neither the statues nor the idols of the disbelievers. This point is emphasized through repetition, and it ends by clearly stating that the Prophet ﷺ has his religion, while they have theirs.

**The Virtues Of This *Surah***

It is established that Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ read this *Surah* along with *Qul Huwaallāhu Abad* (*Surah* 112) on the following occasions:

1) In the two units of prayer made after *Tawaf*.
2) In the two units of the *Fajr* (*Sunnah*) prayer.
3) In the two units (*Sunnah*) that follow the *Maghrib* prayer.
4) And he ﷺ would perform the *Witr* prayer by reciting, *Sabbah*, *Qul Ya‘yubal-Kafirun*, and *Qul Huwaallāhu Abad*.

**In What Context Was This *Surah* Revealed**

‘Abdun-Razzaaq reported that Wahb said, “The disbelievers of Quraish said to the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ, ‘If it would please you to follow us for a year and then for us to return to your religion for a year.’ And so Allāh Almighty revealed:

َمَا تَابُوْنَاُ الْكُفَّرُونِ

Say: O you disbelievers ...”

There are other narrations as well, and though they are slightly different, they impart a similar meaning.

**The Meanings Of Its Words**

(٥۸) *Qul*: Say (O Muhammad ﷺ).

(٥۹) *Yaa Ayubal-Kafirun*: The leaders of *Shirk* in Makkah.
(لا آتمنك ما آثب) Laa 'Abudu Maa Ta'budoon: I worship not that which you worship — in the future.

(لا آتمنك ما آثب) Wa laa Antum Aabidoona Maa 'Abud: Nor will you worship that which I worship — in the future and the present. It has been said that the previous two phrases are meant to emphasize the same point. It has also been said that verses 2 and 3 point to the different objects of worship, for the Prophet ﷺ worships Allâh alone, while the disbelievers worship statues and idols. Meanwhile, verses 4 and 5 point to the difference in worship itself, for the worship of the Prophet ﷺ is pure for Allâh Almighty alone — it is not corrupted by Shîrkh or by forgetfulness; their worship, however, is Shîrkh in its entirety, so the two different kinds of worship can never meet.

(لك دينك) Lakum Deenukum: To you be your religion — the Shîrkh that you follow.

(لي دين) Wa Liya Deen: And to me my religion — Taubah and Islam, which I follow, and which I do not reject.

**What Can Be Derived From These Verses**

1) The belief in divine Preordainment and Decree is established here for both the disbeliever and the believer.

2) Allâh Almighty protected the Prophet ﷺ from accepting the evil proposal of the disbelievers.

3) A clear distinction must be made between the people of faith and the people of disbelief and Shîrkh.

**Important Note**

Ar-Razi said, “When people disagree with one another these days, they say the phrase, ‘To you be your religion, and to me my religion.’ This practice is forbidden; the Qur'an was not revealed to be quoted in such a way; rather, it was revealed to be reflected upon and to be applied.” (Tafsir Ar-Razi 22:148)
Surat An-Nasr

In the Name of Allāh, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful

1. When there comes the help of Allāh and the Conquest.

2. And you see that the people enter in Allāh’s religion in crowds.

3. So, glorify the Praises of your Lord, and ask for His forgiveness. Verily, He is the One Who accepts the repentance and Who forgives.¹

Its Name

It is called Surat An-Nasr because it is a word that appears in the first verse. It literally means “help” and it is referring to Allāh’s help that caused the conquest of Makkah. It is also called Surat Al-Tauhid (farewell, because it suggests the parting of the Prophet from this world).

The Subject Matter Of This Surah

This Surah discusses the conquest of Makkah, through which Allāh Almighty granted victory and honor to the Muslims. Islam then spread throughout the Arabian Peninsula, and ever so quickly, Shirk and misguidance were rooted out. With this conquest people entered into Allāh’s religion in crowds: the banner of Islam was raised and the religion of statues faded away. That the Prophet was informed about this conquest before it occurred is one of the clear signs that indicate the validity of his Prophethood.

¹ (Ar-Rasāl 110:1-3)
Its Relation To What is Before It

In the previous Surah, Allâh Almighty said that the religion that Muhammad ﷺ was calling to was diametrically opposed to the religion of the disbelievers; here, Allâh Almighty informs the disbelievers of Makkah that their religion will die away and that the religion called to by the Prophet ﷺ will overcome it, and become the religion of the vast majority in their populated areas.

The Virtues Of This Surah

At-Tirmithi recorded a Hadith from Anas, may Allâh be pleased with him, and he said that it was Hasan. In it the Prophet ﷺ said:

"إِنَّهَا تَذْهَبُ رَمَطَ رَمَطٍ الْقُرْآنِ"

It (An-Nasr) is equivalent to one quarter of the Qur'an.

In What Context Was This Surah Revealed

Al-Bukhari and others recorded that Ibn 'Abbas, may Allâh be pleased with them, said, "Umar bin Al-Khattab used to make me sit with the elderly men who fought in the Battle of Badr. Some of them were uncomfortable with that and said to 'Umar, "Why do you bring this boy to sit with us while we have sons like him?" One day, 'Umar called me and made me sit in the gathering of those people, and I think that he called me just to show them. 'Umar then asked them, "What do you say about the interpretation of the saying of Allâh:

«إِذَا جَاءَ نَصْرُ اللّهِ وَالْفَتْحُ»

When there comes the help of Allâh and the Conquest?"

Some of them said, "We are ordered to praise Allâh and ask His forgiveness when Allâh's help and Conquest comes to us." Some others kept quiet and did not say anything. On that, 'Umar asked me, "Do you say the same, O Ibn 'Abbas?" I replied, "No." He asked, "What do you say then?" I replied, "That is the sign of the death of Allâh's Messenger ﷺ which Allâh informed him of. Allâh said:

«إِذَا جَآءَ نَصْرُ اللّهِ وَالْفَتْحُ ۙ أَزَابِكَ أَنْتَاسَ بَدَّلُونَ فِي دُمَيْنِ اللّهِ أَوْلُوْيَّةَ»

[1] (An-Nasr 110:1)
Lesson One

When there comes the Help of Allah and the Conquest. So glorify the praises of your Lord and ask His forgiveness. He is the One Who accepts the repentance and forgives.  

With that, 'Umar said, “I do not know anything about it other than what you have said.”

The Meanings Of Its Words

(إِلَىٰ مَسَاءٍ نَاسِرَلا) *Ila fata’a Nasirilahi*: i.e., when Allah makes His Prophet Muhammad ﷺ victorious over his enemies — the polytheists.

(عَلَىٰ مَسَاءٍ نَاسِرَلا) *Al-Fath*: i.e., the conquest of Makkah.

(بِنِي آدم) *Fe Deenilahi*: Allah's religion, i.e., Islam.

(نَفَعَت) *Nfut*: In many packed crowds.

(فَسَاحَتِ بِبَيْتِ رَبِّيَا) *Fasabih Bihamdi Rabbiya*: Glorify Allah Almighty, considering Him far above having a partner, and at the same time, praise Him.

(وَاسْتَغْلِفْ يُهَبُ) *Wastagh Firhu*: Repent to Allah Almighty and ask Him to forgive you.

(صَعَابَا) *Tawwaaba*: i.e., Allah Almighty often accepts the repentance of His worshippers.

The Meaning in Summary

This *Surah* first gives glad tidings of a great event with far reaching implications and then gives the Prophet ﷺ certain commands to follow when that event takes place. At the same time, Allah Almighty alludes to some of the results of that event.

The glad tidings are for Allah's help to the Messenger of Allah ﷺ, the conquest of Makkah, and the mass acceptance of Islam, when throngs upon throngs of people will enter the religion, many of whom were previously its enemies. All of those blessed events took place.

Upon the realization of the conquest, Allah Almighty ordered the Prophet ﷺ to thank Him, glorify Him, praise Him, and ask His forgiveness. Then there are two matters that Allah Almighty alludes to:

---

1) That the victory of the religion will continue and increase with the Prophet’s glorification and praising of Allâh Almighty; and with his asking for Allâh’s forgiveness. Allâh Almighty says:

«إني سَأُصَلِّي لِلرَّحْمَٰنِ ۖ لَأَرْضَيْكُمْ»

If you give thanks, I will give you more.[1]

This was seen during and after the period of the rightly-guided caliphs, which is why Allâh’s help continued, so that the boundaries of Islam expanded to a size unsurpassed by any other religion in history. And there were peoples who entered the fold of Islam, who had previously resisted entering any other religion. But only when Muslims abandoned Allâh’s commands and divided into groups did well-known events take place that signified something of a decline for Muslims. Nonetheless, Allâh’s favors and mercy for this nation and religion have reached high levels that surpassed anyone’s expectations and dreams.

2) That the Prophet’s death is near. His life was a most superior one, and in Islam, all superior matters end with asking forgiveness from Allâh ﷺ, such as in the prayer and Hajj. By ordering the Prophet ﷺ to praise Him and seek forgiveness from Him, Allâh Almighty hints to his death, and suggests that he should prepare to meet his Lord. So the Prophet ﷺ ended his life on the highest of notes - may Allâh’s blessings and peace be upon him. When bowing and prostrating, he ﷺ would say, “How perfect You are, O Allâh, our Lord, and I praise you. O Allâh, forgive me.”

What Can Be Derived From These Verses

1) It is legislated to inform others of someone’s death, but not in the way of an announcement and not in a loud voice.

2) When a blessing is realized for us, we must be thankful to Allâh Almighty; one way of doing so is to make the prostration for thankfulness.

3) When bowing or prostrating in the prayer, it is legislated to say, “How perfect You are, O Allâh, our Lord, and I praise you. O Allâh, forgive me.”

[1] (Ibnabîn 14:7)
4) Allah’s religion is Islam, for He said:

\[
\text{إِنَّ الَّذِينَ يَبِينُونَ عَنۡدَهُمَا ةِنَّ الله}
\]

Truly, the religion with Allah Almighty is Islam.[1]

And, He said:

\[
\text{وَمَنِ يَبِينُ عَنۡدَهُمَا إِلَّا إِلَهَيۡنَا فَلَنۡ يُقَسِّمَ وَنَّهَا}
\]

And whoever seeks the religion other than Islam, it will never be accepted of him.[2]

5) We appreciate the virtues of saying “Sulbaanallah (How perfect Allah is!)” and “Alhamdulillah (All praise is for Allah)” when we consider this: To glorify and praise Allah Almighty was enough for the Prophet ﷺ and his nation to fulfill what was incumbent upon them in terms of showing thankfulness for the blessings of the victory and conquest.

Surat Al-Masad

In the Name of Allah, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful

1. Perish the two hands of Abu Lahab, and perish he. 2. His wealth and his children will not benefit him! 3. He will be burnt in a Fire of blazing flames! 4. And his wife too, who carries wood. 5. In her neck is a twisted rope (of Masad (palm fiber)).[1]

Its Name

It is called Surat Al-Masad because it mentions that Umm Jamil, the wife of Abu Lahab, will have a twisted rope of palm fiber tied around her neck in the Hellfire.

It is also called Surat Tabbat, a name that is taken from the first word of the first verse, which means, perish the two hands of Abu Lahab. It is also called Abu Lahab and Lahab.

The Subject Matter Of This Surah

This Surah deals with the punishment and destruction of Abu Lahab and his wife. Abu Lahab was an enemy of Allah Almighty and His Messenger ﷺ so bitter was his enmity that he abandoned his living in order to follow the Prophet ﷺ wherever he would go and discourage people from believing in him. This Surah promises him that the Hellfire will surround him from all directions and that he will roost therein. His wife accompanies him because she was his

[1] (Al-Masad 111:1-5)
partner, helping him to harm the Prophet ﷺ.

**Its Relation To What is Before It**

In *Surat An-Nasr*, Allah Almighty informs us that the recompense for the obedient worshipper is victory in this world and a great reward in the Hereafter; meanwhile, in *Surat Al-Masad* Allah Almighty shows us the end awaiting the disobedient: loss in this world and punishment in the Hereafter.

**In What Context Was This Surah Revealed**

In their *Sahih*, Al-Bukhari and Muslim recorded that Sa`id bin Jubair narrated that Ibn `Abbas, said, “When

وأذر عميري ألقاها

And warn your tribe of near kindred.

was revealed, Allah’s Messenger ﷺ climbed As-Safa and said:

يا سباحاً

‘Yaa Sabaaba; (A loud call for help, one that is usually made during the morning time).’

The people of Quraish gathered around him and said, ‘What is the matter with you?’ He said:

أرأيتم إن أخبرنيكم أن العدو مصعبكم أو معتقكم أم ما كنت تصادفوني

‘If I were to tell you that the enemy was coming in the morning or evening, would you believe me.’

They said, ‘Yes, indeed!’ He ﷺ said,

فأنا لذنب لكم يبُنِي مَعِنَّاك شَيْبًا

‘Then I am a warner to you of an imminent punishment that is severe.’

Abu Lahab said, ‘Perish and loss to you, is this why you called us.’

And then Allah Almighty revealed:

:notranslate:}

بيتَ دَفْنِيْا أَيْ لَهْسَ

Perish the two hands of Abu Lahab and perish he!’
The Meaning Of Its Words

(تَباَبُتْ يَدَا آَبِي لَهَابٍ) Tabbat Yadaa Abee Lahab: Literally, may his hands be perished and lost; but here, it is referring to his deeds.

(وَتَباَبَ) Wa Tabb: The word for perished is used again, but this time it means, may he perish himself in the Hellfire.

(مَا أَغْنَى عَنْهُ عَلَى الْأَلَامِ وَا مَا حَقَّكَ) Maa Aghnaa Anhu Maaluboo waa Maa Kasab: What will his wealth serve him in the face of Allâh’s anger and punishment, in this world and in the Hereafter!

(وَمَا حَقَّكَ) Wa Maa Kasab: i.e., his wealth, children, and so on.

(سَيُشْلِلُ نَارًا ثَابَتَ لَهَابٍ) Sa’asla Naaran Thaata Lahab: He will be burnt in a Fire of blazing flames.

(تَنَّى لَهَابٍ) Ibaata Lahab: Blazing and burning.

(وَامْرَابُ) Waamraa’tubu: i.e., Umm Jamil, his wife.

(حَمْلَالَةُ الْحَثَابَ) Hammalatal-Hatab: i.e., she will carry the thorns of Sa’dan, which she used to scatter on paths she expected the Prophet ﷺ to take.

(فِي جِيَدَتِهَا) Fii Jedidatii: i.e., on her neck.

(حَبْلُ النَّمْيَ مَاسَادٍ) Hablu努m-mim Masad: i.e., made from palm fiber.

The Meaning in Summary

This Surah discusses the destruction of Abu Lahab, an uncle of the Prophet ﷺ. He was a bitter enemy and would inflict severe harm on the Prophet ﷺ. He had no religion, no scruples, and not even a sense of loyalty to relatives — may Allâh punish him severely. Allâh Almighty condemned Abu Lahab in this Surah, which is to serve as a humiliation for him until the Day of Judgement. So He said:

«تَباَبُتْ يَدَا آَبِي لَهَابٍ»

Perish the two hands of Abu Lahab.

Meaning, he will be lost and humiliated in his works.

«وَتَباَبَ»

He will never escape.

«وَمَا أَغْنَى عَنْهُ عَلَى الْأَلَامِ»
Lesson One

His wealth and children will not benefit him...
The wealth he has that causes him to transgress.

...and children.

None of this will avert Allâh’s punishment from him when he suffers it.

He will be burnt in a Fire of blazing flames!

Meaning, he will be surrounded by the Fire from every side, he and his wife who carried the wood. She was severe in her atrocities against Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ, she and her husband cooperating in sin and transgression, rushing and hastening to evil in any way they could to harm the Messenger ﷺ. She would even scatter Safdan (a tree) thorns in the path where the Prophet ﷺ would walk.

In her neck is a twisted rope of Masad.

Meaning around her neck will be a rope of palm fiber, as a judgement from Allâh for their enmity against Allâh and His Messenger ﷺ.

What Can Be Derived From These Verses

1) Allâh Almighty destroyed not only Abu Lahab’s wicked plans to hurt the Prophet ﷺ, but destroyed him as well.

2) Neither money nor children can avail a person when he deserves the Hellfire for perpetrating deeds that anger Allâh Almighty.

3) It is categorically forbidden to harm a believer.

4) That being related to a righteous person will be of no help if one is following shirk and disbelief, for was not Abu Lahab the uncle of the Prophet ﷺ, and is not his abode the blazing Hellfire.

5) There is an amazing miracle in this chapter. It was revealed while Abu Lahab and his wife were still alive and it informed them that they would be punished in the Hellfire, which meant that they would not accept Islam before they died. And indeed, things turned out exactly as Allâh Almighty informed, and He Almighty is the All-Knower of both the seen and the unseen.
Surat Al-Ikhlas

In the Name of Allāh, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful

1. Say: 'He is Allāh Al-Mighty, the One. 2. Allāhus-Samad (Allāh — the Se.ficient Master, Whom all creatures need, He neither eats nor drinks). 3. He begets not, nor was He begotten. 4. And there is none coequal or comparable to Him.'[1]

Its Name

It has many names, the most famous of which is Surat Al-Ikhlas, because it speaks about the pure Tawḥīd of Allāh Almighty, Who is free from all faults, and Who has no partner.

The Subject Matter of This Surah

It discusses the perfect Qualities of Allāh, the Exalted, the One, qualities that are eternal. He Almighty doesn't need anyone, but all turn to Him with their needs. Far above is He from having any faults and from anyone being similar to, or like Him. This chapter refutes the Christians, who believe in the trinity, and it refutes the polytheists, who believe that He Almighty has children — far, far is Allāh Almighty above the evil they attribute to Him.

Its Relation To What is Before It

Surat Al-Kāfīrūn frees one from having any ties with all forms of

[1] (Al-Ikhlas 112:1-4)
disbelief and Shirk, while this Surah establishes the opposite of Shirk and disbelief — Taubid, for indeed Allah Almighty has all perfect qualities that are eternal in their perfection, while He Almighty is free from having a partner or one who is similar to Him. That is why these two Surahs are often recited together in prayer — such as the two units of (the Sunnah prayer for) Fajr and after Taauf, the Sunnah prayer after Magrib, the Istikkarah prayer, and the traveller’s prayer.

The Virtues Of This Surah

There are many Akadib that have been related mentioning the virtues of this Surah, some of which signify that when one recites it, his reward is equal to that for reciting one-third of the Qur’an. Muslim and Al-Tirmithi recorded that Abu Hurairah, may Allah be pleased with him, related that Allah’s Messenger ﷺ said:

«احْتَضَنُواْ فَأَيِّنَّا سَأَلْتُمُّ عَلَيْكُمْ مِنَ الْقُرْآنِ»

Gather together, for I will recite to you one-third of the Qur’an.

When some people gathered, the Prophet ﷺ came out to them and recited:

«فَلَوْنِ حَدَّىٰ اللَّهُ عَزِّ ذَلِكَ»

Say: “He is Allah, (the) One.”

Then he entered, and the Companions said to one another, “The Messenger of Allah ﷺ said, ‘I will recite to you one-third of the Qur’an?’” Then the Prophet ﷺ came out and said:

«إِذْ لَدَيْنِ: سَأَلْتُمُّ عَلَيْكُمْ مِنَ الْقُرْآنِ، إِلَيْنَ لَدَيْنِ»

Indeed, I said that I would recite one-third of the Qur’an to you; indeed, it is equal to one-third of the Qur’an.

In What Context Was This Surah Revealed

Imam Ahmad, Al-Tirmithi, and Ibn Jarir (At-Tabari) recorded that Ubaa bin Ka’b said that the polytheists said to the Prophet ﷺ, “O Muhammad, tell us of your Lord’s lineage.” And Allah Almighty revealed:
Say: “He is Allâh, (the) One. Allâh— the Self-Sufficient Master, Whom all creatures need. He neither eats nor drinks). He begets not, nor was He begotten. And there is none coequal or comparable to Him.”

**The Meanings Of Its Words**

(Qul Huwâllahu Abad): Say, O Muhammad, to the one who asks you about your Lord, “He is Allâh, the One.”

(Allâh— the Self-Sufficient Master): Allâh is the only One Who deserves to be worshipped.

(As-Samad): The Self-Sufficient Master, Whom all creatures perpetually ask to have their needs fulfilled.

(Lâm Yâhd): He Almighty will never perish, for nothing is born except that it dies.

(Wa Lam Yoolad): There was never a time that He Almighty didn’t exist and then was brought into being; rather, He Almighty always was and always will be.

(Wa Lam Yakulluha Kifân Abad): There is none that is similar or equal to Him.

**The Meaning in Summary**

Allâh Almighty orders us to say the following with certainty and conviction and understanding: “He is Allâh, the One.” For He Almighty alone is perfect; He Almighty has the Most Beautiful Names and the Most Perfect and Exalted Attributes, and His Actions are most divine — there is nothing similar or equal to Him. Everyone in the heavens and earth turns to Him Almighty to fulfill their needs, for they are most needy of Him. Indeed Allâh Almighty is perfect and complete — His Knowledge is perfect and complete, His mercy is perfect and complete, and so are His other Qualities. From His perfection and completeness is that He begets not, nor was He begotten; He Almighty indeed doesn’t need anyone. “And there is none equal or comparable to Him”: Not in His Names, not in His
Attributes, and not in His Actions, Exalted is He, Most High. This chapter deals with that category of *Tawhid* that relates to His Names and Attributes.

**What Can Be Derived From These Verses**

1) In this *Suurah*, we learn about Allâh Almighty by learning some of His Names and Attributes.

2) *Tawhid* and prophethood are affirmed in this *Suurah*.

3) It is from the greatest of falsehood to ascribe a child to Allâh Almighty.

4) We must worship Allâh Almighty alone, without associating any partner with Him, for He Almighty alone has the right to be worshipped by His creation.
**Surat Al-Falaq**

In the Name of Allah, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful

1. Say: "I seek refuge with (Allah) the Lord of the Falaq (daybreak).
2. From the evil of what He has created; 3. And from the evil of the darkening (night) as it comes with its darkness; (or the moon as it sets or goes away). 4. And from the evils of those who practice witchcraft when they blow in the knots. 5. And from the evil of the envious when he envies."[1]

**Its Name**

It is called *Surat Al-Falaq* because that word appears in the first verse: “I seek refuge with (Allah) the Lord of the Falaq.”

**The Subject Matter Of This Surah**

Here, the reciter seeks refuge from the evil found in the creation. We are taught in this *Surah* to take refuge in the sanctuary of the Most Merciful. So we seek refuge in Allah from the evil of the night when it becomes dark, a time when souls feel uncomfortable and when evil and the people of evil spread throughout the land. We also seek refuge here from the envious and the magician. This is one of the two chapters that the Prophet ﷺ would read to take protection with Allah Almighty.

[1] (*Al-Falaq* 113:1-5)
Its Relation To What is Before It

In Surat Al-Khlas, Allah Almighty explained something of His Divinity, teaching us not to ascribe to Him that which is not suitable to Him, His Names, or His Attributes. Here, we learn what we should take refuge in Allah Almighty from, regarding this world; we also learn of some of those from creation who try to prevent people from worshipping Allah Almighty alone, such as the polytheists and the rest of the devils from mankind and the jinn.

The Virtues Of the Mu'awwidhatain

Muslim in his Sahih, Ahmad, At-Tirmithi and An-Nasa'i, all recorded that 'Uqba bin 'Amir said, “Allah’s Messenger ☪️ said:

اَلْلَّهُ عَزَّ وَجُلُّ فَيْلِلَّ بُصُورَتُهُمْ أَمَّمُ ُبُصُورَتُهُمْ كَذِيهِ”

Did you not see that there have been verses revealed tonight the like of which has not been seen before? (They are:)

قَلْ أَعُوذُ بِرَبِّ الْفَلاَقِ

Say: “I seek refuge with the Lord of the Falaq.”

قَلْ أَعُوذُ بِرَبِّ الْقَابِسِ

Say: “I seek refuge with the Lord of mankind.”

Al-Bukhari and the Sunan Compilers recorded the usage of these three Surahs related to seeking refuge as a means of cure. 'Aishah, may Allah be pleased with her, said that when Allah’s Messenger ☪️ would take rest in his bed every night, he would gather his hands, blow a mist of saliva into them, and recite into them:

قَلْ هُوَ الَّذِي أَحْكَمَ

Say: “He is Allah, (the) One.”

قَلْ أَعُوذُ بِرَبِّ الْفَلاَقِ

Say: “I seek refuge in (Allah) the Lord of the Falaq.”

and:

قَلْ أَعُوذُ بِرَبِّ الْقَابِسِ

Say: “I seek refuge in (Allah) the Lord of mankind.”

Then he would wipe his hands over those areas of his body that he
was able to reach, beginning with his head, his face, and then the front part of his body, doing all of the above three times.

**In What Context Were The Mu‘awwidhātāin Revealed**

The circumstances surrounding the revelation of this *Surah* relate to the story of the spell cast by Lubayd bin Al-A’sām, the Jew upon Allāh’s Messenger as recorded in the Two *Sahih* from ‘Aishah, may Allāh be pleased with her. He cast a spell by taking the remains of the Prophet’s hair after he combed it and by taking the teeth of the comb. He then took a string, put eleven knots in it that were pricked by needles. On that occasion, the *Mu‘awwidhātāin* (the last two *Surahs* of the Qur’ān) were revealed. Each time the Prophet recited a verse, one of the knots would untie. The Prophet felt a sense of liveliness as the last knot became untied; he stood as if he was freed from a rope being tied around him. Jibrīl began to read invocations upon him, saying, “In the Name of Allāh, I read invocations that, by the Will of Allāh, are meant to cure) from all things that harm you, from the evil of the jealous one and the one with the evil eye. And may Allāh cure you.”

**The Meanings Of Its Words**

(َ_review) *A‘oothu*: I take refuge and protection in...

(*split*) *Al-Falaq*: A splitting in something until one part of it separates from another. It is said that it refers to the morning.

(َ_owner) *Ar-Rabb*: The sole Owner and Controller of the universe: Allāh Almighty.

(َ_secure) *War-Rabb*: *Ar-Rabb* is more suitable in this context than all of Allāh’s other Names, because protecting from harm is one of the Qualities of the Lord.

(َ_from) *Min Sharri Maa Khaalaq*: From animals and inanimate objects.

(*dark*) *Ghaasiqin*: The night when its darkness is most intense.

(*enter*) *Waqab*: When the darkness enters it, because it is a time when evil permeates.

(*three*) *An-Na‘aathaaq*: Magicians who blow in knots.

(*many*) *Feel-Uqad*: The plural of ‘Uqadah, which means knot.
Magicians make knots from rope, thread and the like. 
Arabic: (النَّطَرَة) (Al-Natr: Blowing, with spit coming out from the mouth).
Arabic: (حلَّب) (Haals: The one who desires for the blessings of others to be taken away from them.

**The Meaning in Summary**

Alláh Almighty orders us to say:

«أَعُوذُ بِاللهِ مِن شَرِّ ما خَلَقَ»

I seek protection meaning, we should say it, seeking protection in Him.

«بِإِنْفَضَاءِ الْفَلَقِ»

with the Lord of Al-Falaq

The splitter of the seed and the pit, and the splitting of the dawn.

«وَمِنْ شَرِّ ما خَلَقَ»

from the evil of what He has created.

— including men, jinn and animals. So we seek protection from them with their Creator.

Then Alláh Almighty, after saying that in general, mentions a specific example:

«وَمَنْ شَرِّ عَبْسٍ إِذَا أَخَذَ»

From the evil of the darkening (night) as it comes with its darkness. 
At night, evil spirits and harmful animals roam in the open.

«وَمِنْ شَرِّ المَكْسَرِ فِي اللَّيْلِ»

And from the evils of those who practice witchcraft when they blow in the knots. 

i.e., from the evil of magicians who practice their nefarious activities by blowing into knots.

«وَمِنْ شَرِّ حَاسِبٍ إِذَا حَسَبَ»

And from the evil of the envious when he envies. 
The envious is one who wishes for the blessings to be removed from the one that he is envious of. He strives to the best of his ability to
have that blessing removed; to foil his plans, we need to seek refuge in Allâh Almighty from his evil. One category of the envious one is that of the evil eye, for the evil eye only results from an envious person who has a wicked nature and evil soul.

In this Surah, we seek refuge in Allâh Almighty from evil in general and in specific; in it, we learn that magic is a reality, the harms of which we should beware of, and so we seek refuge in Allâh Almighty from magic and from its practitioners.

**What Can Be Derived From These Verses**

1) We must seek protection in Allâh Almighty from every frightful thing and from anything we cannot defend ourselves from, either because that thing is hidden or because we are not able (to defend ourselves from it).

2) It is forbidden to blow in knots, for it is a form of magic. Performing magic is disbelief; the punishment for the magician is execution by sword.

3) Envy is categorically forbidden, for it is a most dangerous disease: it made the son of Adam kill his brother and it led the brothers of Yûsûf to plot against him. And because of envy, Adam was taken out of Paradise.

4) Al-Ghibaâh (desire) is not a form of envy. The difference is that the envious person wishes for a blessing to be removed from his brother, while desire means that one wants what his brother has without wishing for that blessing to be taken away from his brother.

5) Magic is real; one should be wary of its harm by seeking refuge in Allâh Almighty from it and from its practitioners.

6) The one who is responsible for the evil eye is in the same category as the envious one, for they have the same evil and wicked nature.

7) There are three things that Allâh Almighty specifically mentioned as things that we should seek refuge from, such as the night when it becomes most dark; during the night, as Ar-Razi mentioned, predators come out of their lairs, harmful rodents and insects come out of their dark hideouts, the thief attacks, fires occur; little help can be found at that time, when the people of evil and corruption are in their greatest numbers.
Surat An-Nas

In the Name of Allah, the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful

1. Say: 'I seek refuge with (Allâh) the Lord of mankind, 2. The King of mankind, 3. The Ilâh (God) of mankind, 4. From the evil of the whisperer (devil who whispers in the hearts of men) who withdraws (from his whispering in one's heart after one remembers Allâh), 5. Who whispers in the breasts of mankind, 6. Of jinn and mankind'.

Its Name

It is called Surat An-Nas not only because it is a word that appears in its first verse, but also because it is a word that appears five times in this short Surah.

The Subject Matter Of This Surah

In it, we seek protection with Allâh Almighty from the most evil and wicked of our enemies, Iblîs (Satan, i.e., the Devil), and from his helpers, some of whom are from the jinn and some of whom are from mankind. The Devil and his helpers strive to lead man astray by whispering evil ideas into his heart and by any other means available.

The Meanings Of Its Words

(‘A‘oolhu: I seek refuge, protection, and aid in...

[1] (An-Nas 114:1-6)
**Explanation of Important Lessons**

(Bi-Rabbīn-Naas): The Creator, Owner, and Lord of mankind.

(Mālikīn-Naas): The Master, King and Ruler of mankind.

(Arabīn-Naas): The God of mankind, because no one deserves to be worshipped save Him.

(Min Sharrīl-Wasūsas): From the evil of the whisperer (Shaitān), the noun is used because he whispers much evil into the hearts of men.

(Al-Khannaas): The one who recoils and draws back from the heart when Allāh Almighty is remembered.

(Fī Sūdūrin-Naas): (The Shaitān whispers) in their hearts when they are neglectful in remembering Allāh Almighty.

(Minal-Jinnatī wān-Naas): From the devils of the jinn and from the devils of mankind.

**The Meaning in Summary**

In this Surah we seek refuge in the Lord, King and God of mankind from the Shaitān (Satan), who is the source and material of all evil. He whispers in the hearts of men, beautifying evil deeds to them, making those deeds take on a good form. He invigorates them to do evil and enervates them from doing good, always twisting and distorting reality. But when one remembers His Lord and seeks His aid, the Shaitān recoils and draws back. Therefore, man should always seek refuge and protection in Allāh Almighty, the Lord of all that exists. The Shaitān strives to take man away from his main purpose, the worship of Allāh Almighty alone, which is why we must repel his evil by remembering Allāh Almighty; indeed, the Shaitān desires to make men join him and desires to make them become some of the inhabitants of the Hellfire. Whisperings and enticements to doing evil can issue from both jinn and men, which is why Allāh Almighty says, “Of jinn and mankind.”

Explaining this chapter, Ibn Kathir said that three of Allāh’s Attributes are mentioned: Lordship (Rubūbīyāt), Kingship (Mulk), and Godhood (Ulbīyāt).

He Almighty is the Lord, King, and God of all things. Because Allāh
Almighty has those perfect qualities, we seek refuge and protection in Him from the evil whisperings of the *khanna* (i.e., the *Sāhib* or companion, who recoils when Allāh Almighty is remembered). To every man is appointed a devil companion, who beautifies evil deeds in his eyes. In his *Sahih*, Muslim recorded that ‘Abdullah bin Mas‘ūd, may Allāh be pleased with him, said Allāh’s Messenger ﷺ said:

"همَّ يُنَظُّمُ فِي نَفْسِكَ إِلاَّ وَقَدْ وُضِعَ فِي قَرِيْبِكَ مِنَ الْجَنَّ "

"There is none from you except that he is entrusted with a companion from the jinn.”

The Companions asked, “And you as well, O Messenger of Allāh.” He said:

"وَزِيَّانِي إِلاَّ أَنِّي أَجْعَلُ عَلَيْهِمَا قَبْلَ اسْتَحْلَامِهِمْ فَلاَ يَأْسَرُونِي إِلاَّ يَحَرِّرُونِ"

"And me as well, except that Allāh has helped me overcome him, and he has become a Muslim. He doesn’t order me except to do good.”

There are two narrations: the first one, as mentioned above, indicates that the jinn companion of the Prophet ﷺ accepted Islam and became a believer; the second narration indicates that no, his jinn companion didn’t accept Islam, but that Allāh Almighty kept the Prophet ﷺ safe from his evil and temptation.

**What Can Be Derived From These Verses**

1) We must seek refuge and protection in Allāh Almighty from the *Sāhib* (the Devil).

2) We seek refuge in Allāh Almighty, with His Lordship, with His being the Possessor and Owner of all things, with His being the One true God Who is worshipped alone, with His Beautiful Names and Exalted Attributes.

3) Mankind is honored here as Allāh Almighty specifically mentions that He Almighty is their Lord, even though He Almighty is the Lord of all that exists.

4) The *Sāhib* is man’s most bitter foe; he tries to lead man astray by whispering evil thoughts to him.

5) We must be wary of the *Sāhib*, his whispers, and we should
never be neglectful in remembering Allâh Almighty.

6) When we mention Allâh Almighty, the Shaitân is repelled, and he withdraws in a state of grief.

7) When we seek refuge and protection in Allâh Almighty, we are worshipping Him; so to dedicate this kind of worship to anyone else is Shirk.

8) We must seek refuge and protection in Allâh from both the devils from among the jinn and from the devils among man.

9) Allâh Almighty alone deserves to be worshipped. He is the Owner and Possessor and King of all that exists, and He Almighty alone deserves to be worshipped by creation.

10) Just as the Shaitân whispers in the hearts of man, he also whispers in the hearts of jinn.

**Important Benefit**

The Qur’ân ends on the Mu’awwidhatain and begins with Al-Fatihah, so it has both a good beginning and end. That is the epitome and pinnacle of beauty because the worshipper seeks protection with his Lord at the beginning of his affairs and at the end of them.

**Important Note**

Ibn ‘Abbas, may Allâh be pleased with them, said, “The Shaitân crouches on the heart of the son of Adam; when he (i.e. the son of Adam) forgets and is heedless (of the remembrance of Allâh), he whispers. But when the son of Adam remembers Allâh, he recoils and draws back.”

The Prophet ﷺ said:

«إِنَّ السَّمَّتَانَ وَالْيَدَ مَحْطَطَةٌ عَلَى قَلْبِ ابْنِ آدَمْ إِنَّهُ هُوَ دُرُّ الْأَرْضِ حَيَّةً وَإِنَّ سَمِيْةَ النَّمَثِ ۖ قَلِبًّا وَإِنَّ تِلْثِيْمَ القَلَبِ ۖ ذَلِكَ الْوَكَّلُ الْخَمَاسُ»

Indeed, Shaitân puts his snout on the heart of the son of Adam. If he (the son of Adam) remembers Allâh, he recoils, and if he forgets, he devours his heart; and that is the whispering one who recoils and draws back.
Lesson Two

The Pillars Of Islam

Clarifying the five pillars of Islam, the first and greatest of which is to bear witness that *Laa Ilaa Ilaah uwa Anna Muhammadan Rasoolullah* (none has the right to be worshipped except Allâh and Muhammad is Allâh’s Messenger), with explanation of their meanings, and the conditions of *Laa Ilaa Ilaah* and its meaning: *Laa Ilaah* negates all that is worshipped other than Allâh; *Illa Allâh* affirms that worship must be for Allâh alone, Who has no partner.

As for the conditions of *Laa Ilaa Ilaah*, they are as follows:

1) Knowledge that negates ignorance
2) Certainty which negates doubt
3) Sincerity which negates *Sirk*
4) Truth which negates denial
5) Love which negates hate
6) Submission which negates abandoning
7) Acceptance which negates rejection
8) Disbelief in all that is worshipped other than Allâh

Clarifying the testimony *Muhammadan Rasoolullah* and what it includes: to believe what he informs, to obey what he commands, and to leave what he forbids. And we must worship Allâh only in a way that He Almighty and His Messenger legislated.

Next, a student should learn about the remainder the five pillars of Islam: *Salat*, *Zakat*, fasting the month of Ramadhan, and *Hâ/) to the Sacred House of Allâh for those who are able to perform it.

**********
Defining Islam

Islam means for you to submit yourself to Allâh, by making your worship sincere and pure for Him alone, by obeying Him, and by absolving yourself of Shirk and its people. Shirk (to associate partners with Allâh in worship) was the creed of the Arabs before the advent of Muhammad ﷺ Al-Bukhari related that Abu Raja’ Al-‘Utârîdi said, “We used to worship stones, and when we would find a stone that was better than the one we were worshipping, we would throw the former away and start worshipping the latter. If we couldn’t find a stone, we would gather a heap of dirt, then we would bring a sheep and milk it over that pile, and then we would walk around it (as a ritual worship).”

In many different verses, the Qur’an clarified for us the state of nations in general before the advent of the Prophet’s message; Allâh Almighty says:

٣٩ـ وَمَن ۚ عَبَّدَ اللَّهَ مَا أَلَّهُ عِنْدَ اللَّهِ فَلَمْ يُعْفَرْهُ وَلَا يُعُلْهُ وَمَنْ عَبَّدُوْنَ هُؤُلَاءِ مَعِينًا١

And they worship besides Allâh things that hurt them not, nor profit them, and they say: “These are our intercessors with Allâh.”[1]

٤٠ـ وَلَيْسَ ۚ أَحْدَادُ إِلَّا أَحْدَادَ أُولَٰئِكَ الَّذِينَ ۖ مُعَمِّدُوهُمْ إِلَّا لِبَرَيْبَمُهُمْ إِلَى اللَّهِ رَجُلٌ٢

And those who take protectors and helpers besides Him (say): “We worship them only that they may bring us near to Allâh.”[2]

٤١ـ وَإِنَّا نَجْعَلُ اللَّهَ وَالَّذِينَ آمَنُوا بَيْنَ الْأَمْسِكَانِ وَالْآخَانِ ۛ لَيْدُونَ الرَّحْمَةَ لِيُعْفَرُوْنَ وَلَا يُعُلْهُ ﴿۴۱﴾ وَلَيْسَ آخَارُ مِنْهُمْ إِلَّا وَعَضُولُهُمْ ﴿۴۲﴾ وَلَيْسَ آخَارُ مِنْهُمْ إِلَّا مَعِينًا٢

Verily, We made the Shayatin (devils) protectors and helpers for those who believe not. And when they commit a Fadisbah (evil deed, going around the Ka’bah in naked state, every kind
of unlawful sexual intercourse etc.), they say: “We found our fathers doing it, and Allâh has commanded us of it.” Say: “Nay, Allâh never commands of Fâbisbâb. Do you say of Allâh what you know not?”[1]

Surely they took the Shâyâtân (devils) as protectors and helper instead of Allâh, and consider that they are guided.[2]

And they assign to Allâh a share of the tilth and cattle which He has created, and they say: “This is for Allâh,” according to their pretending, “and this is for our (Allâh’s so called) partners.” But the share of their (Allâh’s so called) “partners” reaches not Allâh, while the share of Allâh reaches their (Allâh’s so called) “partners”? Evil is the way they judge! [3]

There are many other verses that impart a similar meaning. Other than the Qu’ran, the sayings of the Prophet ﷺ and of trustworthy historians give us a good glimpse of the state of the previous nations: before the advent of the Prophet’s message, people were practicing many different kinds of Shirk - some worshipped statues and idols, others worshipped the dwellers of graves, others worshipped the sun, moon, and planets, while yet others worshipped other things. The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ invited them all to worship Allâh alone and to leave the falsehood that they and their fathers were upon. Allâh Almighty says:

[1] (Al-A‘îd, 7:27,28)
[2] (Al-A‘îd, 7:30)
Say (O Muhammad ﷺ): "O mankind! Verily, I am sent to you all as the Messenger of Allāh — to whom belongs the dominion of the heavens and the earth. None has the right to be worshiped but He. It is He who gives life and causes death. So believe in Allāh and His Messenger, the Prophet who can neither read nor write, who believes in Allāh and His Words, and follow Him so that you may be guided."[1]

Al-fLam-Ra. (This is) a Book which We have revealed to you in order that you might lead mankind out of darkness into light by their Lord’s Leave to the path of Almighty, the Owner of all praise.[2]

O Prophet! Verily, We have sent you as a witness, and a bearer of glad tidings, and a warner. And as one who invites to Allāh by His Leave, and as a lamp spreading light.[3]

And they were commanded not, but that they should worship Allāh, and worship none but Him Alone.[4]

O mankind! Worship your Lord who created you and those who were before you so that you may become pious.[5]

And your Lord has decreed that you worship none but Him.[6]

[1] (Al-Anf 7:158)
[2] (Ibrāhīm 14:1)
[3] (Al-Kāzib 33:45,46)
[6] (Al-Isra’ 17:23)
Lesson Two

And the verses that impart a similar meaning are many.

In many verses of the Qur'an, Allah informs us that though they were polytheists, they admitted that Allah was their Creator and Provider; they only worshipped other than Him as intermediaries between themselves and Allah. He says:

胰っていました من دون اللة ما لا يَعْلُهُم ولا يَقَعُوْنَ ولا يَمْتَعُوْنَ

And they worship besides Allah things that hurt them not, nor profit them, and they say: “These are our intercessors with Allah.”[1]

Here are only some of the many verses that give a similar meaning:

قُلْ مِنْ يَبْرَأُكُمُ مِنَ الْحَيَاةِ وَالْأَرْضِ أَمِنْ يَبْرَأُكُمُ الْحَيَاةِ وَالْأَرْضِ وَمِنْ يَجِرَ مَعَ الْحَيَاةِ وَالْأَرْضِ أَمِنْ يَجِرَ مَعَ الْحَيَاةِ وَالْأَرْضِ؟

Say: “Who provides for you from the sky and from the earth? Or who owns hearing and sight? And who brings out the living from the dead and brings out dead from living? And who disposes the affairs?” They will say: “Allah.” Say: “Will you not be then afraid of Allah’s punishment?”[2]

وَلَوْ سَأَلْتُمْ مِنْ حَقَّهُمْ لْيَقُولُوْنَ اللَّهُ وَلَا يَقُولُوْنَ

And if you ask them who created them, they will surely say: “Allah.” How then are they turned away?[3]

The Pillars Of Islam:

This Great Religion — Islam — stands on five pillars; as recorded in the Two Sahihs, that Ibn ‘Umar, may Allah be pleased with him, related that the Prophet ﷺ said:

اللهُ الَّذِي إِلَيْهِ تُرُكُوْنَ رَسُوْلُ اللهُ وَإِلَيْهِ تُحْمَلُ اللَّيْلُ وَالْفَجْرُ وَإِلَيْهِ تُحْمَلُ الصَّلَاةُ وَالْبُكْرَةُ وَإِلَيْهِ تُحْمَلُ رَضْيَاً وَإِلَيْهِ تُحْمَلُ النَّبِيُّ ﷺ

[1] (Yunus 10:18)
[2] (Yunus 10:31)
[3] (As-Zukhruf 43:87)
Islam is built on five: The testimony that none has the right to be worshipped but Allah and that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah, the establishment of the prayer, the giving of Zakat, the fasting of Ramadhan, and Hajj (pilgrimage) to the House (the Ka'bah).

The two testimonies comprise the first and most important pillar of Islam. Those testimonies are not meant for one to only utter them on his tongue - even though, by doing so, one outwardly enters the fold of Islam; rather, one must apply its meanings and implications as well. One must sincerely worship Allah alone, believing that He truly deserves his worship, and believing that worship to all else is the greatest of falsehood.

One of the implications of those testimonies is that one must love Allah and His Messengerﷺ, which consequently requires one to worship Allah alone, glorify Him, and follow the way of His Prophet ﷺ. Allah Almighty says:

"أَقْلِمَ إِنَّ كُلَّمَ نُضِرُّنَّ اللهَ فَانْبُعِثِهِنَّ بِحَقِّكُمْ إِنَّهُ حَقَّكُمْ وَهُوَ لَا يُزَاحَ"  

Say: “If you (really) love Allah then follow me, Allah will love you and forgive you of your sins...”[1]

Another one of its implications is that we should obey the Messenger of Allah ﷺ in all that he has commanded us:

"وَمَا نَبَيِّنُنَّ مِنْ نَبِيِّ إِلَّا نُبِيَّاً مَّحْطِمًا وَمَا نُبِيِّنُنَّ عَنْهُ مَهْيَاً"  

And whatsoever the Messenger gives you, take it, and whatsoever he forbids you, abstain (from it).[2]

In a Hadith whose authenticity is agreed upon, the Prophet ﷺ said:

"كَلَّامُ مَنْ كَفَرَ فِي هَذِهِ وَجَدَ إِلَيْهِ حَلاَوةٌ الإِيمَانُ: أَنْ يَكُونَ اللهَ وَرَسُولُهُ أَحَبَّ إِلَّا وَمَا سُواهُمَا .. الحَدِيث"  

When one has in him the following three, he will have found with them the sweetness of faith: That Allah and His Messenger are more beloved to him than all else...

[1] (Aal 'Imran 3:31)
He also said:

لا يوجد أحدكم خطي أي كون أكبَرَ إليكُم وَاللهُ وَوَلَدُه وَالناس أُمُّكم

Not one of you believes until I become more beloved to him than his father, child, and all other people.

The First Pillar Of Islam:

Ash-Shahadah (The Testimony)

"To bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped except Allâh and that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allâh."

Here is an outline of our discussion regarding the first pillar of Islam:

1) A discussion about Laa Ilaha Illâlâh (None has the right to be worshipped except Allâh):
   i) The meaning of Laa Ilaha Illâlâh
   ii) What it means to bear witness to Laa Ilaha Illâlâh.
   iii) Its status
   iv) Its virtues
   v) The pillars of the two testimonies
   vi) The conditions of Laa Ilaha Illâlâh
   vii) Its effects

The Meaning of Laa Ilaha Illâlâh

This phrase of Tawâhid (Islamic Monotheism) contains many lofty meanings and implications; and we must first understand those meanings if we are to apply them; that way our application of the phrase will be based on knowledge. The phrase Laa Ilaha Illâlâh has been mentioned in the Qur'an more than thirty times.

What It Means To Bear Witness To Laa Ilaha Illâlâh

Ash-Shahadah, or to bear witness, means to inform about something that you know of and that you believe to be true and established. That is the meaning of Shahadah in the Arabic language; in the Shahâb it has this meaning. To admit and to believe that none deserves worship except Allâh alone, and He has no partners. So by saying Laa Ilaha Illâlâh, we believe and affirm that none deserves worship except Allâh; we must stay steadfast upon this phrase and apply it. Therefore we must worship Allâh alone without associating any partner with Him. Allâh Almighty says:
So know that Laa Ilaha Illallah (none has the right to be worshipped but Alläh), and ask forgiveness for your sins.[1]

Other Ahadîth give a similar meaning and the Islamic nation agreed that the two testimonies, “I bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped except Allâh and that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allâh,” are the first pillar of Islam, and upon them actions are based, meaning that no deed is accepted without them. The Imams of Hadith relate that the Prophet ﷺ said:

أَلَوْ الْإِسْلَامُ عَلَى هَمَّةٍ ۚ مَهَارَةً أَنَّ لا إِلَهَ إِلَّا الَّذِي كَانَ نُورًا رَحْمَةٌ للْهُ وَإِنَّ الْإِسْلَامَ عَلَى هَمَّةٍ ۚ إِسْمَاعُ الْإِسْلَامِ وَإِسْمَاعُ الرَّكَّازِ وَإِسْمَاعُ رَضَاةٍ وَإِسْمَاعُ رَجْبٍ وَإِسْمَاعُ حَبٍّ لِّيَنَّ اسْتَجْاهَةٍ إِلَيْهِ سَيِّئَةً

Islam is built on five: To bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped except Allâh and that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allâh, the establishment of the prayer, giving the Zakat, fasting the month of Ramadhan, and Ahâj (pilgrimage to Makkah) for whoever is able to bear the journey.

When we reflect on these five pillars, we should appreciate that each one of them deals with an important aspect related to man, and that each one makes up a strong and firm pillar in the house of Islam, a house that no one stays in except for the believer. The phrase of Tauhid (Laa Ilaha Illallah) therefore wholly engages the heart while its effects surface on the limbs. The prayer uses all limbs, it is the strong and firm link between the creature and his Creator. A Muslim’s relation to other Muslims is solidified through the rich giving the Zakat to the poor. A person is comprised of a soul and a body, of purity and desire; if man were left to himself, he would stray far away from Allâh, which is why Allâh legislated fasting for us. When we fast, our soul is cleansed and polished. After the heart has been filled with faith and after wealth is distributed as Allâh wishes, time comes for the societal ties to be strengthened in the Islamic world, and that occurs during their huge national conference during Hej, when Muslims come from all places and gather.

We can also view the pillars from another perspective: the Shabâdah

[1] (Muhammad 47:19)
is a test for the heart; prayer is a test for the limbs and for a Muslim’s ability to organize himself and his time; Zakat is a test for man in his wealth; the fast is a test to see how much one is able to leave his desires for the sake of his Creator and Lord; and the Hujjat is a test to see how much one is able to bear hardship and the difficulties of travelling in the way of Allah.\footnote{Taken from ‘Mar’i Lahu Ilaha Illallah’ by Badrud-Din Muhammad bin ‘Abdullah Az-Zakashi, who died in the year 794 after Hijrah.}

**The Status of Lahu Ilaha Illallah**

When they call to prayer, when they straighten the rows for prayer, during their sermons and conversations — Muslims announce the phrase of Taubid on all of those occasions; it is the phrase by which the earth and the heavens are raised; all of creation is created for this phrase, and with it Allah sent His Messengers, revealed His Books, and legislated His Laws. The Scale and Book of deeds have been set up for it. By this phrase we distinguish between the believers and the disbelievers. And concerning the phrase of Taubid, all will be asked and held accountable for their deeds, some being rewarded and some punished.

The Qiblah and the swords of Judad are both founded on this phrase; the phrase that is Allah’s right upon all of His creatures. It is the phrase of Islam and the key to Paradise. On the Day of Judgement everyone will be asked regarding two matters:

1) Whom did you worship?

2) How did you answer the Messengers?

The first is answered by the realization of one knowing, affirming, and applying Lahu Ilaha Illallah. The second is answered by knowing, following, and obeying the Messenger of Allah \(\text{الرسول الامام} \) \footnote{Zaadul-Ma’aad}.

It is the phrase that distinguishes between disbelief and Islam; it is the phrase of piety; it is the firm rope; and it is the phrase that Ibrahim made lasting among his offspring:

\[\text{وَجُعَّلُهَا كُلَّمَةً بَاِيِّةً فيَ عَسَبابٍ لِّعِلْهَمْ يُرِجُعونَ} \]

And He made it a word lasting among his offspring, that they...
may turn back (to repent to Allâh).[1]

Allâh testified to this phrase Himself, and so did the angels and those who have knowledge from His creation:

\[
\text{La\hspace{0.1em}Ilâha\hspace{0.1em}illâhu\hspace{0.1em}Huwa,\hspace{0.1em}wa\hspace{0.1em}La\hspace{0.1em}Ilâha\hspace{0.1em}illâhu\hspace{0.1em}Huwa,\hspace{0.1em}wa\hspace{0.1em}La\hspace{0.1em}Ilâha\hspace{0.1em}illâhu\hspace{0.1em}Huwa.}\]

Allâh bears witness that *Laâ Ilâha Illâ Huwa* (none has the right to be worshiped but He), and the angels, and those having knowledge (also give this witness); (He is always) maintaining His creation in justice. *Laâ Ilâha Illâ Huwa* (none has the right to be worshiped but He), the All-Mighty, the All-Wise.[2]

**The Virtues Of *Laâ Ilâha Illâ Huwa***

It has many virtues and superior merits that give it a high status; whoever says it sincerely, Allâh makes him enter Paradise; whoever says it without believing in it, his blood is spilled and his wealth is taken, in this world and the Hereafter — and his account is with Allâh. Al-Haithum Ibn Rajab mentioned some of the many virtues of this phrase in his book, *Kalimatu-l-Ikhlaas*. One of its virtues is that it is the price for entering Paradise; when one’s last words are *Laâ Ilâha Illâ Huwa*, he enters Paradise. It also protects one from the Hellfire.

*Laâ Ilâha Illâ Huwa* necessitates forgiveness, wipes away sins, and it is the best of good deeds. It breaks through all barriers until it reaches Allâh. It is the best phrase ever spoken by the Prophets, it is the best form of remembrance, and it is the best deed, and the deed most multiplied. Saying it is equivalent to freeing slaves and it protects one from the *Shaitan*. It is safety from the terrors of the Day of Gathering and it is the slogan of the believers when they will be raised from their graves. For whoever speaks it, the eight doors of Paradise are opened for him: he enters whichever one he pleases.

Another one of its virtues is that those who say it but also do evil deeds might enter the Hellfire, but they will necessarily exit from it.

---

[1] (As Zukhruf 43:28)

[2] (As 'Imran 3:18) Taken from *Mubâadharaat Fee-l-Aqeedah* by Dr. Sâlih Al-Fawzan, p 61.
Lesson Two

What is mentioned above consists of the titles written by Ibn Rajab to enumerate the virtues of Laa Ilaha Illallah; he then went on to clarify and expand on each one of them in his book Kalimatul-Ikhlaas, pp 54-66.

There Are Two Pillars Of Laa Ilaha Illallah

1) The first involves a negation by Laa Ilaha, a statement that does away with all forms of Shirk and that necessitates disbelief in all that is worshipped other than Allah Almighty.

2) The second involves an affirmation by Illallah, wherein we affirm that only Allah deserves to be worshipped.

Both of these pillars are present in the following verse:

\[
قَلِّنِ يَكْفُرُواْ بِالْظَّلَالِ وَيَعْبُدُونَ مَنْ أُولِي الْأَوْلِيَاءِ عَلَيْهِمْ نَكْبَةً
\]

Whoever disbelieves in Taghut (false deities) and believes in Allah, then he has grasped the most trustworthy handhold that will never break. [1]

The first pillar is:

\[
قَلِّنِ يَكْفُرُواْ بِالْظَّلَالِ
\]

Whosoever disbelieves in Taghut.

And the second pillar:

\[
وْعَمِّرْ بِالْأَوَّلِاءِ
\]

And believes in Allah.

In another verse Allah Almighty says:

\[
أَنَاُّذُوُرُ الْغَيْبَ وَأَنتَ لَنَرَى رَبِّكَ عِندَ الْقِيَامَةِ
\]

Verily, I am innocent of what you worship, except Him Who did create me, and verily, He will guide me. [2]

The first pillar:

\[
أَنَاُّذُوُرُ الْغَيْبَ
\]

Verily, I am innocent of what you worship...

[1] (Al-Baqarah 2:256)
[2] (As-Zukhruf 43:26,27)
The second pillar:

...except Him Who did create me...

As Shaikh Muhammad bin ‘Abdul-Wahhab said, “To bear witness that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ means to obey him in what he orders, to believe him in what he informs, to stay away from that which he forbids, and to worship Allâh only in ways that are legislated in Islam.”

When we obey the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ we are in fact obeying Allâh, for Allâh ﷺ says:

قول إن كُنُوتُ نَجَّيْنَكُمْ عَلَيْهِ ﴿۵:۱۲۸﴾

Say: “If you really love Allâh then follow me, Allâh will love you.”[1]

قول أمِينَوا ﷺ وَيَا مُحْمَرَةَ ﴿۵:۱۲۸﴾

Say: “Obey Allâh and the Messenger…”[2]

We must believe what the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ informed us about regarding the past and the future, and regarding the unseen. And we should obey and follow him when he orders us, staying away from that which he forbids:

وَمَا نَزَّلَهُ ﷺ عَلَيْهِنَّ مِنْ نَزْلَةٍ ﴿۵:۱۲۸﴾

And whatsoever the Messenger gives you, take it, and whatsoever he forbids you, abstain (from it).[3]

The Prophet ﷺ said:

ما أُمَرَكُمْ ﷺ فِي أَمَرٍ فَأَطِعُوهُ ﴿۵:۳۲﴾

Whatever matters I have commanded you in, perform from them what you are able; and any matter that I have forbidden you from, stay away from it.

Also, we are limited in our worship of Allâh to only that which the Prophet ﷺ legislated, which is why the second condition for our

deeds to be accepted is following the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ, who said:

"فَمَعَالِمَ عَمَلٍ لَا يَكُونُ عَلَيْهِ آمَنَا فَخَافُوهُ رَبَّكَ"

When one does an action that is not upon our matter, then it is rejected.

There are two pillars to the Testimony *Muhammadur-Rasoolullah* (Muhammad is the Messenger of Allâh):

1) To believe in and accept his message.
2) To believe that he is a slave of Allâh.

He himself said:

"إِنَّمَا أَنَا أَنَا عَبْدُ فَقُولُوا عَبْدُ اللَّهِ وَرَسُولُ اللَّهِ"

Indeed I am only a slave, so say: The slave of Allâh and His Messenger.

Therefore he is not to be raised above his status, nor are we to attribute to him any of the qualities that solely belong to Allâh, such as knowledge of the unseen, the ability to harm or benefit, the ability to remove hardship from the afflicted. In the most important occasions and contexts, Allâh described him as being His slave:

i) In regard to the revelation of the Qur'ân:

"وَمَنْ كَفَرَ لَمْ يُعْلِمِ الْقُرْآنَ عَلَى عِبَادِهِ"

Blessed is He Who sent down the Criterion (of right and wrong, i.e., this Qur'ân) to His slave (Muhammad).[1]

ii) In relation to the Night Journey:

"وَالَّذِينَ أَسْتَبَكَاهُمُ الْيَلِدُ وَأَسْتَهْزَأَهُمُ الْخَبِي́ثُ"

Glorified (and Exalted) is He (Allâh) Who took His slave (Muhammad) for a journey by night.[2]

iii) In relation to prayer and supplication:

"وَفَلَآ أَيُّهَا الْيَتِّمُ قَامُ عَبْدُ اللَّهِ يَسْتَعِيدُ تَجْاهَ نِسْبَةٍ"

And when the slave of Allâh (Muhammad ﷺ) stood up

[1] (Al-Fungun 25:1)
[2] (Al-Isra' 17:1)
invoking in prayer to Him...\(^{[1]}\)

iv) In the context of Allāh being sufficient for him as his Protector and Guardian:

\[ \text{"أَلَيْسِ الَّذِي يَكَفِّي عَبْدُهُ"} \]

Is not Allāh sufficient for His slave?\(^{[2]}\)

Indeed Allāh honored the Prophet ﷺ, and He granted him many noble and wonderful characteristics, characteristics through which Allāh raised him in status and significance in relation to the rest of creation. Some of the ways in which Allāh distinguished him are listed as follows:

1) Allāh mentioned him among the elite group of Prophets, Prophets who were inspired by Allāh Almighty:

\[ \text{"إِنَّا أُوحِيَ إِلَيْكَ كَمَا أُوْحِيَ إِلَى نُوحٍ وَأَيُّوبَ وَيَحُوَّبَ وَيَسَعَى وَإِسْحَاقَ وَإِسْمَعِيلَ وَإِلٌّهُ الْكَانَ مِنْ بَعْدِهِمْ وَآَيٌّ منْ آيَاتِنَا لَأَلْيَمُ بِهِمْ وَأَلْيَمٌ دَاوُدُ رُبُورًا"} \]

Verily, We have inspired you as We inspired Nuh and the Prophets after him; We (also) inspired Ibrahim, Isma'il, Ishaq, Yaqub, and Al-Asbat [the twelve sons of Ya'qub], 'Iesa, Ayub, Yunus, Harun, and Sulaiman, and to Dawud We gave the Zabur\(^{[3]}\)

2) He is the last of the Prophets:

\[ \text{"مَا كُانَ مُحَمَّدًا أَنَّ أَبَاءَ أَنَّ أَبَاءَ أَنَّ مَسْأَلَكَهُمْ وَلَبِكْ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ وَخَاتَمُ النَّبِيُّينَ"} \]

Muhammad is not the father of any man among you, but he is the Messenger of Allāh and the last (end) of the Prophets.\(^{[4]}\)

3) He is the first of the Muslims, those who submit themselves to Allāh:

\[ \text{"إِنَّمَا أَنَّ أَقْبَتْ أَوْلُ منْ أَسْلَمَ"} \]

\(^{[1]}\) \(\text{Al Jīm } 72:19\)

\(^{[2]}\) \(\text{As-Zumar } 39:36\)

\(^{[3]}\) \(\text{An-Nīsa' } 4:163\)

\(^{[4]}\) \(\text{Al-Ăzāb } 33:40\)
Verily, I am commanded to be the first of those who submit
to Allâh (as Muslims).\footnote{\textit{Al-An'âm} 6:14}

4) We should appreciate his high ranking when we learn that he is
closer to the believers than their own selves are and that his wives
are their mothers:

\begin{verse}
\textit{وَأَرَادُوهُ أَلَّوْفُكُمْ بِأَنفُسَكُمْ وَأَرَادُوهُ أَلَّوْفُكُمْ بِأَنفُسَ أَبْنَائَكُمْ}
\end{verse}

The Prophet is closer to the believers than their own selves
are, and his wives are their (believers') mothers (as regards
respect and marriage). And blood relations among each other
have closer personal ties in the Decree of Allâh (regarding
inheritance).\footnote{\textit{Al-An'âm} 6:14}

5) On the Day of Gathering, he will have special rights from Allâh to
intercede for Muslims; he is the Prophet of mercy, the best of
creation. The general nature of his message is meant for both
mankind and jinn. He is the chief of the children of Adam and he
is the Prophet of Islam.

\textbf{The Conditions Of \textit{Laâl Illâha Illallâh} Are Seven}

While some scholars believe that there are seven conditions to the
Phrase of \textit{Ikhlaas} (purity, i.e., the phrase, \textit{Laâl Illâha Illallâh}), others
hold that there are eight:

1. Knowledge: When one knows that Allâh is the only One Who
deserves to be worshipped and that to worship other than Him is
falsehood, and when he adheres to the implications of that
knowledge, he truly knows its meanings. Allâh Almighty says:

\begin{verse}
\textit{لاَ إِلَهَ إِلَّاَ إِلَهُ أَنْتُشَاهُ}
\end{verse}

So know that \textit{Laâl Illâha Illallâh} (none has the right to be
worshipped but Allâh).\footnote{\textit{Al-'Azâ'z} 33:6}

\begin{verse}
\textit{إِلَّاَ إِلَهَ مَنْ كَاشَدَ بِالْحَقِّ وَهُمْ يُعَلِّمُونَ}
\end{verse}

Except those who bear witness to the truth, and they

\footnote{\textit{Al-Mâ'un} 47:19}
The Prophet said:

"إِنَّ مَغْلُوبًا إِنَّمَا يَعْلَمُ أَنَّهُ إِلاَّ إِنَّهُ إِلاَّ اللَّهُ كَحْلُ الْجَنَّةِ"

When one dies, knowing that indeed none has the right to be worshipped except Allâh, he enters Paradise.

2. Certainty: One must not only say this phrase, but he must also believe with certainty and conviction in his heart that what he is saying is true: That Allâh truly deserves to be worshipped and that all others taken as gods are false:

«وَالَّذِينَ يَمْهَلُونَ بِمَا أَنْزَلَ اللَّهُ وَمَا أَنْزَلْنَاهُ مِنْ فَضْلٍ وَأَعْلَمُونَ»

And who believe in that which has been sent down (revealed) to you, and in what was sent down before you, and they believe with certainty in the Hereafter.]

Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with him, related that the Prophet said:

«أَشْهِدُ أَنَّا إِلاَّ اللَّهُ وَأَلِيمُ رَسُولُ اللَّهِ إِلاَّ اللَّهُ قَدْ خَفَّفَ عَنْ الْجَاهِلِينَ عَنْ نَذِرِها»

I bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped except Allâh and that indeed I am the Messenger of Allâh. No slave meets Allâh with this, having no doubt thereof, except that he enters Paradise. (Recorded by Muslim)

In another Hadith, Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with him, related that the Prophet said to him:

«فَمَنْ أَطْبَقَ وَرَاءَ هَذَا الحَائِلِ يَشْهَدُ اللَّهُ إِلاَّ إِنَّهُ إِلاَّ اللَّهُ مُسْتَقْبِينَ بِهَا فَتَابَةً»

Whoever you meet behind this wall who testifies that indeed none has the right to be worshipped except Allâh, with his heart believing in it with certainty, then give him glad tidings of Paradise. (Recorded by Muslim)
Allâh Almighty described the believers:

> "إِنَّ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ الْذِّينَ مَاتُوا بِالْشَّهَادَةِ وَرَسَلُوِيْنَ،َٓ إِنَّمَّا تَرَكُّوا مَعَ عِبَادِهِمْ،َٓ إِنَّمَّا يُؤْمِنُونَ بِهِمْ،َٓ إِنَّمَّا يُؤْمِنُونَ بِاللَّهِ وَالْيَوْمِ الْأَخِرِ وَرَأَيْنَاهُمَا فَهُمُ فِيهِمْ مُهْرُونَ.َّ" 

Only those are the believers who believe in Allâh and His Messenger, and afterward doubt not.[1]

Meaning, they have a complete level of certainty and conviction. Those who have doubts are the hypocrites:

> "إِنَّمَا يَسْتَنْدَلُّونَ الْذِّينَ لَا يُؤْمِنُونَ بِهِ وَلَا يُؤْمِنُونَ بِاللَّهِ وَلَا يُؤْمِنُونَ بِالْيَوْمِ الْأَخِرِ، وَأَرَانَا فَلَوْمَاهُمَا فَهُمُ فِيهِمْ مُهْرُونَ.َّ"

It is only those who believe not in Allâh and the Last Day and whose hearts are in doubt that ask your leave (to be exempted from Ḥajj). So in their doubts they waver.[2]

3. Sincerity that negates Shirk: one must perform all deeds and actions, sincerely and purely for Allâh, seeking His pleasure. That intention must not be corrupted or polluted in the least:

> "وَمَا أُرِيدُ أَنْ يُحْيَى الَّذِينَ كَانُوا نَاسِئِينَ عَلَى الْكَانَةِ وَلَا أُرِيدُ أَنْ يُحْيَى الَّذِينَ كَانُوا كَحَلَّالِينَ فَأَلَوْهُمْ أَلَمْ تَكُونُوا مَيْتَاءٌ فَذَٰلِكَ الْكَانَةُ" 

And they were commanded not, but that they should worship Allâh and worship none but Him Alone.[3]

Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with him, related that the Prophet ﷺ said:

> "أَشْعَرُ اللَّهَ ٰرَسَّمَ الصَّادِقَيْنِ مِنْ كَانَ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَخَالِصًا مِنْ فَلَوْهُمَا" 

The happiest of people with my intercession is he who says, ‘None has the right to be worshipped but Allâh,’ sincerely from his heart. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari)

‘Uthman, may Allâh be pleased with him, related that the Prophet ﷺ said:

> "إِنَّ اللَّهَ حَرَّمَ عَلَى النَّاسِ مِنْ كَانَ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَخَالِصًا وَجَبَّالَةَ الْفَجَرِ" 

Verify, Allâh has made forbidden the Fire from the one who says, ‘None has the right to be worshipped except Allâh,’

[1] (Al-Hujurat 49:15)
[2] (Al-Tauhid 9:45)
[3] (Al-Beyanah 98:5)
seeking from that Allâh's Face. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari)

4. Truth which negates denial: One must be truthful with Allâh in his faith, truthful in his belief, truthful in his sayings, and truthful in the way he carries the message of Islam. Allâh Almighty says:

«ۚوَآخِذِنَّكُمَا الْفَيْءَانَانَّكُمَا أَنْفُذُوا اللَّهَ وَكُنُوا مِمَّا اعْتَصِمْتُمْ بنَصِيبٍ ۛ} (3:98)

O you who believe! Be afraid of Allâh, and be with those who are true (in words and deeds).[^1]

Mu'ath bin Jabal, may Allâh be pleased with him, related that the Prophet ﷺ said:

فَمَا مِنْ أَحَدٍ يُكْلِفُهُ أَنْ لَا يَنفَعُ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَأَنْ لاَ مَحَقَّقُهُ عَبْدُهُ وَرَسُولُهُ صَفاَحًا

There is none that truthfully from his heart bears witness that none has the right to be worshipped except Allâh and that Muhammad is His slave and Messenger, except that Allâh will forbid upon him the Hellfire. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari)

5. Love which negates hate: One must love this phrase, its implications, and its adherents who act according to its meanings. Also, one must love Allâh and His Messenger ﷺ, giving preference to loving them over all objects of love:

وَمَنْ أَلْقَى مِنْ أَكْلِنَّا مِنْ دَوَنِ اللَّهِ وَمَنْ كَضَبَّ اللَّهَ وَالْبَيْنَانَ عَامِنًا ۛ}

And of mankind are some who take others besides Allâh as rivals (to Allâh). They love them as they love Allâh. But those who believe, love Allâh more.[^2]

6. Submission which negates Shirk: One must submit himself to all that this magnificent phrase requires of him. Allâh Almighty says:

ۚوَأَنْفُذُوا إِلَى رَبِّكُمْ وَأَسْتَعْنِهِمْ بِهِۛ} (2:165)

And turn in repentance to your Lord and submit to Him (in Islam).[^3]

[^1]: (Al-Tauhid 9:119)
[^2]: (Al-Baqara 2:165)
[^3]: (Az-Zumar 39:54)
Submission means compliance to Allah’s Commands. Allah Almighty says:

وَمَنْ سَلَمَ وَجَهَبَهُ إِلَى اللَّهِ وَهُوَ مُهِبٌ فَقَدْ أَسْتَمَسَّكَ بِالْعَرْوَةِ الْوَلِيٍّ

And whosoever submits his face (himself) to Allah, while he is a Muhsin (good-doer) then he has grasped the most trustworthy handhold.[1]

And Allah said:

وَمَنْ أَحْسَنَ ذَرَاعًا وَمَنْ أَسْلَمَ وَجَهَبَهُ إِلَى اللَّهِ وَهُوَ مُهِبٌ

And who can be better in religion than one who submits his face (himself) to Allah and he is a Muhsin (a good doer).[2]

And:

فَلَنَّوْرُكَ لَا يُؤْمِنُونَ حَتَّى يُحْكَمُوا فِيهِ مَا حَكَمَ بِهِ بِهِمْ نَفْسًا يَمْكُرُونَ بِهِمْ ثُمَّ لَا يُجَادِلُونَ فِيهِ

But no, by your Lord, they can have no faith, until they make you (Muhammad ﷺ) judge in all disputes between them, and find in themselves no resistance against your decisions, and accept (them) with full submission.[3]

7. Acceptance which negates rejection: One must accept all of the implications of this phrase, both with his heart and tongue, for Allah Almighty says:

فُلَوْرَا نَامِكَا نَامِكَا بِاللَّهِ وَتَمَا أَوْرَيْلَ بِيَتِينَا

Say, “We believe in Allah and that which has been sent down to us...”[4]

As for those who say it without accepting it, they are those about whom Allah Almighty says:

إِنَّهُمْ كَانُوا إِذَا دَخَلُوا فِيَمَا لَهُ إِلَّا أَنَّ اللَّهَ يُسْكَنِينَهُمْ فِيهِمْ لَا تَأَذَّنْ

[1] (Luqman 31:22)
Truly, when it was said to them: “La Ilaha Illallah (none has the right to be worshiped but Allâh),” they puffed themselves up with pride. And (they) said: “Are we going to abandon our Alilah (gods) for the sake of a mad poet?”[1]

8. Disbelief in all that is worshipped other than Allâh: Allâh Almighty says:

قَمِّنِ يَكُثُرُ لِأَنْعَمُهُ وَيَوَرِزُ بِأَنْفُسِهِمْ أَسْأَلْتُمْ أَنَّمَانِكُمْ بِالْعَبْدِ النَّبِيِّ؟

Whoever disbelieves in Taghut and believes in Allâh, then he has grasped the most trustworthy handhold.[2]

The Prophet ﷺ said:

فَأَقَلَّ كَأَنَّا إِلَّا إِلَهُ وَكَفَّرْنَا يَعْبُدُونَ مِنْ دُونِ اللَّهِ حَرُّمَ مَالَهُمْ وَذَكَرَ

وَجَنَّةَ عَلَى اللَّهِ

Whoever says, “Laa Ilaha Illallah,” disbelieving in all that is worshipped other than Allâh, his wealth and blood become inviolable, and his account is with Allâh. (Recorded by Muslim)

Some Of The Effects Of Laa Ilaha Illallah

When one says this phrase truthfully and sincerely, applying its implications both outwardly and inwardly, there will be many blessed effects on him as an individual and on society; here are a few of those effects:

1. The Muslims will be united on one basis, which results in strength for the Muslims and victory over their enemies:

وَاتَّقُمواْ بِعَيْنِهِمْ جَمِيعًا وَلَا تَفَرَّقواْ

And hold fast, all of you together, to the Rope of Allâh, and be not divided among yourselves.[3]

And He Almighty says:

لَوَانَفْتَقَ مَا فِي

[1] (As-Sâfî 37:35,36)
Lesson Two

الدرس الثاني

He it is Who has supported you with His help and with the believers. And He has united their hearts. If you had spent all that is in the earth, you could not have united their hearts, but Allâh has united them. Certainly He is All-Mighty, All-Wise. [1]

Different views regarding beliefs leads only to disunity and strife, for Allâh Almighty says:

«إِنَّ الَّذِينَ فَرَغَوا بِهِمْ وَكَذَّبُوا بِمَا أُتْبِعَ مِنْهُمْ فِي سَمِيعٍ»

Verily, those who divide their religion and break up into sects, you have no concern in them in the least. [2]

And:

«فَلَن يَلْبِسَهُمُ النَّارُ مِنْ بَعْدِ عِبَادَتِهِمْ مَا كَذَّبُوا بِهِ»

But they have broken their religion among them into sects, each group rejoicing in its belief. [3]

What is mentioned in this last verse occurred among the Arabs before the advent of Islam and after it.

2. Because unity results when all members of society accept and apply Lea ilaha Illâhâ, safety and peace will be widespread:

«إِنَّا لَمُؤْمِنُونَ إِسْلَامًا»

The believers are nothing other than brothers. [4]

«عَلِيَّتُ مُحَمَّدٍ رَسُولَ أَنتَ وَلِيَّتُ مُنْبِطَى عِلَى الْكَرَّاتِ وَجَعَالُ بَيْنَهُمْ»

Muhammad is the Messenger of Allâh, and those who are with him are severe against disbelievers, and merciful among themselves. [5]

«وَذَذَّكُرُوا بَيِّنَتَ الَّذِي عَلَيْهِمْ إِذْ كَانُوا أَعْمَلُوا فَأَلَّفَ بَيْنَهُمْ كَانَتْ مُبِينَةً مَّعَضَيْنِ»

[1] (Al-A'raf 8:62,63)
[2] (Al-An'am 6:159)
And remember Allâh's favor on you, for you were enemies one to another but He joined your hearts together, so that, by His grace, you became brethren.\[1\]

3. Happiness and purity of religion will not only be achieved for the believers, but it will be perpetuated for them:

Allâh has promised those among you who believe, and do righteous good deeds, that He will certainly grant them succession in the earth, as He granted it to those before them, and that He will grant them the authority to practice their religion, that which He has chosen for them. And He will surely give them in exchange a safe security after their fear (provided) they (believers) worship Me and do not associate anything (in worship) with Me.\[2\]

We must understand, however, that the benefits mentioned in this verse hinge upon our worship of Allâh alone, without associating partners with Him.

4. The one who says Laa Ilaha Illallâh and applies its meanings, achieves inner peace and mental stability:

Are many different lords (gods) better or Allâh, the One, the Irresistible?\[3\]

5. The adherents of Laa Ilaha Illallâh are treated gently and are raised in status, as opposed to the disbelievers and polytheists:

\[\text{[1] (Aal Imran 3:103)}\]
\[\text{[2] (An-Nur 24:55)}\]
\[\text{[3] (Al Isra 12:39)}\]
Lesson Two

Hunaifa Lillah (i.e., to worship none but Allāh), not associating partners (in worship, etc.) to Him; and whoever assigns partners to Allāh, it is as if he had fallen from the sky, and the birds had snatched him, or the wind had thrown him to a far off place.\(^{[1]}\)

This verse indicates that Tauhid is highness and exaltedness, while Shīrk represents a downfall and decline.

6. Inviolability of blood, wealth, and honor, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

أُرِيدُ أنْ أَقُلَّ النَّاسَ حَتَّى يَقُولُوا لَا إِلَٰهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ، فَإِذَا قَالَوْاهُ عَصَمْتُوا

فِيَ دِفَاعِهِمْ وَأَفْوَاهِهِمْ لَا يُضْحَكُوا

I have been ordered to fight people until they say, “None has the right to be worshipped but Allāh.” And when they say it, they have protected their blood and their wealth, except by its right.

What does the last sentence, “by its right” mean? It means that if one does not fulfill the rights of Tauhid and has not truly distanced himself from Shīrk, then it doesn’t benefit him to say Laa Ilaha Illallah.”

This phrase has far-reaching implications on both individuals and society — in their worship, dealings, characteristics, and manners.

The last of the Prophets, Muhammad ﷺ, was sent not only to the Arabs, but to the rest of mankind as well; he ﷺ came at a time when mankind was in dire need to be taken out of darkness and brought into the light.

\(^{[1]}\) (Ab-Hak. j 22:31)
The Second Pillar Of Islam:
Establishing The Prayer (As-Salat)

The prayer (As-Salat), as a pillar of Islam, is second only to the two testimonies in importance and ranking; it is the first deed for which one will be held accountable on the Day of Judgement - if one's prayer is good and acceptable, then he will have achieved success; but if it is incorrect and corrupted in some way, then one has achieved failure. The prayer is a form of worship that must be performed on time:

إِذَا اسْلَنَّ اذكَرُواْ نَذَرَتِنَا كَمَا نُذَرْنَا

Verily, the prayer is enjoined on the believers at fixed hours.[1]

In the following verse, Allah orders us to strictly guard the five obligatory prayers, meaning that we should be diligent in performing all of them on time. Since Allah orders us to perform them on time, we necessarily conclude that there are known times for each prayer.

كنفظوا على الصلاوات والكعبة الوسطى وقوموا للقنينتين

Guard strictly (five obligatory) As-Salatuat (the prayers) especially the middle Salat (i.e., the best prayer 'Asr). And stand before Allah with obedience [and do not speak to others during the Salat (prayers)].[2]

Allah gives a stern warning to those who are neglectful regarding the prayer and those who delay the prayer until its time passes:

فَتَفْلُقُ مِن بَعْضِهَا حَتَّى يَنْضَجُواْ أَذْمَامًا أَذْمَامًا وَتَبَعِثُواْ النَّفْسَ وَقَد يَقُولُونَ خَيْرًا

Then, there has succeeded them a posterity who have neglected As-Salat (the prayers) and have followed lusts. So, they will be thrown in Hell.[3]

And Allah Almighty said:

فَوَكَّرُواْ أَذْمَامًا أَذْمَامًا وَقَدْ خَلَفَ أَذْمَامًا أَذْمَامًا

So woe to those performers of Salat (prayers) (hypocrites), who delay their Salat (prayer) from their stated fixed times.\[1\]

So, the meaning of neglected (above) is that they delayed the prayer from its proper time. It does not mean that they abandoned it, since abandoning it is disbelief, and we seek refuge in Allâh Almighty from that.

The prayer is a sign that distinguishes between Islam and disbelief. In his Sahih, Muslim recorded that Jabir, may Allâh be pleased with him, said he heard the Messenger of Allâh say:

«بين الرجال وبين السرّ، والكفر نترك الصلاة»

Between man and between Shrîk and disbelief is abandoning the Salât.

And in a Hadith narrated by Buraidah, may Allâh be pleased with him, the Prophet said:

«العهد الربّي بيننا وبينهم الصلاة، فمن تركها فقد ترك عهده»

The covenant between us and them is the Salât, whoever leaves it has indeed disbelieved. (It was recorded by Imam Ahmad and the Sunan Compilers with an authentic chain of narration.)

And what — in significance — is the prayer?

It is the link between a worshipper and his Lord. The Prophet said:

«إِنَّ احْتَدْتُمْ إِذَا صَلَّى عَلَيْهِ رَبٌّهُ»

When one of you prays, he speaks confidentially to his Lord. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari)

In a Hadith Qudsi Allâh Almighty said:

«قدمت الصلاة بنيي وَبَنِي عَقِيلِي نَثْعِنَّشْنِي وَيَثْعِنَّبِي مَا سَلَّنَّ إِذَا قَالَ الْمَعْلُوْنَ: الحمد لله رَبّ العالمين، قَالَ تَعَالَى: حمِني عَقِيلِي. وَإِذَا قَالَ الرَّحْمَنُ الرَّحِيمُ: قَالَ اللَّهُ تَعَالَى: أَلْهَى عَلَيْ عَقِيلِي. وَإِذَا قَالَ: مَا لْكَ يَوْمَ الْذَٰلِينِ»

[1] (Al-Ma'âm 107:4,5.)
I have divided the prayer between Me and My slave into two halves, and for My slave is what he asks. When my slave says, “All the praises and thanks are to Allâh, the Lord of all that exists,” Allâh Almighty says, “My slave has praised me.” When he says, “The Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful,” Allâh Almighty says, “My slave has extolled me.” When he says, “The Only Owner of the Day of Recompense,” Allâh Almighty says, “My slave has glorified me.” Then when he says, “You alone we worship and You alone we ask for help,” Allâh Almighty says, “This is between Me and My slave, and for My slave is what he asks.” And then when he says, “Guide us to the straight way, the way of those on whom You have bestowed Your grace, not (the way) of those who earned Your anger, nor of those who went astray,” Allâh Almighty says, “This is for My slave, and for My slave is what he asks.” (Recorded by Muslim)

The prayer consists of a number of different kinds of worship — saying: “Allâhu Akbar” (Allâh is the Most Great) to begin the prayer; standing to recite Allâh’s Speech; bowing, and in that position, glorifying the Lord; standing from the bowing position, filling the time while one is standing with praises for Allâh; prostrating to glorify Allâh for His Greatness, and to supplicate to Him; sitting to supplicate, to say the Tasbahb, and then finally, to say the Taslim, which signifies the end of prayer.

The prayer not only helps us in our important affairs, it also prevents us from committing wicked and evil deeds, for Allâh Almighty says:

{وَعَسَّامَةُ الْحَيَرَةِ وَالْقَضَوَةُ}

And seek help in patience and Assalat[1]

And He says:

[1] (Al-Baqarah 2:45)
Recite what has been revealed to you of the Book, and perform *As-Salat*. Verily, *As-Salat* prevents from Al-Fahsha’ (great sins of every kind, unlawful sexual intercourse, etc.) and Al-Munkar (disbelief, polytheism, and every kind of evil wicked deed, etc.)

The prayer is illumination in the hearts of the believers, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

«الصلاة نوراً»

The prayer is light. (Recorded by Muslim)

He ﷺ also said:

«مَنْ حَفَظَ عَلَيْهَا كَانَ لَهُ نُورًا وَمَرْحَامًا وَنِجَاتَ يُومَ الْيَمِينِ»

Whoever commits it to memory, he will have, on the Day of Judgement, a light, a proof, and a deliverance. (Ahmad, Ibn Hibban, and At-Tabarani)

The prayer is happiness and contentment in the hearts and souls of the believers; the Prophet ﷺ said:

«جَعَلَهَا قُوَّةً عَلَيْيَ فِي الصَّلَاةَ»

My joy has been made in the prayer. (Ahmad and An-Nasa’i)

When one prays, his sins are erased and atoned for. The Prophet ﷺ said:

«أَرَايْتُمُ لَوْ أَنَّهُ نَزَحَ بَيْنَ كَيْدَمْ كَيْدَمْ يَعْمِسُ هِمَّ كَيْنَ كُلُّ يَوْمٍ خَمسَ مَرَاتَ كَلِّ يَوْمٍ»

“If there was a river by the door of one of you, in which he bathed five times every day, do you think that any of his filth would remain?”

They said, “None of his filth would remain.”

[1] (Al-Ankabut 29:45)
He said:

"فَكَشَّالَكَ مِنْهَا الْصَّلَاوَاتُ الْبَعْضُ يُبْحَرُ اللَّهُ بِهِنَّ الْخَطَاطِيَّاتُ"

"The same is the case with the five prayers: through them Allâh wipes the sins away." (Al-Bukhari and Muslim)

In another Hadîb, he said:

"الضَّلَالُاتُ الْجَمِيعَةُ إِلَى الْجَمِيعَةِ كَتَارِةً لِّمَا يَكْبِرُونَ مَا لَمْ يَسْخَرِقُوا"

The five prayers and Jumu'âb (Friday Prayer) to Jumu'âb are expiations for what occurs between them (i.e., sins), as long as the major sins are not perpetrated. (Recorded by Muslim)

Ibn Ma'sûd, may Allâh be pleased with him, said: ‘Whoever wishes to meet Allâh tomorrow as a Muslim, then let him carefully guard these five prayers when they are called for. Indeed Allâh has legislated for your Prophet ways of guidance, and the prayers are from the ways of guidance. Were you to pray in your homes as this person does who remains behind in his home, then you would have left the way of your Prophet, and if you were to leave the way of your Prophet, you would have gone astray. There is not a man who purifies himself, and purifies himself well, and then heads to a Majâd among these Majâds, except that for each step he takes, Allâh writes for him a good deed, raises him one rank, and removes a sin from him. I remember (that during previous times) that no one would remain behind from the congregational prayer except for the one who was known to be a hypocrite. (Even the sick) man was brought to the prayer; he was helped from in between two men, until he was made to stand in the rcw.” (Recorded by Muslim)

Al-Khushû', which is to have a heart that is present and reflective and to be steadfast in the prayer is one of the means of achieving Paradise. Allâh Almighty says:

"فَأَطْلُبُ اللَّهَ عَلَيْكُمْ أَنْ يُؤْمِنوْا نِعْمَةَ مَا أَنْصَرَنَا عَلَيْكُمَا مِنْهُمُ الْمُوْمِنُونَ وَمَا مَلَكَتْ أَنْفُسَهُمْ إِلَّآ أَنْ يُؤْمِنُوا بِعِيْنَ مَلِكُمُ ۖ فَأَطْلُبُ اللَّهَ عَلَيْكُمْ أَنْ يُؤْمِنُوا"
Successful indeed are the believers. Those who have *khushu'* in their *Salat*. And those who turn away from *Al-Laghw* (dirty, false, evil vain talk, falsehood, and all that Allâh has forbidden). And those who pay the *Zakat*, and those who guard their chastity (i.e., private parts, from illegal sexual acts) except from their wives or (the captives and slaves) that their right hands possess, for then, they are free from blame. But whoever seeks beyond that, then those are the transgressors. Those who are faithfully true to their trusts and to their covenants; And those who strictly guard their *Salauat* (prayers). These are indeed the inheritors, who shall inherit the *Firdaus* (Paradise). They shall dwell therein forever.\[1]

Sincerity to Allâh in prayer, and performing it according to the way it came to us in the Sunnah — these are the two fundamental conditions for one’s prayer to be accepted. The Prophet ﷺ said:

"إِنَّمَا الْأَمْجَالُ الْمَيْضَاتُ وَإِنَّمَا لَكُلٌّ مَّا طَوَّرَهُ" َ

Indeed deeds are by intentions, and for each one is that which he intended. (Al-Bukhari and Muslim)

And he said:

"صَلُّوا كَمَا رَأَيْنَا يَا أَصَلَّيْ" َ

Pray as you have seen me praying.\[2]

There are many great virtues of performing prayer in congregation in the mosque; furthermore, doing so is compulsory. Ibn ‘Umar, may Allâh be pleased with them, related that the Prophet ﷺ said:

"الصَّلَاةُ جَمَاعَةً أَفْضِلُ مِنْ صَلَاتِ الْمَيْيَّةِ وَعَشَرُ دَوُّ رُكْبَاتِ" َ

The congregational prayer is superior to the individual prayer.

\[1\] *(Al-Mun'ir* 23:1-11)

\[2\] This section was taken from *Risalaat As-Salah* by Shaikh Muhammad bin Salih Al-Uthaimin.
by twenty-seven degrees. (Agreed upon)

On one occasion, according to the agreed upon Hadith, the Prophet ﷺ intended to burn the houses of men who remained behind instead of going to pray in congregation. The Prophet ﷺ said:

«فَإِنَّمَا يَدْعُونَ الْقَوْلَ فَإِنَّمَا يَنْبِيَةً فَإِنَّمَا يَدْعُونَ الْقَوْلَ فَإِنَّمَا يَنْبِيَةً جَمِيعًا»

Whoever hears the call (to prayer) but doesn’t come, then there is no prayer for him, unless he has an excuse. (It was recorded by Ibn Majah, Ad-Daraquuni, Ibn Hibban, and Al-Hakim with an authentic chain of narration.)

This Hadith indicates the elevated status of congregational prayer in Islam.

The Prophet ﷺ ordered the one who did not have tranquillity in his prayer to repeat it.

The congregational prayer is a manifestation of equality, brotherhood, and organization: All Muslims turn toward the direction of the Sacred Ka'bah when they pray.

Whenever the Prophet ﷺ faced a difficult matter, he would hasten to prayer. Allah Almighty says:

«أَسْتَغْفِرُوا بِنَزْعٍ وَاسْتَغْفِرُوا»

Seek help in patience and As-Salah (the prayer).[1]

The Prophet ﷺ used to say to Bilal:

«يَا بِلَالَّهَا أَرْحَمْهَا يَا بِلَالَّهَا»

O Bilal, give us comfort by it.[2]

When praying, one is sure to find comfort and peace in his heart, body, and soul, for He is standing before His Lord, Protector, and Guardian.

[2] That is because he was the one who called the call to prayer.
The Ruling Regarding Those Who Abandon The Prayer

A great evil is perpetrated by many of those who claim to be Muslims when they abandon the prayer, for abandoning the prayer is disbelief. In an authentic Hadith, the Prophet ﷺ said:

«المن الزجر وألتك أو الشرك تزكى الصلاة»

Between the man and disbelief or Shirk is abandoning the prayer.

He ﷺ also said:

«العهد الذي بيننا وبينهم الصلاة فمن تركها فقد تركنا»

The covenant between us and them is the prayer; whoever leaves it has indeed disbelieved.

Because the prayer is the support for Islam, and because there is no religion of Islam for the person who abandons it, the one who abandons the prayer most likely has abandoned all other religious duties as well. Abandoning the prayer is one of the actions that lead to entering the Hellfire; Allâh Almighty says about the wrongdoers:

«ما سماك في سر فاؤوا كذ لا مر من المسلمين»

“What has caused you to enter Hell?” They will say: “We were not of those who used to offer their Salat.”[1]

Allâh says:

«وأيمموا يا عسائس ولا تنفوذوا من الشركية»

And perform As-Salat and be not of the polytheists.[2]

And Allâh Almighty says:

«وأحسموا يا عسائس وأكنمو وهو الذي إليه تعودت»

And to perform As-Salat, and to be obedient to Allâh, and fear Him, and it is He to Whom you shall be gathered.[3]

And:

[1] (Al-Muddaththir 74:42,43)
[2] (Ar-Rum 30:31)
[3] (Al-An'am 6:72)
But if they repent, perform As-Salat and give Zakat, then they are your brethren in religion.\footnote{Al-Taubah 9:11}

Establishing the prayer, then, is made as a condition for repentance to be accepted and for entering Islam. Allâh Almighty says:

\textit{Woe that Day to the deniers (of the Day of Resurrection)! And when it is said to them: “Bow down yourself (in prayer)” They bow not down.} \footnote{Al-Mursalat 77:47, 48}

The scholars from both early and later generations agree that the punishment for the one who persists in not praying is death; the verses and Hadîths that indicate the disbelief of one who abandons the prayer are indeed many.

In our time, it has become very common for one to pray the Fâjîr prayer after the sun has risen — and we seek protection with Allâh. One way to forsake the prayer is to not pray in congregation, even though one is able to do so. The Prophet \(\text{SAW}\) said:

\textit{Whoever hears the call to prayer but does not answer it, then there is no prayer for him.}

He \(\text{SAW}\) also said:

\textit{There is no prayer for the neighbor of the \textit{Majîd} except in the \textit{Majîd}.}

The neighbor of the \textit{Masjid} is one who hears the call to prayer. In yet another Hadîth, the Prophet \(\text{SAW}\) said:

\textit{Whoever hears the call (to prayer), but doesn’t answer it, on the Day of Judgement, molten lead will be poured into his ears.}
Lesson Two

The only person who remains behind, not performing prayer in congregation is the hypocrite, just as Ibn Mas'ud said.

Another way to be neglectful in prayer is to pray in a hasty manner—praying quickly, preceding the Imam from one part of the prayer to the next, or bowing and prostrating for such a short period of time that calmness is not achieved. This is the state of the one who tries to precede the Imam: he is neither praying alone nor following his Imam, and his forelocks are in the hands of the Shaytan. This hastiness prevents one from having a wakeful heart during prayer, and having a wakeful heart is the fruit and soul of prayer without which the prayer is not accepted. Rather it (i.e., the prayer) is coiled like an old garment, and with it the face of the one who prayed without a wakeful heart is struck. It says, “May Allâh ruin you as you have ruined me.” Such has been narrated in authentic hadith.

As for the conditions and pillars of prayer, we will discuss them in detail in ensuing chapters.

The Third Pillar Of Islam: Zakat

Zakat is quite often juxtaposed with the prayer in verses of the Qur'an and sayings of the Prophet ﷺ. It is a social obligation through which the believer appreciates many of the higher aims of Islam—such as love, kindness, generosity, and cooperation among Muslims. But here is an important point: by paying Zakat, no one is doing a favor for another, because it is a compulsory duty. In reality it is Allâh's wealth that He has bestowed upon us:

وَأَوْلُوهُم مِّن مَّالِ آدَمَ الَّذِينَ كَانُوا كَانُوكَمْ

And give them something yourselves out of the wealth of Allâh which He has bestowed upon you.[1]

And Allâh Almighty says:

بَنِئَآءُوا بِآدَمَ وَرَسَولٍ وَأَيْتَعُوا مَمَّا جَعَلْنَاهُ مَسْتَكْثِرًا فِيهِ فَآدَمُ وَمَآمُرْنَا يَبْسُكُ وَآفِقُوا فَهُمْ أُنْجَرُونَ

Believe in Allâh and His Messenger, and spend of that whereof He has made you trustees. And such of you as believe and

spend, theirs will be a great reward.\footnote{1}

Because of the importance of Zakat, Abu Bakr, may Allāh be pleased with him, fought certain Arab tribes when they refused to pay it. He said, “By Allāh, I will indeed fight those who differentiate between prayer and Zakat.” The Companions followed him in that judgement.

Allāh gives a severe warning to those who are miserly with their wealth:

\begin{quote}
١٠٢٩٩٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١
\end{quote}

And those who hoard up gold and silver, and spend it not in the way of Allāh — announce to them a painful torment.\footnote{2}

For each of the different kinds of wealth, there is a minimum amount, that if one possesses that amount, he must give Zakat when the year ends. The exception is for grains and fruits, because Zakat for those items is due when they grow completely and become ripe, even if a year has not passed. The Zakat wealth is given to the deserving, and the categories of people who deserve Zakat are listed in the following verse:

\begin{quote}
١٠٢٨٨٨١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١٠١
\end{quote}

As-Sadaqat are only for the Fuqara (poor), and Al-Masakin (the needy) and those employed to collect (the funds); and to attract the hearts of those who have been inclined (towards Islam); and to free the captives; and for those in debt; and for Allāh’s cause (for ḥabid), and for the wayfarer (a traveller who is cut off from everything); a duty imposed by Allāh.\footnote{3}

Speaking about the duty of giving Zakat, Shaikh ‘Abdul-'Aziz bin Baz said:

“I remind you of the obligation of giving Zakat, an obligation that

\footnotesize\textsuperscript{[1]} (Al-Hadid 57:7) 
\footnotesize\textsuperscript{[2]} (Al-Tauhid 9:3-4) 
\footnotesize\textsuperscript{[3]} (Al-Tauhid 9:60)
many Muslims neglect. Though many may give, some do not give in a way that is legislated. The *Zakat* has a great significance, for it is one of the five pillars upon which one’s Islam stands. The Prophet ﷺ said:

النبي الإسلام على خمسة: شهادة أن لا إله إلا الله، وأن محمدا رسول الله، وإقام الصلاة، وإيتاء الزكاة، وصوم رمضان، وحج البيت

Islam is built on five: to bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped but Allâh and that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allâh, to establish the prayer, to give *Zakat*, to fast Ramadhan, and *Al-Hej* to the House (the Ka‘bah). (Its authenticity is agreed upon)

**The Benefits Of *Zakat***

1) Making *Zakat* obligatory for Muslims is one of the most obvious merits of Islam, demonstrating its care for those who adopt it as a way of life.

2) The ties of love and brotherhood are strengthened between the rich and the poor—people innately love those who are good to them.

3) By paying *Zakat*, one purifies his own self, training it to stay away from the evil quality of miserliness; the Qur’an refers to this meaning in the following verse:

إِنَّا نَزَّلْنَاهَا لَأَنْ تُقِيَّمُوا الصَّدَقَاتَ مِنْ أَمْوَالِكُمْ وَلَا تَتَّخِذُوا مِنْهَا سَبِيلًا

Take *Sadaqah* (alms) from their wealth in order to purify them and sanctify them with it.\(^\text{1}\)

4) By always giving *Zakat* on time, one makes it his habit to be generous and to help the needy.

5) One who pays *Zakat* is blessed in his wealth, and is himself given more, for Allâh Almighty says:

وَمَا أَقْضَى مِنْ عَمَلٍ نَّعْمَاهُ وَهُوَ كَبِير

And (also) restricts (it) for him, and whatsoever you spend of anything (in Allâh’s cause), He will replace it. And He is the

\(^{1}\) (Al-Tauabah 9:103)
Best of providers.\textsuperscript{[1]}

In Hadith Qudsi, the Prophet μ related that Allāh said:

"
O son of Adam, spend (in charity) and We will spend on you.
"

There are many other virtues regarding it.

**Allāh’s Threat To Those Who Are Negligent In Paying Zakat**

Allāh Almighty says:

\textit{مَنْ يُحَلِّثُ كَمَثَرْنَىٰ وَيَدْخَلْنَىٰ وَهُدِينَىٰ أَمْوَالَ أُمُرَّٰئَاتِ اِلْهُ وَالْجِبَالَ وَالْأَشْجَمَاءَ وَالْجِبَالَ وَالْأَشْجَمَاءَ وَالْجِبَالَ وَالْأَشْجَمَاءَ وَالْجِبَالَ وَالْأَشْجَمَاءَ وَالْجِبَالَ وَالْأَشْجَمَاءَ وَالْجِبَالَ وَالْأَشْجَمَاءَ وَالْجِبَالَ وَالْأَشْجَمَاءَ وَالْجِبَالَ وَالْأَشْجَمَاءَ}

\textit{جوَاحِثَ بِهَا جَاهَةَمُ وَجَوَاحِثَ بِهَا جَاهَةَمُ وَجَوَاحِثَ بِهَا جَاهَةَمُ وَجَوَاحِثَ بِهَا جَاهَةَمُ وَجَوَاحِثَ بِهَا جَاهَةَمُ وَجَوَاحِثَ بِهَا جَاهَةَمُ وَجَوَاحِثَ بِهَا جَاهَةَمُ}

O you who believe! Verily, many of the (Jewish) rabbis and the (Christian) monks who devour the wealth of mankind in falsehood, and hinder (them) from the way of Allāh. And those who hoard up gold and silver, and spend it not in the way of Allāh — announce to them a painful torment. On the Day when that (wealth) will be heated in the fire of Hell, and with it will be branded their foreheads, their flanks, and their backs, and it will be said unto them: “This is the treasure which you hoarded for yourselves. Now taste of what you used to hoard.”\textsuperscript{[2]}

One will be punished on the Day of Judgement for hoarding what is called \textit{Kanz}: any wealth, the \textit{Zakat} of which has not been paid. In an authentic Hadīth, the Prophet μ said:

\textit{مَنْ رَآىٰ عَلَىٰ نَفْسِهِ مَثَرْنَىٰ وَفَصَلَّىٰ عَلَيْهِ فَكَبَّرْنَا مَثَرْنَىٰ وَفَصَلَّىٰ عَلَيْهِ فَكَبَّرْنَا مَثَرْنَىٰ وَفَصَلَّىٰ عَلَيْهِ فَكَبَّرْنَا مَثَرْنَىٰ وَفَصَلَّىٰ عَلَيْهِ فَكَبَّرْنَا مَثَرْنَىٰ وَفَصَلَّىٰ عَلَيْهِ فَكَبَّرْنَا مَثَرْنَىٰ وَفَصَلَّىٰ عَلَيْهِ فَكَبَّرْنَا}

\textit{كَبَّرْنَا مَثَرْنَىٰ وَفَصَلَّىٰ عَلَيْهِ فَكَبَّرْنَا مَثَرْنَىٰ وَفَصَلَّىٰ عَلَيْهِ فَكَبَّرْنَا مَثَرْنَىٰ وَفَصَلَّىٰ عَلَيْهِ فَكَبَّرْنَا مَثَرْنَىٰ وَفَصَلَّىٰ عَلَيْهِ فَكَبَّرْنَا مَثَرْنَىٰ وَفَصَلَّىٰ عَلَيْهِ فَكَبَّرْنَا}

\textit{كَبَّرْنَا مَثَرْنَىٰ وَفَصَلَّىٰ عَلَيْهِ فَكَبَّرْنَا مَثَرْنَىٰ وَفَصَال*}

\textit{[1] (Saba’ 34:39)}

\textit{[2] (Al-Taufab 9:34-35)}
Lesson Two

سُنْنُ حَكَمٌ يَفْضِلُونَ بِنَفْقٍ كَبِيرٍ سِيمَانًا إِلَى الْجَنَّةِ، وَإِلَى الْحَيَّارِ

Any owner of gold or silver who does not pay their due will have plates of fire prepared for him on the Day of Judgement. They will be heated in the Hellfire, and then his side, his forehead, and his back will be ironed (by those plates). Each time they become cool again, the process is repeated on him in a day whose measure is equal to fifty thousand years, until finally judgements will have been passed among (Allâh’s) creatures, and each one sees his course: either to Paradise or to Hell.

Then the Prophet ﷺ mentioned the owner of camels, cows, and sheep: if he too doesn’t pay Zakat for them, he will be punished on the Day of Judgement.

In another authentic Hadith, the Prophet ﷺ said:

مَعَ أَنَّ آَيَةَ اللَّهِ مَالًا قَدْمَينَ، فَقَامَ وَزَكَّاهَا، فَمَلَأَهُ نَفْقَةَ الْبِنَاتِينَ بِمَعَةَ الْبَيْتَاتِ، حَسَّسَهَا الْبَلَدُ، وَنَفَقَهُ مَعَهُ، فَنَقَضَى دَلْيَةَ الْمَالِ، وَهُوَ يَقْضِيٌّ يَقْضِيٌّ - نَبِيُّ سَمِيعُ الْقُرْآَنِ - مَثْنَىٰ: أَيَا مَالِكَ أَنَا حَذَرَكَ

Whomsoever Allâh gives wealth to but doesn’t pay Zakat for it, a large snake with two black dots above its eyes will take form for him and squeeze him on the Day of Judgement. Then the snake will take him by the corners of his mouth and say, “I am your wealth, I am your Kanz.”

Then the Prophet ﷺ recited this verse:

قَلْ لَيْسَ لَكِ مِنِّي حَسَنَةٌ يَحْلُوَنَّ بِهَا نَفْسَهُمُ اللَّهُ وَلَدُودُهُمْ إِنْ فَضَلْتُمْ هَذَا فَقَلْنَ أَلاَّ تَأْخُذُوا مَا أَيَّضَوْنَ بِهِ نَبِيَّ الْمُفْتَهَرِ

And let not those who covetously withhold of that which Allâh has bestowed on them of His bounty (wealth) think that it is good for them. Nay, it will be worse for them: the things which they covetously withheld shall be tied to their necks like a collar on the Day of Resurrection.[1]

[1] (Aal 'Imran 3:180)
Zakat Is Obligatory On Four Types Of Wealth

1) What comes out of the earth, such as grains and fruits.
2) (Grazing) livestock.
3) Gold and silver.
4) Merchandise that is meant for sale.

Each one of the above-mentioned categories has what is called a Nisab, or a minimum amount; one only has to pay Zakat in each respective category if he owns that minimum amount.

The Nisab for grains and fruits is measured in what is known as a Sa'; one Sa' is equal to four scoops of the average sized man, with both of his hands together.

The Nisab, or minimum amount required for Zakat to be obligatory on dates, raisins, wheat, rice, barley, and so on is three hundred Sa'.

The Nisab for grazing livestock — camels, cows, and sheep — is mentioned in detail in certain authentic Abadith, if one has questions regarding those details, one should ask the people of knowledge. Were not brevity intended here, we would have explained the details of this issue.

The Fourth Pillar: Fasting The Month Of Ramadan

Allāh Almighty says:

"O you who believe! Observing As-Saum (the fasting) is prescribed for you as it was prescribed for those before you, that you may attain piety."

For certain periods at a time, the Muslim trains himself to curb his desires, desires that are even lawful. By fasting one not only benefits spiritually, but physically as well. One of the spiritual benefits of fasting is that one feels for those from among his Muslim brothers who are poor, and who spend long periods of time without food or drink, such as is happening to many of our brothers around the globe.

[1] (Al-Baqarah 2:183)
Ramadhan is the best month of the year, the month in which Allâh revealed the Qur’ân:

«کُلُّ شُهُودٍۢ وَالْقُرْآنِ»

The month of Ramadhan in which was revealed the Qur’ân, a guidance for mankind and clear proofs for the guidance and the Criterion (between right and wrong).\[1\]

In it is a night that is better than one thousand months. Allâh Almighty says:

«إِنَّا أُنزِلْنَا فِي هَٰذِهِ الْقَدْرِ ١ وَمَا أُنزِلْ مَا كَانَ اللَّهُ فِيهِ إِلَّا بِقَيوْمٍ عَرَسٍ مِّنْ أَلَٰٓئِفٍ»

Verily! We have sent it (this Qur’ân) down in the night of Al-Qadr (Decree). And what will make you know what the night of Al-Qadr (Decree) is? The night of Al-Qadr (Decree) is better than a thousand months.\[2\]

If one fasts Ramadhan with faith, seeking his reward from Allâh, then his previous sins are forgiven.

In an authentic Hadith related by Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with him, the Prophet ﷺ said:

«فَمَنْ صَامَ رَضُّوًا إِيَّاَنَا وَلَحْيَابًا عُرِّفَ لَهُمَا نَهْدُهُمْ مِّنْ ذُرِّيَّةٍ وَمِنْ قَآمَ رَضُّوًا إِيَّاَنَا وَلَحْيَابًا عُرِّفَ لَهُمَا نَهْدُهُمْ مِّنْ ذُرِّيَّةٍ وَمِنْ قَآمَ لِلَّهِ الْقُرْآنِ إِيَّاَنَا وَلَحْيَابًا عُرِّفَ لَهُمَا نَهْدُهُمْ مِّنْ ذُرِّيَّةٍ»

Whosoever fasts the month of Ramadhan, having faith and seeking his reward from Allâh, then he will be forgiven for his previous sins. Whosoever stands (to perform the voluntary night prayer) in Ramadhan, having faith and seeking his reward from Allâh, he will be forgiven his previous sins. And whosoever stands (to pray at night) on the night of Qadr, having faith and seeking his reward from Allâh, he will be

\[1\] (Al-Baqarah 2:185)

\[2\] (Al-Qadr 97:1-3)
forgiven his previous sins. (Agreed upon)

When one is fasting, one must also especially avoid backbiting, spreading false tales, lying, or listening to music or false speech; moreover, one should especially stay away from all forbidden deeds. The one who is fasting should, based on the Sunnah, recite the Qur’an more often, remember Allâh, give charity, and strive more to worship Allâh, especially during the last ten days of the month.

Shaikh Muhammad bin Salih Al-Uthaimin said:

Indeed fasting is one of the pillars of Islam and one of its great foundations. Allâh Almighty says:

"O you who believe! Observing As-Saum (the fasting) is prescribed for you as it was prescribed for those before you, that you may attain piety. [Fasting] for a fixed number of days, but if any of you is ill or on a journey, the same number (should be made up for) from other days. And as for those who can fast with difficulty, (the elderly, etc.), they have (a choice either to fast or) to feed a Miskin (poor person) (for every day). But whoever does good of his own accord; it is better for him. And that you fast, is better for you if only you know. The month of Ramadhan in which was revealed the Qur’an, a guidance for mankind and clear proofs for the guidance and the Criterion (between right and wrong). So whoever of you sights (the crescent on the first night of) the month (of Ramadhan, i.e., is present at his home), he must observe
Lesson Two

Saum (fasts) that month, and whoever is ill or on a journey, the same number [of days which one did not observe Saum (fasts) must be made up for] from other days. Allâh intends for you ease, and He does not want to make things difficult for you. (He wants that you) must complete the same number (of days), and that you must exalt Allâh [to say ‘Allâhu Akbar’ (Allâh is the Most Great) on seeing the crescent of the months of Ramadhan and Shawwal] for having guided you so that you may be grateful to Him. [1]

The Prophet ﷺ said:

ٍثَبَّتَ الإِسْلاَمُ عَلَى عُجُومٍ، سَهَادَةً أَنْ لاَ إِلَهَ إِلَّا الَّذِي أَنْعَمَ رَسُولُ اللهِ وَإِقَامَ الصَّلَاةَ وَإِتِّィاهَ الزَّكَاةَ وَصَلَّى الْبَيْتَ وَصَامَ عَلَى رَضُوَنَ

Islam is built on five: to bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped but Allâh and that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allâh, to establish the prayer, to give Zakat, Al-Hejâj to the House (the Karbah), and to fast the month of Ramadhan. (Agreed upon)

And in the narration of Muslim, the order is different:

وَصَامَ عَلَى رَضُوَنَ وَصَلَّى الْبَيْتَ

To fast the month of Ramadhan, Al-Hejâj to the House (the Karbah).

There is a consensus among the Muslims that it is obligatory to fast the month of Ramadhan; the knowledge thereof is one of those matters that are necessary to know as a Muslim. Whoever denies its being compulsory has disbelieved and must be asked to repent. If he repents and admits that it is compulsory, then all is well; otherwise, he is killed as a disbelieving apostate: he is neither washed, nor enshrouded; he is not prayed for, nor do others supplicate to Allâh for having mercy on him. He is to be buried quickly so that people are not harmed by his awful smell and so that his family is not harmed by having to look at him.

Fasting was prescribed two years after the Hijrah (migration to Al-Madinah), and so the Prophet ﷺ fasted Ramadhan for nine years. [1]

Fasting was prescribed in two stages:

1) Muslims were given a choice between fasting and feeding a poor person, yet fasting was made preferable.

2) Without being given a choice, Muslims were ordered to fast.

Salamah bin Akwā’, may Allāh be pleased with him, said, ‘When this verse was revealed:

وَعَلَى الَّذِينَ يَعْقِلونَ فَذَقْنِي طَعَامَ وَمَشْقِيقَ

And as for those who can fast with difficulty (the elderly, etc.), they have (a choice either to fast or) to feed a Miskin (poor person) (for every day).[1]

Whoever wished to break their fast did so (by feeding a poor person) until the following verse was revealed, abrogating the previous one:"

فَمَنْ شَهِدَ وَمَسَكَ الْيَتَرَ الْمِطْنَةُ وَمِنْ حَسَنَةٍ مَّرَيَّمٌ أُوْلَٰىٰ سَعْرِ قَيْدٍ وَمِنْ أَئِيَامِ أَخْرَىٰ

So, whoever of you sights (the crescent on the first night of) the month (of Ramadhan, i.e., is present at his home), he must observe Saum (fasts) that month, and whoever is ill or on a journey, the same number [of days which one did not observe Saum (fasts) must be made up for] from other days.[2]

So, Allāh made fasting obligatory on each individual, without a choice. The fast is not compulsory until the month of Ramadhan begins, which also means that one should not fast the days before Ramadhan begins, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

لا يَتَّقَلِبُنَّ أَحَدُكُمْ يُصِرُّوا بِيَوْمِ أَوْ نُوبُمُأَنْ أَلَّا يَكُونَ رَجُلٌ كَانَ يُصِرُّ

Let not one of you precede by fasting one or two days (before Ramadhan begins) except for a man who habitually fasts that

[1] (Al-‘Baqarah 2:184)
The Fifth Pillar: Making Pilgrimage (Hajj) To The Sacred House

Allâh Almighty says:

وَيَدُّوا عَلَى الْأَيَامِ جَمِيعًا َسَبِيبًا مِّنْ أَسْتَطُالَ إِلَيْهِ سَيْلَةً

And Hajj to the House (Ka‘bah) is a duty that mankind owes to Allâh, those who can afford the expenses (for one’s conveyance, provision and residence).[2]

It is obligatory for a Muslim to perform Hajj at least once in his lifetime, and the same ruling applies to the ‘Umrah (the lesser pilgrimage). They are both obligatory upon the Muslim who fulfills the following:

1) He is sane
2) He has reached the age of puberty
3) He is free as opposed to being a slave, in which case it is not obligatory
4) He is able — financially, physically, etc. — to perform the Hajj.

When a child performs one of the two, though his pilgrimage is correct, he must still perform the obligatory pilgrimages when he becomes an adult and is able to make the journey. The Hajj and ‘Umrah are not obligatory upon a woman who does not have a Mahram (a male relative to whom she can never marry and with whom she may be in seclusion with) to accompany her, for there are authentic Ahadith in which the Prophet forbade a woman from travelling without a Mahram.

Hajj is a kind of Islamic convention. Muslims come to it from all corners of the globe, representing all nationalities, colors, languages — yet they wear one clothing, they stand on one level, and they are all performing one worship; no distinction is made between old and young, between rich and poor, or between black and white. Allâh Almighty says:

O mankind! We have created you from a male and a female, and made you into nations and tribes, that you may know one another. Verily, the most honorable of you with Allāh is the one who has the most At-Taqwa.\(^1\)

The reward for the Ḥajj that is accepted is Paradise. In the Two Sahīhs it is recorded from Abu Hurairah, may Allāh be pleased with him, that the Prophet ﷺ said:

«الْعَمْرَةُ إِلَىَّ العَمْرَةِ كَفَأَةٌ لِّكَا نُزُلَّهُما، وَالْحَجُّ الْمُتَّقِوُّ لَيْسَ لَهُ جَزَاءٌ إِلَّا...»

From one ‘Umrah to the next is an expiation for what takes place (i.e., sins) between the two. And the accepted Ḥajj has no reward other than Paradise.

Also in the Sahīh, the Prophet ﷺ said:

«مَنْ حَجَّ فَلْمَ بَرَّتْ وَلَمْ يَفْسُدْ وَلَمْ يَقْتُلْ وَلَمْ يَهْجُرْ كُبُورَ وَلَمْ يَكْفُرْ أَنْتَ عُزُوْبٌ»

Whoever makes Ḥajj without having intercourse (or without speaking evil speech during Ḥajj) and without doing evil deeds, then he returns as the day his mother gave birth to him.

Indeed Allāh has prescribed Ḥajj upon His worshippers and made it one of the pillars of Islam. Allāh Almighty says:

Explaning this, Shāikh Ibn Baz said:

«وَغَيَّرْنَّكَ عَلَىَّ أَنَّا حَيْثُ جَبَّتُنَا مِنِّ اسْتِعْتَابَ إِلَّيَّكَا سَيْلًا وَمَن كَفَرَ فَإِنَّ الرَّحْمَانَ عَنْهُ مَغْلُوبٌ»

And Ḥajj to the House (Ka'bah) is a duty that mankind owes to Allāh, those who can afford the expenses (for one's conveyance, provision and residence); and whoever disbelieves, then Allāh stands not in need of any of the creatures.\(^2\)

\(^1\) (Al-Hajj 49:13)
\(^2\) (Aal 'Imran 3:97)
Lesson Two

In the Two Sabin, Ibn ‘Umar related that the Prophet ﷺ said:

«بَيْنِ الإِسْلَامِ عَلَىٰ حُمَيْسِي، شَهَادَتُكَ أَنَّ لا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَأَنَّ مُحَنِّمَا رَسُولُ اللَّهِ، وَإِقَامَ الصَّلَاةَ، وَزُكُرَ الزَّكَاةَ، وَصَلَّى رَقَضَانَ، وَحَجَّ بِيْبَ اللَّهِ الحَرَامَ»

Islam is built on five: to bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped except Allâh and that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allâh, to establish the prayer, to give Zakat, to fast Ramadhan, and Al-Hajj to Allâh’s Sacred House (the Ka’bah).

In his Sunan, Sa’id (bin Mansur) related the following saying of ‘Umar bin Al-Khattab: “I intended to send men to these regions to see who had sufficient wealth yet had not made Hajj, so that I could levy the Jizya[1] on them: They are not Muslims, they are not Muslims.”

It has been related that ‘Ali, may Allâh be pleased with him, said, “Whoever was able to perform Hajj but did not perform it, then it is no difference whether he dies a Jew or a Christian.”

If one is able to perform Hajj but has not performed it, then he must hasten to it, for Ibn ‘Abbas, may Allâh be pleased with him, related that the Prophet ﷺ said:

«عَلَّمَنَا إِلَى الْحَجِّ وَإِلَى الْيَتِمَّةِ وَإِلَى الصَّيْقَةِ وَإِلَى النَّقْلَ وَإِلَى الْإِدْرَائِيْرِ مَا يَعْرَضُ لَهُ»

Hurry to perform Hajj — the Hajj that is compulsory (i.e., the first one) — for one of you doesn’t know what will occur to him. (Recorded by Ahmad)

Based on the following saying of Allâh, Hajj becomes compulsory immediately, meaning as soon as one is able to perform it:

وَقَدْ عِلَى أَنْثَى جَهَّاٰلَهَا مَنِ اسْتَطَاعَ إِلَيْهَا سَبِيلَ وَمَنْ كَفَّرَ فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ غَفُورٌ عَلَّيْنِ

And Hajj to the House (Ka’bah) is a duty that mankind owes to

[1] A tax that is paid by Jews and Christians who live in Muslim lands.
Allāh, those who can afford the expenses (for one’s conveyance, provision and residence); and whoever disbelieves, then Allāh stands not in need of any of the creatures.[1]

In his Ḧudb (sermon), the Prophet ﷺ said:

«أَئِنَّكُمْ لَا يَكُونُ اللَّهُ وَلِيًّا لَّكُمْ أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ وَلَيْسَ اللَّهُ غَافِلٌ عَنِّكُمْ مَعْجِبٌ»

O people, indeed Allāh has made Ḥajj obligatory upon you, so make Ḥajj. (Recorded by Muslim).

That ‘Umrah (the lesser pilgrimage) is also obligatory is proven by certain Hadith, one of them being the following:

«الأِسْلاَمُ: أَنْ تَشْهَدَ أَنْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَلَا مُهَادِنُ اللَّهِ وَتَّوْبَةٌ إِلَى اللَّهِ وَتَجْمَعُ النَّبِيِّ وَالْجَمَاعَةِ وَتَضُنُّوتُ الْمَوْضُوعَ وَتَصُومُ رَمَضَانَ»

Islam is to bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped but Allāh, to establish the prayer, to pay the Zakat, to make Ḥajj to the House (Ka’bah), to make ‘Umrah, to take a shower from Janabah (i.e., after performing sexual intercourse or after having a wet dream), to make a complete ablution, and to fast Ramadhān. (Ibn Khuzaimah and Ad-Daraqutni from a Hadīth related by ‘Umar bin Al-Khattab, may Allāh be pleased with him; Ad-Daraqutni said, “This chain is established and authentic.”)

In a Hadīth related by Aisyah, she asked the Prophet ﷺ, “O Messenger of Allāh, is there Ḥijab upon women?” He ﷺ answered:

«عَلَّمَهُنَّ حِجَابًا لَا يَتَّبَعُ فِيهِ: الْحَجُّ وَالْعُلُوْجُ»

“Upon them is a Ḥijab in which there is no fighting: Ḥajj and ‘Umrah.” (Recorded by Ahmad and Ibn Majah, with an authentic chain.)

Neither Ḥajj nor ‘Umrah are obligatory upon a Muslim except once in his life, for the Prophet ﷺ said in an authentic Hadīth:

«الْحَجُّ مَرَّتَانِ، فَمَعَ رَأَدٍ فَعَلَّهُ نَطَعُّ»

Hadîj is once; whosoever does more, then it is voluntary.
Nonetheless it is legislated in Islam to perform both Hadîj and 'Umrah often, a ruling that is based on the following Hadîth related by Abu Hurairah, may Allah be pleased with him:

العمرة إلى العمرة قفارة لما تشميهما، والمعروض ليس له جزاء إلا

ال地狱.

From one 'Umrah to the next is expiation for what occurs between them (i.e., sins), and the reward for an accepted Hadîj is none other than Paradise.
Shaikh Ibn Baz - may Allah have mercy upon him - said:
Though they are not pillars in the religion, Islam has many other deeds that are of paramount importance, such as ordering others to do good deeds and forbidding them from evil. In fact, Allah described this nation as being the best nation because it orders to do good and forbids evil:

كُنتم عِندَ اللَّهِ أَشْعَرَةً النَّاسِ تَأْمُرُونَ بِالْمُتَّقِينَ وَتَنْهَى عَنِ السَّارِقَةِ

You are the best of peoples ever raised up for mankind; you enjoin Al-Maârîf (all that Islam has ordained) and forbid Al-Munkar (all that Islam has forbidden), and you believe in Allah.1

One of our pious predecessors said, “If one wishes to be from the best of this nation, let him fulfill a condition: ordering others to do good and forbidding them from perpetrating evil.”

Another important aspect of Islam that Muslims should be serious about is Jihad in the way of Allah, for through it, Allah’s Word is raised, Muslims achieve honor, and Muslim lands are protected from their disbelieving enemies. Ibn ‘Umar, may Allah be pleased with him, related that the Prophet (ﷺ) said:

أَمَرَّنَا أَنْ آتَيْلَ النَّاسِ حَتَّى يَسْتَهْدِوهَا إِنَّ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ، وَأَنْ مَحْمَدَا

1 [Aal ‘Imran 3:110]
I have been ordered to fight the people until they bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped except Allâh and that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allâh, they establish the prayer, and they pay the Zakat — when they will have done all of that, they will have protected from me their blood and wealth, unless it is by a right, and their account (judgement) is with Allâh. (Agreed upon)

Mu‘ath, may Allâh be pleased with him, related that the Prophet ﷺ said:

«أَرْأَسُّ الْإِمَامِ ٱلْإِسْلَامِ وَعَمْدُهُ ٱلصَّلَاةَ وَزِيَوْةُ سَنَاهُوَ يَجَابُهُ فِي سِنَّهُ ٱللهُ»

The head of the matter is Islam, its pillar is the prayer, and its peak is jihâd in the way of Allâh. (Ahmad and Aû-Tirmîthî with an authentic chain).

Right after the Muslims pledged allegiance to him as Khâli‘b, Abu Bakr, may Allâh be pleased with him, gave a sermon, and in it he said, “No people leave jihâd in the way of Allâh except that Allâh strikes them into ignominy.” In jihâd, truth is enforced and falsehood is crushed, Allâh’s Sharî‘ah is applied, and the Muslims are protected in their lands from the plots of their enemies.\(^{11}\)

This is the end of the intended explanation of the five pillars.

\(^{11}\) For what has preceded, refer to the sections entitled At-Tabqîq wa-Jæubah and Mabâasîsh Ašb-Shari‘ah in Mîmu‘ab Fatawâ wa Maqalat, volume 2, by Shayîkh ’Abdul-Azîz bin Baz, may Allâh have mercy upon him.
Lesson Three

The Pillars Of Faith

There are six pillars of Faith: To believe in:
1) Allāh.
2) His Angels.
3) His Books.
4) His Messengers.
5) The Last Day.
6) Divine Preordainment, and that the good and bad of it are from Allāh Almighty.

Before discussing the different pillars of faith, we begin with the following introduction:

1) The Difference Between Islam and Iman (Faith)

Islam and Iman are terms that include the entire religion. When they are mentioned together in one place — then Islam means the outwardly performed deeds, while Iman refers to the affairs of the inside, such as belief. Allāh Almighty says:

كَالْبِ الأَعْمَىَ يَأْمُنُ فَأَمُّ تُوْسُعُ وَلَا يَقُولُواْ أَنْسَمَا

The bedouins say: “We believe.” Say: “You believe not but you only say, ‘We have surrendered (in Islam).’”[^1]

In the famous Ḥadīth of Jibril, peace be upon him, ‘Umar, may Allāh be pleased with him, said, “One day, as we were sitting with the Messenger of Allāh, a man appeared before us: he had on him a garment that was pure white and his hair was pure black; though no sign of travel was upon him, not one of us knew him. He sat directly in front of the Prophet, making his knees touch those of the Prophet, and placing his hands on the Prophet’s thighs. He said,

[^1]: (Al-Hujurat 49:14)
'O Muhammad! Inform me about Islam.’ The Messenger of Allah ﷺ said,

‘The Islamic faith consists of the declaration, “There is no god but Allah, and Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah,” and witnessing the prayer, fasting, giving zakāt, and performing hajj to the House (Ka’bah), for whoever is able to do so.’

The man said, ‘You have spoken the truth.’ We were amazed at him because he first asked a question and then affirmed the truthfulness of the answer. He then said, ‘Inform me about Iman.’ The Prophet ﷺ said,

‘To believe in Allah, His Angels, His Books, His Messengers, the Last Day, and to believe in Divine Preordainment, the good of it and the bad of it.’

The man said, ‘You have spoken the truth.’ He then said, ‘And inform me about Ihsan.’ He ﷺ answered,

‘To worship Allah as if you see Him, although you don’t see Him, yet He indeed sees you.’

He said, ‘And inform me about the Hour.’ The Prophet ﷺ answered,

‘The one who is asked knows not more about it than the questioner.’

He said, ‘Then inform me of its signs.’ He ﷺ said,

‘The signs of the Hour is something which He will not reveal – and He knows the unseen.’
Lesson Three

'That a slave woman will give birth to her female master and you will see the barefooted, naked, poor, guardians of sheep competing in constructing buildings'.

The man then left, and I stayed for a long period of time, after which the Prophet ﷺ said to me,

"يَا عُمَّرُ! أَنْتَ وَلَاءِيُّ مِنْهُمْ"

'O 'Umar! Do you know who the questioner was?' I said, 'Allâh and His Messenger know best.' He ﷺ said,

"فَإِذَا جَبَرَلَ حَجَرُ أَقْصَمَ أَعْلَمُهُمْ وَيَسْتَثْنِيهُمْ"

'Indeed he was Jibrîl, coming to teach you your religion!.' (Recorded by Muslim)

If the two words — Islam and Iman — appear separately, then each of them carries the meaning of the other. Allâh Almighty says:

"إِنَّ الْإِيمَانَ عَلَىٰ اللَّهِ الْإِسْلَامُ"

Truly, the religion with Allâh is Islam.\(^{[1]}\)

Here, Allâh Almighty described Islam as being the religion, with both its outward and inward legislation. And the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ explained Iman to the delegation of 'Abdul-Qais with the same meaning that Islam is given in the above-mentioned Hadîth of Jibrîl ﷺ. Ibn 'Abbas, may Allâh be pleased with them, narrated that the Prophet ﷺ ordered them to have faith in Allâh alone, after which he said,

"أَنَّ الْإِيمَانَ مَا لاَ إِيمَانُ بِاللَّهِ وَحْمَتْ؟"

"Do you know what Iman in Allâh alone is?"

They answered, "Allâh and His Messenger know best." He ﷺ said,

"شَهَادَةُ أَنْ لاَ إِلَهَ إِلَّاَ اللَّهُ وَأَنَّ مَحْمُودًا رَسُولُ اللَّهِ وَإِيَامُ الصَّالِحَةِ وَإِيَامُ الْزَّغَالِ وَصِيَانُمُ رَضِيَ اللَّهُ عَنْهُمْ...

'To bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped but Allâh and that Muhammad is the Messenger of Allâh, to establish the prayer, to give Zakât, to fast Ramadhan...''

\(^{[1]}\) (Aal 'Imran 3:19)
We also can appreciate the fact that they have the same meaning when mentioned alone from the Hadith that discusses the branches of faith; in it, the Prophet ﷺ said:

«أُعْلِمُكُمْ أَنَّ الْإِلَهَيْنَ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ، وَأَنَا اسْلَمُ إِبَانَةَ الْأَخْمَشْ عَنِ الطَّرِيقِ»

The highest of them is the saying, 'none has the right to be worshipped but Allāh', and the lowest of them is to remove something harmful from the road.

The different branches of faith that are between the highest and lowest one necessarily include both outward and inward deeds.

It should also be known that outward deeds are not called Islam unless basic belief and faith are first present. If the basic faith is not first present in someone, then even with his deeds, he becomes a hypocrite. Both outwardly manifest deeds, and belief with conviction in the heart are obligatory — one cannot be separated from the other.

One cannot complete the Islam and faith that are obligatory unless he obeys Allāh’s commands and avoids His prohibitions, if one truly wishes completeness — which implies that there are degrees to deeds and belief — then he must increase his faith and perform many voluntary deeds.

2) The Definition Of Iman

First, its meaning in the Arabic Language: Belief that necessitates both acceptance and submission.

The meaning of Iman in the Shari‘ah: Belief in the heart, acknowledgement with the tongue, and action with the limbs - it increases through obedience and decreases with sin.

**Actions Are Included in the Term Iman?**

Actions are included in the term Iman, a fact that is supported by the Qur’an, the Sunnah, and the consensus of the earlier generations of Muslims. Allāh Almighty says:

«وَمَا كَانَ اللَّهُ يَضِيعُ مَا يَسْتَفْكِرُ فِيهِمْ»

And Allāh would never make your Iman (prayers) to be lost
Lesson Three

(i.e., your prayers offered towards Jerusalem).

Here, the term *Iman* is referring to prayer, so Allâh is in effect saying to them: Your prayers that you prayed while you faced Jerusalem before you were ordered to turn towards the Ka‘bah are not lost.

The Prophet ﷺ said:

الإيمان يضع ويعون (أو يضع ويعون) شعباً فأصلها قول لا إله إلا

Allâh وآلهاؤه إيماناً إلا من الذين أشهدوا عليه وحكموا شعباً من الإمامان

*Iman* consists of more than seventy (or more than sixty) branches, the best of them is the saying, “None has the right to be worshipped but Allâh,” and the lowest of them is removing something harmful from the road (or path); and modesty (shyness) is one of the branches of *Iman*. (Recorded by *Muslim*).

Imam Ash-Sha‘ârî related that there was a consensus among the Companions and their followers regarding this issue.

3) Faith Increases And Decreases

Faith increases and decreases. It increases with obedience and decreases with sin. There are many proofs which show that faith increases and decreases, and among them are the following:

1) Allâh Almighty says:

وما سأتحم أبداً إلا تحية وحدة وحيدة وما سأمنحهم إلا نبأً واحد وحيد

أو أتنا ألكتب وبِذة الدين نساوء إيمان

And We have set none but angels as guardians of the Fire, and We have fixed their number only as a trial for the disbelievers, in order that the People of the Scripture may arrive at a certainty and the believers may increase in faith.

2) Allâh Almighty says:

إِنِّي أَعْلِمُ أَنَّكُمْ أَنْتَهُوْتُمْ إِلَّا ذَكَرُوا اللَّهَ وَجَعَلُوا غَيْبَةً وَإِذَا ذُكِّرُوْا نَفَقَّطْنَاهُمْ مِنْ أَنفْقَتِهِمْ وَأَنْفَقُوْا وَيُفْقِهُوْا إِيمَانَ وَعَلَىٰ رَبِّهِمْ يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ أَلْبَاتُلَّوُّوٌُّ وَإِنَّا لَمُعَلِّمُونَ

[1] (Al-Baqarah 2:143)
The believers are only those who, when Allâh is mentioned, feel a fear in their hearts and when His verses (this Qur'ân) are recited to them, they (i.e., the verses) increase their faith; and they put their trust in their Lord (alone); Who perform As-Salât and spend out of that We have provided them. It is they who are the believers in truth. For them are grades of dignity with their Lord, and forgiveness and a generous provision (Paradise). [1]

3) Abu Sa'id Al-Khudri, may Allâh be pleased with him, related that he heard the Prophet ☦ say:

(۳۳) رأى من ذُبِّلَ صدرَهُ فَلَعَبَرَ عَلَيْهِ يَدَٰهُ، كَلِّمَ نَمَّ يَسْتَفْلِعُ قِيلَمَانِهِ، فَلَمَّا نَمَّ يَسْتَفْلِعَ قِيلَمَانِهِ، وَكَلِمَ أَصَٰفَتُ الإِيمَانِ

Whosoever from you sees an evil, let him change it with his hand, if he is not able, then with his tongue; and if he is not able, then with his heart; and that is the weakest level of faith.

This Hadith not only indicates the different levels of changing evil, but it also indicates that changing evil is part of faith. The weakest level of faith is to change evil with one's heart; the other two ways of changing evil indicate a stronger level of faith. And Allâh knows best.

4) In early Hadith regarding the branches of faith, we learn that faith includes a number of branches — each is distinguished in status. Regarding some of those actions, faith disappears when they disappear, such as the two testimonies of faith. With other actions faith doesn't disappear when they disappear, such as removing something harmful from the road. The more branches of faith one follows and applies, the higher will be the level of his faith.

After establishing the reality that faith increases and decreases, we must consequently appreciate that the people of faith are at different levels: some have a complete faith while others are at lower levels; one may even be a believer because of his faith and at the same time an evil-doer because of a great sin he perpetrated — therefore his

---

[1] (Al-Araf 8:2-4)
faith is deficient due to his sin.

Because some wrongfully take deeds outside of the category of faith, they consequently believe that faith neither increases nor decreases and that people are equal in the level of their faith. They equate the most wicked person’s faith with that of one of the Prophet’s Companions, may Allah be pleased with them. This notion is categorically false, for it goes against the Qur’an, the Sunnah, and sound reasoning—there are so many contradictions within the idea that deeds are not a part of faith, that the idea itself becomes invalid.

As for faith in Allah, it is a certainty of belief that Allah is the Lord and Governor of all that exists, that He is the Creator and Planner and Sustainer of the entire universe, that He alone — and without a partner — deserves to be worshipped, that all that is worshipped other than Him is worshipped in vain, that Allah has the most exalted and perfect attributes, and that He is far above from having any fault or defect.

4) The Effects Of Disobedience On Faith

Disobedience is the opposite of obedience to Allah, and the term embraces both leaving a command and perpetrating that which is prohibited. We have already learned that faith is slightly more than seventy branches, the highest of which is the saying, “None has the right to be worshipped but Allah,” and the lowest of which is removing something harmful from the path. So the branches of faith are not of one level in terms of size and significance, and the same can be said for disobedience. Some sins nullify faith itself, as in the following verse:

٤٦٥

But [Pharaoh] believed and disobeyed. \(^{[1]}\)

Some sins are at a lower level: the perpetrator does not exit from a state of faith, but his faith is definitely diminished by committing those sins. When one commits a major sin, such as fornication, drinking alcohol, or stealing, and when he at the same time doesn’t believe that those actions are permissible, piety, righteousness, and illumination leave his heart, even though the basic level of

\(^{[1]}\) (An-Naz’at 79:21)
acceptance or belief in Allāh may remain in his heart. If he repents to Allāh and does good deeds, light and piety return to his heart. But if he persists in perpetrating sins, the covering on his heart will increase and grow, until it will completely cover his heart — we seek protection in Allāh — at which time he will not know good from evil.

In a *Hadith* recorded by Imam Ahmad, Abu Hurairah, may Allāh be pleased with him, narrated that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said:

َإِنَّ الْمُؤْمِنًا إِنَّا أَهْلَكْنَاهُ كَانَتُ بُكْرَةُ سُوَاءٍ فِي نَفْسِهِ، إِنَّ نَفْسَهُ وَزَرَّعَ وَأَشْتَغَفَّ، ضَيْقٌ فِي نَفْسِهِ، وَإِنَّ زَرَّعْتُ هَذَا حَتْى يُغَلِّبَ فَأَلَمُ الْحَرْقُ الَّذِي ذَكَرَ اِلْلَّهُ

Verily, when a believer sins, a black dot appears on his heart; if he repents, desists, and asks (Allāh) forgiveness, then his heart will be polished. But if he increases (in his sins) then the spot increases and grows until his heart will be covered by the *Rān* (covering of sins and evil deeds) that Allāh mentioned in the Qur‘ān:

َفَلَا يَرْجُوُ إِلَّا رَبُّهُمْ مَا كَانُوا يَكْبِسُونَ

Nay! But on their hearts is the *Rān* (covering of sins and evil deeds) which they used to earn.\(^{[1]}\)

5) **Actions That Nullify One’s Faith And Islam**

Here we are referring to those actions that nullify one’s faith after one has already entered into a state of faith; here are some of those actions:

1) If one rejects the belief in Allāh’s Lordship, or anything that comes under that belief, one’s faith becomes void:

َوَقَالُوا مَا هِيَ إِلَّا حَيَاةُ ظُلْمَانِ ذَى يَوْمٍ مَّا يَبِينُهَا إِلَّا الدُّخَرُ وَمَا فَئَدَ مِنْ يَوْمٍ

And they say: “There is nothing but our life of this world, we die and we live and nothing destroys us except *Ad-Dahr* (the time).” And they have no knowledge of it, they only

\(^{[1]}\) *Al-Mutaffifin* 83:14
Lesson Three

2) Being too proud and haughty to worship Allāh, Allāh Almighty says:

The Messiah will never be proud to reject to be a slave to Allāh, nor the angels who are near. And whoever rejects His worship and is proud, then He will gather them all together unto Himself. So, as for those who believed and did deeds of righteousness, He will give their (due) rewards, and more out of His bounty, but as for those who refuse His worship and were proud, He will punish them with a painful torment. And they will not find for themselves besides Allāh any protector or helper.[2]

3) Associating partners with Allāh in worship, either by dedicating some acts of worship to other than Allāh or by taking intercessors or intermediaries, asking them instead of Allāh, relying on them, or asking them for intercession. Allāh Almighty says:

And they worship besides Allāh things that hurt them not, nor profit them, and they say: “These are our intercessors with Allāh.” Say: “Do you inform Allāh of that which He knows not in the heavens and on the earth?” Glorified and Exalted is He above all that which they associate as partners with Him! [3]

[1] (Al-Jathiyah 45:24)
[3] (Yunus 10:18)
In another verse, Allâh Almighty says:

"قُلْ وَإِنْ تَفْسِيرُ الْقُرْآنِ لَأَنَّهُ وَتَبَارَكَ لِلَّذِينَ يَنْتَهُونَ إِلَىَّ أَنْفُسِهِمْ إِنَّمَا هُوَ الْفَتْحُ لِلْمُتَّقِينَ (٤)

For Him is the Word of Truth. And those whom they invoke, answer them no more than one who stretches forth his hand (at the edge of a deep well) for water to reach his mouth, but it reaches him not, and the invocation of the disbelievers is nothing but an error."[1]

4) Rejecting anything that Allâh has affirmed for Himself or that the Prophet ﷺ has affirmed for Him. Also, ascribing to someone from creation some of those qualities that are specific to Allâh, such as knowledge of the unseen. And finally, affirming something that Allâh has negated about Himself or that the Prophet ﷺ has negated about Him. Addressing the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ, Allâh Almighty says:

"قُلْ هُوَ اللَّهُ أَحَدٌ وَلَّمْ يَكُنَّ لِهِ شَريكٌ" [١]

Say: “He is Allâh, (the) One Allâhu ‘Alâm (Allâh—the Self-Sufficient Master, Whom all creatures need; He neither eats nor drinks). He begets not, nor was He begotten; And there is none co-equal or comparable unto Him.”[2]

And Allâh Almighty says:

"وَأَوْفُوا بِعَهْدِنَا فَذَاعَاءُكُمْ وَأَوْفُوا أَنْتُونَا فِي أَمْرِكُمْ وَلَا تُبِئِنَّ مَا كَانَ بَعْلُونَ" [٦]

And (all) the Most Beautiful Names belong to Allâh, so call on Him by them, and leave the company of those who belie or deny (or utter impious speech against) His Names. They will be required for what they used to do.[3]

[1] (Ar-Ra’d 13:14)
[3] (Al-Anf 7:180)
Lord of the heavens and the earth, and all that is between them, so worship Him (Alone) and be constant patient in His worship. Do you know of any who is similar to Him?\(^{[1]}\)

5) Disbelieving in anything that the Messenger of Allah ﷺ came with; Allah Almighty says:

وَمَا أَنْهَاكُمْ مِنَ الْعِبَادَةِ ۚ وَلَا تُلْهَوْا بِمَا يُنْبِئُكُمْ الْمُتنَافِسُونَ مِنَ الْمُتَّقِينَ\(^{[2]}\)

And if they deny you, those before them also denied. Their Messengers came to them with clear signs, and with the Scriptures, and the Book giving light. Then I took hold of those who disbelieved, and how terrible was My denial (punishment)!\(^{[2]}\)

6) Believing that the Prophet’s guidance is incomplete, disbelieving some of Allah’s Commands that were revealed to him, believing that another system of laws is better and more suitable to mankind, believing that any other law or system of laws is equal to Allah and His Messenger’s laws, or believing that it is permissible to rule by other than what Allah has revealed. Allah Almighty says:

٦٠ أَلَمْ تَرَ إِلَى الْيَهُودِ بَعْضُهُمْ عَمِّسَوْنَ أَنْهَوْنَ ۖ إِنَّمَا أَلَامَكُمْ وَمَا أَلَامَ مِنْ قَبْلِكَ ۖ وَأَمَّا الَّذِينَ يُصْلِبُونَ عَنْ ذَٰلِكَ الْعِبَادَةَ ۖ فَأَمَّا أَنْ هُمْ يَهْتِمُونَ أَنْ يَعْمِسُوا بِمَآ أَعْمِسَهُمْ ۖ أَمْ سَيَأْتِنَآ أَنْ يُعِيدُوا بِمَا كَفَّارَةً أَسْتَغْفِرُونَ اِلَّمَّعَاطِيَةَ۔ \(^{[3]}\)

Have you seen those (hypocrites) who claim that they believe in that which has been sent down to you, and that which was sent down before you, and they wish to go for judgement (in their disputes) to the Taghut (false judges, etc.) while they have been ordered to reject them. But Shaitan (Satan) wishes to lead them far astray.\(^{[3]}\)

\(^{[1]}\) (Maryam 1965)

\(^{[2]}\) (Faith 35:25-26)

\(^{[3]}\) (An-Nisa’ 4:66)
And Allâh Almighty says:

وَأَيُّهَا الْمُؤْمِنُونَ خَافُواُّ اللَّهَ وَقُولُواُّ لَقَدْ أَنْبَأْنَا الْمُسْلِمِينَ بَيْنَ الْخَيْرَ وَالْغُلْطَاءِ وَإِنْ تُهْدَىٰ لَلِّصَادِقِينَ ۙ ۗ ۚ ۗ وَلَعَلَّهُمُ الْيَوْمَ يَسْتَبْنُواُّ لَهُمُ الْيَوْمُ مَهَابًا ۙ ۗ ۗ ۗ وَأَمَّنَّاهُمْ حَرِيْبًا ۚ وَمَمَّا قَضَبْنَاهُمْ وَتَسْلِيمًا قَانِيًا ۚ ۗ ۗ ۗ وَوَمَنَّ اللَّهُ يُفْخُكُرُ بِهِنَّ أُرْزَعُ اللَّهُ أَوْلِيَاءَهُمُ الْكَبِيرُونَ ۙ ۗ ۗ ۗ}

But no, by your Lord, they can have no faith, until they make you (O Muhammad ﷺ) judge in all disputes between them, and find in themselves no resistance against your decisions, and accept (them) with full submission.[1]

And whosoever does not judge by what Allâh has revealed, such are the Kâfirûn (i.e., disbelievers—of a lesser degree as they do not act on Allâh’s Laws).[2]

7) One’s faith is also nullified by not deeming the polytheists and disbelievers to actually be disbelievers, or even to doubt whether they are disbelievers, because that is to have doubt in what the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ came with. Allâh Almighty says:

"وَقَالُوا إِنَّا كَفَرْنَا بِمَا أَرْسَلْتُمْ بِهِ. وَإِنَّا كَفَرْنَا بِمَا تُنْزِعُونَ مِمَّا يُنْزِعُونَ إِلَيْهِ مَيْرَبُ"

And said: “Verily, we disbelieve in that which you have been sent, and we are really in grave doubt as to that to which you invite us.”[3]

8) Mocking or making fun of Allâh, of the Qur’ân, the religion, Islamic rewards and punishments, the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ, some of the Prophets, and so on, regardless of whether one is mocking jokingly or seriously. Allâh Almighty says:

رَيْبَتُكُمْ لَسْتُمْ فِي هَٰذِهِ قَصَدُونَ إِنَّكُمْ مَا خَلَفْنَاهُمْ فِي الْأَخْلَاقِ وَالْبَيَانِ.

If you ask them (about this), they declare: “We were only talking idly and joking.” Say: “Was it at Allâh, and His Ayât (proofs, evidences, verses, lessons, signs, revelations, etc.) And His Messenger that you were mocking?” Make no
Excuse; you have disbelieved after you had believed.¹¹

9) Helping and backing the disbelievers against the Muslims, Allah Almighty says:

\[
\text{وَمَن يَتْبَعَ عَلَى الْإِسْلاَمِ وَيَنْفِقُ فِيهِ مَالًا فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يُحْلِلُ لَهُمُ الْقُوَّمَ الْمُتَّقِينَ}
\]

And if any among you takes them as Auliyā', then surely he is one of them. Verily, Allah guides not those people who are wrongdoers.¹²

10) Believing that it is permissible for a certain person to not follow the guidance of Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, Allah Almighty says:

\[
\text{وَمَن يَتْبَعَ عَلَى الْإِسْلاَمِ وَيَنْفِقُ فِيهِ مَالًا فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يُحْلِلُ لَهُمُ الْقُوَّمَ الْمُتَّقِينَ}
\]

And whoever seeks a religion other than Islam, it will never be accepted of him, and in the Hereafter he will be one of the losers.³³

11) Turning away, either completely from Allah's religion, or turning away from those actions that are necessary to the correctness of one's Islam — neither learning nor applying those actions. Allah Almighty says:

\[
\text{وَمَن أَفْلَمَ مَن ذَكَرَهُ رَبُّهُ فِي أَخْبَارَهُ مِنَ الْحَكَمِ مَنْ يَعْصِمُ مِنْهُمْ}
\]

And who does more wrong than he who is reminded of the Ayat (proofs, evidences, verses, lessons, signs, revelations, etc.) of His Lord, then he turns aside therefrom? Verily, We shall exact retribution from the criminals.⁴⁴

12) Hating anything that the Prophet ﷺ came with, even if one practices that which he hates. Allah Almighty says:

\[
\text{ذَلِكَ الَّذِي يُحِبُّهُمُ اللَّهُ وَيُحِبُّهُمْ نَصْرَهُ}
\]

That is because they hate that which Allah has sent down, so He has made their deeds fruitless.⁵⁵

13) Practicing magic or being pleased by magic. Allah Almighty says:

---

¹¹ (Al-Tauhid 9:65,66)
¹² (Al-Ma'idah 5:51)
¹³ (Aal 'Imran 3:75)
¹⁴ (As-Sa'd 32:22)
¹⁵ (Muhammad 47:9)
But neither of these two (angels) taught anyone (such things) till they had said, “We are only for trial, so disbelieve not (by learning this magic from us).”[1]

These are the most common actions or beliefs that nullify one’s faith; however, there are many others, even though most of them return to rejecting the Qur’an or a part of the Qur’an, doubting in the fact that it is a miracle, deeming the Qur’an or a part of it, deeming something lawful when there is a consensus that it is unlawful — such as fornication or drinking alcohol, finding fault in the religion or cursing it, or abandoning the prayer — and we seek refuge in Allah from misguidance. And Allah Almighty knows best.

[1] (Al-Boqarah 2:102)
The Pillars And Branches of Faith

The Pillars Of Faith

In Arabic, the word used for pillars is *Arkan,* the singular of which is *Rukan;* the *Rukan* of something is its strong side. There are six pillars of faith:

1) Faith in Allâh
2) Faith in the Angels
3) Faith in the Book
4) Faith in the Messengers
5) Faith in the Last Day
6) Faith in the Divine Preordainment, both the good and bad of it

The proof for these six being the pillars of faith is found in the answer Allâh’s Messenger ﷺ gave when Jibrîl, peace be upon him, asked him about faith. He ﷺ answered:

«إِنَّكُمْ تُؤْمِنُونَ بِاللَّهِ وَرَسُولِهِ وَالْكُلُّ ثُمَّ يَوْمَ الْأَخِرِ وَتُؤْمِنُونَ بِالْقَدَّارِ عِنْدَهُ»

To believe in Allâh, His Angels, His Books, His Messengers, the Last Day, and to believe in Divine Preordainment, the good and bad of it. (Recorded by Muslim)

The Branches Of Faith

The Arabic word for branches is *Shu'ah,* the singular of which is *Shu'ab,* which means a characteristic or a component. The branches of faith, then, are its many components; in one *Hadîth,* we learn that those components are more than seventy in number.

Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with him, related that the Prophet ﷺ said:

«الإِيمَانُ يَحْتَقَدُ وَيَتَّبِعُونَ (أَوْ يَوْفِقُ وَيَمْتَعُونَ) شَعْبَةَ،ْ فَأَفْصَلَهَا فَوْلُ لا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهَ وَأَنُعَافُأُ إِبَانَةً الأَكْثَرْ عَنِ الْغَرَّةِ»

Faith consists of more then seventy (or more then sixty) branches, the best of which is the saying, “None has the right to be worshipped but Allâh,” and the lowest of which is to remove something harmful from the road. (Recorded by Muslim)
The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ clarified that the best of these components or branches is Tawâbid, which is obligatory upon every person, and upon which hinges the validity of other components. The lowest of them is to remove something that might harm a Muslim. Between these two branches, there are a number of other branches — such as love for the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ, loving for a brother what one loves for himself, and Jihâd. The branches are not clearly mentioned altogether in the Sunnah; however, some scholars, such as Al-Baihaqi in *Al-Jami’ Li-Shu’abî-Alláh*, have tried to infer what they are and enumerate them.

Some of the many branches are like supports, without which faith disappears in a person. For example, one’s faith is invalid if he disbelieves in the Last Day, for Allâh Almighty says:


The disbelievers pretend that they will never be resurrected (for the Account). Say: “Yes! By my Lord, you will certainly be resurrected, then you will be informed of what you did, and that is easy for Allâh.”[1]

Some of those branches are less significant than supports, and thus one’s faith does not leave due to their absence; nonetheless, one’s level of faith decreases and one might even be described as a doer of wicked deeds. One example of this category is for one to treat his neighbor badly. Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with him, related that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said:


Whosoever believes in Allâh and the Last Day, then let him speak well or otherwise remain quiet. Whosoever believes in Allâh and the Last Day, then let him honor his neighbor. And whosoever believes in Allâh and the Last Day, then let him

[1] *Al-Taqâbug* 64:7
honor his guest. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari)

A single person may have some of the components of faith while at the same time he has some of the components of *Niqaf* (hypocrisy): for the latter category, he deserves punishment, but he will not dwell in the Hellfire for eternity because of the faith he has in his heart. And Allah Almighty knows best.

The First Pillar of *Iman*

Belief in Allah

Having faith in Allah means to believe with certainty and conviction that Allah is the Lord and Sovereign of all that exists, that He is the Creator and Planner and Sustainer of the entire universe, that He alone — and without a partner — deserves to be worshipped, that all that is worshipped other than Him is worshipped in vain, that Allah has the most exalted and perfect attributes, and that He is far above from having any fault or defect. Faith in Allah consists of the following:

1) *Tawhid Al-Rububiyah*

This means to believe that Allah Almighty is the only Creator, King, Planner, and Sustainer of all that exists. First, that He is the sole Creator of all that exists:

وَإِنَّمَا الْخَالِقُ الْأَلْمَانِ يَوْمَ الْقِيَامَةِ

Surely, His is the Creation and Commandment.[1]

And Allah Almighty says:

فَلَمَّا سَأَلَّكَ اللَّهُ إنَّ ذَٰلِكَ جَنَّةٌ لَّدَى الْعَالَمِينَ

Is there any creator other than Allah who provides for you from the sky (rain) and the earth?[2]

فَإِنَّمَا يُبَيِّنُنَّكُمُ الْكِتَابَ وَغُلَامُهُنَّ الْبَيِّنَاتَ مِنْ نَزْلَاتِي قُرْآنٍ

Say: “In Whose Hand is the sovereignty of everything”[3]

---

[1] *(Al-An斐 7:54)*

[2] *(Fa inhibitors 35:3)*

We must also believe that it is only Allāh Who sustains everything:

"Verily! You are only unto Allāh a Breach in the earth and aBreach in the sky, and verily! My Lord is All Seeing over you."

(1)

Say: “Who provides for you from the sky and the earth? Or who owns hearing and sight? And who brings out the living from the dead and brings out the dead from the living? And who disposes the affairs?” They will say: “Allāh.” Say: “Will you not then be afraid of Allāh’s punishment?”[1]

The polytheists to whom Muhammad ﷺ was sent as a Messenger did not oppose this category; rather, they accepted it, for Allāh Almighty says:

"We created them from the earth and from the heavens and from you We created the Adversary."

(1) And indeed if you ask them, “Who has created the heavens and the earth?” They will surely say: “The All-Mighty, the All-Knower created them.”[2]

From previous nations, the only one known to have rejected this category of Ta‘ubid was Fir‘awn, who did so because of his haughtiness; Allāh Almighty says to us, relating what he says:

"I am your lord, most high.”[3]

Another group, the Zoroastrians, set up partners with Allāh in this category, for they said that the universe has two creators: darkness and light; they believed that light was better than darkness.

2) Ta‘ubid Al-Ulubiyyah

It is also called Ta‘ubid Al-Ibadah (worship), from the point of view of the worshipper. But to ascribe it to Allāh, this category is called Al-Ulubiyyah (from the word Al-‘Ulāh, which means “the God”). This category requires one to dedicate his worship purely for Allāh, for

[2] At-Takhrīj 43:9
Allāh alone deserves to be worshipped. All that is worshipped other than Him is falsely worshipped. Allāh Almighty says:

actal yār an'āl Allāh ‘u ‘ālīkum wa nāma yādūnu min dūri bihīl.

That is because Allāh, He is the Truth, and that which they invoke besides Him is Al-Bātīl (falsehood, Satan and all other false deities).[1]

And Allāh Almighty says:

lā ‘u ‘adillu ma ‘a ilah ‘a ‘ālīkum wa nāma yādūnu min dūri bihīl.

Set not up with Allāh any other Ilāh (god), or you will sit down reproved, forsaken (in the Hell-fire).[2]

Most people disbelieve in and reject this category, and it was because of this that the Messengers were sent and the Books were revealed. Allāh Almighty says:

‘u ‘adillu ma ‘a ilah ‘a ‘ālīkum wa nāma yādūnu min dūri bihīl.

And We did not send any Messenger before you (O Muhammad [saw]) but We inspired him (saying): “La ilāha illā Ana [none has the right to be worshipped but I (Allāh)], so worship Me (Alone and none else).”[3]

3) Taubah Al-Asma’ wa-Sfat

This category involves believing in Allāh and in His Attributes in the way that is taught to us in the Qur’ān and the Sunnah, and in a way that is appropriate for Allāh, and that is achieved by affirming that which Allāh affirmed for Himself, or, what His Messenger [saw] affirmed, and by negating what Allāh Almighty negated from Himself, or, what His Messenger [saw] negated from Him — without distorting such attributes or negating them, and without saying “haw” they are nor believing that they are similar to the attributes of the creatures. Allāh Almighty says:

las ‘ālīkum ‘a ‘ālīkum wa nāma yādūnu min dūri bihīl.

[1] (Isra’ 31:30)
[2] (Isra’ 17:22)
There is nothing like unto Him, and He is the All-Hearer, the All-Seer.¹¹

There are many groups and sects that have gone astray regarding this category.

A topic that can be attached to faith in Allâh is faith in the unseen. We must first discuss its meaning and then its influence on the beliefs of the Muslim.

The Meaning Of Faith In The Unseen

Al-Ghâib, or the unseen, refers to anything that is hidden from the senses, whether it is known or unknown. Belief in the unseen—i.e., in that which cannot be perceived by the senses—is not gained by genius of the mind; rather, it becomes known through what the Prophets inform us. Belief in the unseen is one of the qualities of the believer, for Allâh Almighty says:

\[
\text{إِنَّ ذَٰلِكَ الْكَيْلَمَةُ لَا رَبَّٰٰ فِيهِ هُدًى لِّلْجَاهِلِينَ (1) أَلْيَانِ يَكُونُونَ بِالْغَيْبِ (2)}
\]

\[
\text{وَيَبْعَثُونَ الْأَمْسِيَةَ وَالَّيْلَ وَمَا رَآاهُمْ بَيْنَ هَذَيْنِ} \text{٢}
\]

Al-Fâl-Mâm. This is the Book (the Qur’an), whereof there is no doubt, a guidance to those who are pious. Who believe in the Ghâib and perform As-Salat, and spend out of what we have provided for them.¹²

Regarding their belief in the Ghâib, or the unseen, there are two views:

1) They believe in that which is hidden from the senses, and this specifically refers to those hidden matters that Allâh and His Messenger ﷺ have informed us about.

2) They believe in Allâh now that they do not see Him just as they would were they able to see Him, as opposed to the hypocrites. There is no contradiction between the two meanings, for they must both be present in the believer.

¹¹ (Ash-Shûna 42:11)
¹² (Al-Baqarah 2:1-3)
The Influence of Faith In The Unseen
On The Muslim’s Beliefs

The belief one has in the unseen greatly influences and affects his behavior and his way of life, for it is a great incentive for doing good deeds and it inhibits one from doing evil deeds. Some of the effects of a belief in the unseen are given here:

1) Sincerity in action: If you believe in Allâh, His reward, and His punishment, you will follow His orders and stay away from His prohibitions, hoping for His reward, while fearing His punishment in the Hereafter, and not hoping for reward and thankfulness in this world from people. Allâh Almighty says regarding those who give food to others in spite of their love for it:

وَيَطِيعُونَ اسْتِحْيَاءَهُ عَلَى حَبِّهِ وَيَبْدِئُونَ وَيَبْدِئُونَ وَمَا رَحِيمُ اللهُ لَا يُرَبِّى

And they give food, inspite of their love for it (or for the love of Him), to Miskâh (poor), the orphan, and the captive, (Saying): “We feed you seeking Allâh’s Face only. We wish for no reward, nor thanks from you.”[1]

2) Strength upon the truth: The believer knows that though he has no strength or help from people when he is obeying Allâh, calling others to the truth, and warning others against falsehood, yet he is strong because of Allâh. This world and its suffering become insignificant to him in contrast to the next life, the Hereafter. In this verse, Allâh informs us of what Ibrahim, peace be upon him, said to his people:

وَقَالَ إِلَيْهِمْ أَحَبِّيْهِ أَحَسَبْتُ أَنْ تُؤَاذُوا مَيْدَانًا ﴿۱۰﴾ فَكَفَّرُنَّهُمُ جَمِيعًا إِلَّا نَفْسَهُ بِفَتَحِهَا ﴿۱۱﴾

“And by Allâh, I shall plot a plan (to destroy) your idols after you have gone away and turned your backs.” So he broke them to pieces, (all) except the biggest of them, that they might turn to it.[2]

[1] (Al-Insân 76:8-9)
[2] (Al-Anbiya' 21:57,58)
3) A sense of indignation for worldly appearances: This is a result of filling one’s heart with faith, with belief that this world and its pleasures will vanish, that the Hereafter is the everlasting life, that happiness is not in one’s mind alone, and that the eternal should be chosen over the transient. Allâh Almighty says:

وَلَهُمْ حَيَاةَ الْأَطْرَافِ الْأُمِّيَّةَ ِۡ أَنْ يُؤْمِنُواْ بِاللَّهِ وَيَعْلَمُونَ أَنَّ الْأَحْيَانَ الْأُخْرَىَ لَا يَبْدِعُونَهَا أَيُّهَا ِّمُلَائِكَةُ الْقُرْآنِ ۏ رَبَّكُمْ يُعِيدُ أَيِّهَا ِّمُلَائِكَةُ الْقُرْآنِ

And this life of the world is only an amusement and a play! Verily, the home of the Hereafter, that is the life indeed (i.e., the eternal life that will never end), if they but knew.[1]

Allâh informs us about the wife of Fir’awn. She was not content with the pleasures of life that she had, and she asked to be saved from Fir’awn and his behavior, hoping for the Hereafter because of the light of faith in Allâh Almighty and the Hereafter that was in her heart:

وَضَرِّعْ أَنْثَىٰ مَشَاكلَ لِلَّذِينَ ءَامَنُواْ أَمَّا إِذْ فَرَعَوُنَّ إِذْ قَالُواْ رَبِّ إِنِّي عَبَدُكُمُ الدَّارِ بِبَيْنَاهُمُ وَرَبُّكَ يَجْلَدُ اسْتَقْلَالَهُمُ ۖ وَلَيْسَ اللَّهُ نَافِرًا}

And Allâh has set forth an example for those who believe, the wife of Fir’awn, when she said: “My Lord! Build for me a home with You in Paradise, and save me from Fir’awn and his work, and save me from the people who are wrongdoers.”[2]

4) Rancor and malice disappear: When people strive to fulfill their desires and lust, using unlawful means, rancor and malice will spread. But when one believes in the unseen — in Allâh’s Promise of reward and warning of punishment — one begins to hold himself accountable for all of his deeds, hoping for reward, and fearing punishment. When one truly believes that he will get his reward from Allâh, he will work hard in doing good deeds, hoping for an everlasting reward. By following this path, people will instil love among themselves as individuals and societies; Allâh Almighty says:

[1] (Al-Ankabut 29:64)
And those who, before them, had homes (in Al-Madinah) and had adopted the faith, love those who emigrate to them, and have no jealousy in their breasts for that which they have been given (from the booty of Banu An-Nadhir), and give them (emigrants) preference over themselves, even though they were in need of that. And whosoever is saved from his own covetousness, such are they who will be the successful. And those who came after them say: ‘Our Lord! Forgive us and our brethren who have preceded us in faith, and put not in our hearts any hatred against those who have believed. Our Lord! You are indeed full of kindness, Most Merciful.’  

These are some of the effects of having faith in the unseen, effects that will not be lacking in someone unless his faith is defective. And if these effects do not become prevalent in a given society, its members will become like animals, eating both the living and the dead, with the strong oppressing the weak. When that happens on a mass scale, evil, fear and corruption will reign — and we seek protection in Allah Almighty from those evil results.

The Second Pillar Of Iman  
Belief In The Angels

The Definition of Angels
The linguistic meaning: The Arabic word for angels is *Malā‘ikah*, and the singular is *Malak*. They say that it is derived from the word *Lūkab*, which means the message. It is also said to have been derived from *Lāaka*, meaning sent. There are other opinions as well regarding its root meaning.

[1] (Al-Hasb 599,10)
Its definition as an Islamic term: A creation from the realm of the unseen; angels are created from light and they worship Allâh.

The angels have no share in the qualities of *Rububiyah* and *Ulubiyah* that we discussed in the previous section. Allâh granted them the level of total submission to His Commands as well as the strength to carry out those commands. Allâh Almighty says:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ولَمَّا مَنََّ الْعَلَاءَ وَأَلْبَارَ لَا يَسْتَفْنُونَ عَنْ عِبَادِيَّهُمْ، وَلَا يَسْفَرُونَ} \\
\text{يَسَعُونَ اللَّهَ وَلَا يَعْفَوُنَّ} \\
\end{align*}
\]

To Him belongs whosoever is in the heavens and on the earth. And those who are near Him (i.e., the angels) are not too proud to worship Him, nor are they weary (of His worship). They (i.e., the angels) glorify His praises night and day, (and) they never slacken (to do so). \[1\]

\[
\text{يَسَعُونَ اللَّهَ وَلَا يَعْفَوُنَّ} \\
\text{يَسَعُونَ اللَّهَ وَلَا يَعْفَوُنَّ} \\
\]

They, are but honored slaves. They speak not until He has spoken, and they act on His Command.\[2\]

**The Belief Of The Arab Polytheists Regarding The Angels Before The Advent Of Islam**

The people of ignorance — in the period before Islam — claimed that the angels were the daughters of Allâh — far above Allâh is from what they say. Allâh Almighty refuted them, clarifying that they have no knowledge thereof:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{لَمَّا خَيَّنَا الْكَلِمَةَ إِنَّا وَمَعَكُمْ نَكْلِمُكُمْ} \\
\text{أَلَا إِنَّهُم مِّنِّي أَكْسَبْنَهُمْ لَمَّا كَانُوا} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Or did We create the angels females while they were witnesses? Verily, it is of their falsehood that they (Quraish pagans) say: ‘Allâh has begotten (offspring or children, i.e., angels are the daughters of Allâh)!’ And, verily, they are liars.\[3\]

---

\[1\] (Al-Anbiya’ 21:19,20)  
\[2\] (Al-Anbiya’ 21:26,27)  
\[3\] (As-Sâfî 37:150-152)
Lesson Three

Belief In The Angels

Belief in the angels is the second pillar of faith, and what this pillar means is for us to believe with certainty that Allah has angels that exist; they are created from light, and they do not disobey Allah in what He orders them, while they perform that which they are commanded.

Proofs Indicating That It Is Obligatory To have Belief In Them

1) Allah Almighty says:

«عَلِّمُ الَّذِينَ آمَنُوا بِمَآ أُرِيَ إِلَيْهِ مِنْ رَبِّهِمْ وَيَتَّقُونَ وَيُصَلُّونَ وَيَنْتَفِعُونَ مَنْ قَدْ طَعَنَّـا فِيهِمْ وَلَا يَسْتَهِبُوا وَيُفْتَنُونَ»

The Messenger believes in what has been sent down to him from his Lord, and (so do) the believers. Each one believes in Allah, His Angels, His Books, and His Messengers.[1]

2) Allah Almighty says:

«أَلْيَسِ الْبَرِّ أَنْ تَوَلَّوا وَيُهْهِكُمَّ بِذَاتِ الْعُمُّرِ وَالْعَشْرِ وَلَكُنَّ الْبَرِّ مِنْ مَآمِنَ بَالِدِّينَ وَأَلْبَوْرِ»

It is not Al-Birr (piety, righteousness, and each and every act of obedience to Allah, etc.) that you turn your faces towards east and (or) west (in prayers); but Al-Birr is (the quality of) the one who believes in Allah, the Last Day, the Angels, the Book, the Prophets... [2]

Allah Almighty says:

«وَمَنْ يَكْفُرْ بِاللَّهِ وَيَكْبَرُ وَيَكْبَرُ وَيَكْبَرُ وَيَكْبَرُ وَيَكْبَرُ»

And whosoever disbelieves in Allah, His Angels, His Books, His Messengers, and the Last Day, then indeed he has strayed far away.[3]

3) When Jibril asked the Prophet ﷺ about Iman, he ﷺ said:

«أَلْيَسِ الْبَرِّ أَنْ تَوَلَّوا وَيُهْهِكُمَّ بِذَاتِ الْعُمُّرِ وَالْعَشْرِ وَأَلْبَوْرِ»

To believe in Allah, in His Angels, in His Books, in His Messengers, in the Last Day, and to believe in Divine Preordainment, both the good of it and the bad of it.

So belief in the angels is part of what was included as Iman in this Hadith. Because their existence is supported by irrefutable proof, to reject their existence is disbelief, a ruling that is established by the consensus of the Muslims: disbelief in them is disbelief in the clear verses of the Qur'an and sayings of the Messenger of Allah ﷺ.

Belief In The Angels Comprises Of The Following

1) We must believe that they exist.

2) We must believe in those angels that we know the names of (through revelation), such as Jibril. Those that we do not know, we believe in their existence in general.

3) We must believe in their qualities which we learn of through revelation, such as the description of Jibril: The Prophet ﷺ informed us that he saw him in the image that he was created—he had six hundred wings that blocked the horizon. Angels may also take the shape of man, such as happened with Jibril in the Hadith wherein he asks about Iman and Islam.

4) We must believe in those of their actions that we learn through revelation: they glorify Allah and worship Him day and night. It is in their nature to obey Allah, and they do not have the ability to disobey Him:

\[\text{لا يَعْبُونَ آنَّهَا مَأَمْرُهُمْ وَيَعْلَمُونَ ما يُؤْمَرُونَ (1)}\]

Who disobey not, (from executing) the Commands they receive from Allah, but do that which they are commanded.\[^1\]

For them, avoiding sins and performing acts of obedience is natural: they expend no effort in this regard because they have no desires or lust.

Some angels may have certain tasks specific to them, such as Jibril, who is the one entrusted with Allah’s revelation; Allah ﷺ.

\[^1\] (At-Tahrim 66:6)
sends him to the Prophets and Messengers. Allâh Almighty says:

أَنْتَ رَجُلٌ يَقَلَّةٌ مِّنَ الْأَرْذِ فَيُصُوبُ صُوْنًا فِي سَخَابَةٍ: إِنَّكَ فِي خَيْبَةٍ فَلَانٍ

Which the trustworthy Ruh [Jibrîl (Gabriel)] has brought down; upon your heart that so you may be of the warners.\(^1\)

Mika‘îl is the angel who is entrusted with the rain and vegetation. Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleas’d with him, related this Hadîth from the Prophet  ﷺ:

أَنْتَ رَجُلٌ يَقَلَّةٌ مِّنَ الْأَرْذِ فَيُصُوبُ صُوْنًا فِي سَخَابَةٍ: إِنَّكَ فِي خَيْبَةٍ فَلَانٍ

As a man was standing in a vast open space of land, he heard a voice in the clouds saying, “Supply water to the garden of so-and-so.” So, the cloud left its place and emptied its water into an area; a waterway absorbed all of the water that fell from the sky. The man followed the water, until he reached a man who was standing in his garden, diverting the water with his shovel. The man said, “O servant of Allâh! What is your name?” He gave him his name. The man in the garden asked, “O servant of Allâh! Why do you ask me my name?” He said, “I indeed heard a voice in the same clouds from which this water came, saying, ‘Supply water to the garden of so-and-so’, and the name I heard was yours. Then what will you do with it?” He said, “Because of what you said, I will wait and see what comes out of the earth; I will give one-third of it in charity, I will eat one-

\(^1\) (Asb-Sûra 26:193,194)
third of it along with my family, and I will return one-third..."  
(Recorded by Muslim)

This Hadith is referring to the angels who divert the rains according to Allah's Will.

There is an angel who is entrusted with the Trumpet, his name is Israfil, peace be upon him. He will blow into it twice by Allah's Command: the first time he blows it, people will become terrified and swoon away, and the second blowing is for the resurrection. Allah Almighty says:

«وَيَوْقَعُ فِي الْخَلْقِ قَضَائِقُ مِنْ فِي السَّمَوَاتِ وَفِي الْأَرْضِ إِلَّا مِنْ شَأْنِ اللَّهِ مَثْنَىً»

And the Trumpet will be blown, and all who are in the heavens and all who are on the earth will swoon away, except him whom Allah wills. Then it will blown a second time and behold, they will be standing, looking on (waiting).[1]

Another angel we know of is the one entrusted with the task of taking souls, the Angel of Death, and we also know that he has helpers. Allah Almighty says:

«فَقلِ يَوْمَئِبُكَمْ مَاذَا ذَٰلِكُمْ الْمَوْتُ إِلَّا وُكَلُّ وَجُرُّهُ إِلَى رَبِّكُمْ يُوقَعُ»

Say: "The angel of death, who is set over you, will take your souls, then you shall be brought to your Lord."[2]

Some angels are the keepers of Paradise, for Allah Almighty says:

«وَسَبِيقُ الْأَلَّهَاتِ أُنْفِقُوا رَيْبَمِ إِلَى الْحَالِكَ زَرْمًا حَيَّةً إِذَا حَمَّلَهَا وَفَتَحَتَّهَا وَقَالَ فَنَصْرَةً بَسْلَمًا مَّفَاحِيَةً»

And those who kept their duty to their Lord will be led to Paradise in groups, till, when they reach it, and its gates will be opened (before their arrival for their reception) and its keepers will say: "Salamun Alaikum (peace be upon you)! You have done well, so enter here to abide therein."[3]

---

[1] (As-Zumar 39:68)
[2] (As-Sajdab 52:11)
There are other angels who are the keepers of the Hellfire — the Zabaniyyah — and they are nineteen in number. At their forefront is Malik. Allâh Almighty says:

وَمَا أَرْزَقْتُمْ مَسْرُورًاٰ، لَا تَقْرِبُوا وَلَا تَذَكَّرُوا، وَلَسْتُمْ مُّهَاجِرٌ وَذَيَّنُ ﷺ

And what will make you know exactly what Hellfire is? It spares not (any sinner), nor does it leave (anything unburnt)! Burning and blackening the skins! Over it are nineteen (angels as guardians and keepers of Hell). And We have set none but angels as guardians of the Fire.\(^1\)

And Allâh Almighty says:

وَأَتَاكُمُ الْيَمِينَ الْحَمِيدَ الْخَالِدَةَ قَالَ إِنَّكُمْ تَكِيدُونَ

And they will cry: “O Malik (Keeper of Hell)! Let your Lord make an end of us.” He will say: “Verily you shall abide forever.”\(^2\)

Then there are the angels that protect man in all situations, and they are called Al-Mutaqqibat. Allâh Almighty says:

لَا تَفْتَرَ إِلَّا بِمَنْ بَيْنِ يَدَيْهِ وَمِنْ خَلْقِهِ يَحْفَظُونَ مِنْ أَمِّي الْلَّهُ

For each (person), there are angels in succession, before and behind him. They guard him by the Command of Allâh.\(^3\)

وَهُوَ الْغَافِرُ فَوَقَ عِبَادِهِ وَمُرْسَلُ عَلَيْكُمْ حَمَّامَةٌ

He is the Irresistible, Supreme over His slaves, and He sends guardians (angels guarding and writing all of one’s good and bad deeds) over you.\(^4\)

There are some angels who are entrusted with the fetus in the womb; when the fetus has spent four months in the womb, Allâh sends an angel and orders the angel to write his provision, his lifespan, his deeds, and whether he will be miserable or happy. All of

\(^{1}\) \textit{(Al-Muddaththin} 14:27-31)  
\(^{2}\) \textit{(As-Zukhruf} 43:77)  
\(^{3}\) \textit{(Al-Ra’d} 13:11)  
\(^{4}\) \textit{(Al-A’râm} 6:61)
this is established in a Hadith related by Muslim and narrated by Ibn Mas'ud, may Allah be pleased with him.

There are also angels that are responsible for questioning the dead person when he is put in his grave; they ask him about his Lord, his religion, and his Prophet — this too is established in the Sunnah.

Their Relation To Man

Allah Almighty has entrusted the angels with tasks related to different kinds of creation — from among them is man. In fact, the angels have a very strong attachment with man from the very early stages of his development — from the time he is merely semen. Ibn Al-Qayyim mentions the close relationship between angels and man in Ighbatul-Lail fi:

"Indeed they are entrusted in shaping man and in moving him along from one stage to the next. They are entrusted to protect the fetus in the three levels of darkness. They are even responsible for writing man’s provision, deeds, life-span, and whether he will be miserable or happy. Indeed angels stick close to man in all situations, listing his sayings and deeds. They are responsible for protecting man while he is alive and for taking away his soul when he dies, and then for presenting that soul before its Creator and Maker. In the grave and in the Hereafter, they are responsible for executing his punishments and rewards, and they are responsible for the instruments used to give both punishment and reward.

The angels have a special relationship with the believer, for by the Will of Allah, they support him, and during battle, they defend him. They are his helpers in this world and in the Hereafter, and they are the ones who not only supplicate for him, but also call him to good and forbid him from evil. They are his helpers, supporters, protectors, teachers, advisors; and they are the ones who supplicate for him, ask Allah Almighty to forgive him, and pray for him as long as he is obeying his Lord; they also continue to pray for him as long as he is teaching good to others. While he is asleep, when he is dead, and when he is resurrected — on these occasions, they give him glad tidings of Allah’s generosity and rewards. They advise him to seek little from this world and much from the Hereafter. They remind him when he forgets; invigorate him when he becomes lazy. They make
him firm when he is afraid, and they strive for his welfare, in both this life and the Hereafter.

On the other hand, they do not love the disbelievers, the oppressors, and the wrongdoers; rather, they show enmity toward them, waging war against them, making their hearts shake. The angels send punishment upon them by Allāh’s Will and they curse them. They are Allāh’s Messengers among the creation and they are the ambassadors between Allāh and His worshippers. They execute His Commands all over the world and they raise matters up to Him.”

The proofs in the Qur’ān and Sunnah regarding the above require much space to enumerate; they are well-known, however, and some of them we have already mentioned.

The Fruits Of Believing In The Angels
Belief in the angels reaps many fruits; among them are the following:
1) One appreciates the greatness, strength, and power of Allāh, for greatness in the creation results from the greatness of the Creator.
2) One must be thankful to Allāh for the care He shows to the children of Adam, whereby some angels are entrusted to protect man, to write his deeds, and to do other tasks that are related to the welfare of man.
3) One must love the angels because of their prodigious worship of Allāh Almighty.

The Third Pillar Of Iman
Belief In The Revealed Books
In Arabic, the word for the books is Kutub, the plural of Kitāb, meaning that which is written. Here books refers to those Books that Allāh Almighry revealed to His Messengers, as a mercy and guidance to all human beings, so that through the Books, they could achieve happiness in this life and in the Hereafter.

Belief in Allāh’s Books is one of the pillars of Iman. This means that we must believe with certainty that Allāh has certain Books that He revealed to His Messengers, so that they would reach His worshippers with the clear truth. Those Books consist of Allāh’s
Speech: He really spoke them — as He willed and in a way that He willed.

Proofs Indicating That Belief In The Books Is Obligatory

1) Allâh Almighty says:

وَلَوْلَا أَمَاتُكُمْ بَيْنَاهُمْ وَمَا أَرْسَلْتُ إِلَيْهِمْ وَمَا أَرْسَلْتُ إِلَى إِبْرَاهِيمَ وَإِسْحَاقَ وَيُوسُفَ وَالَّذِينَ مِنْهُمْ أَوْفُىٰ مُؤْمِنٌ وَمَا أَوْفُىٰ أَنْبَيُوتُكُمْ مِنْهُمْ لاَ تَفِرَّقِي بَيْنَ أَحَدٍ مِنْهُمْ وَكَنْنَا لَمْ نَسْلِيمُونَ

Say, “We believe in Allâh and that which has been sent down to us and that which has been sent down to Ibrahim, Isma‘îl, Ishaq, Ya‘qub, and to Al-Asbat [the twelve sons of Ya‘qub], and that which has been given to Musa and ‘Iesa, and that which has been given to the Prophets from their Lord. We make no distinction between any of them, and to Him we have submitted (in Islam).”[1]

Indeed Allâh has ordered the believers to believe in Him and in what He has sent down to them through Prophet Muhammad ﷺ — the Noble Qur‘an. He also ordered them to believe in what was revealed to the Prophets from their Lord, without differentiating between any one of them. They were required to do that, showing their submission to Allâh and their faith in what He Almighty informed them.

2) Allâh Almighty says:

وَلَوْلَا أَمَاتُكُمْ رَسُولَ يَا نَرْسِلَ بَيْنَاهُمْ وَعَلِيّهمُ إِلَى يَوْمِ الْقِيَامَةِ وَعَلِيّهمُ عَلَى مَأْسِرَهُمْ بَيْنَاهُمْ وَكَانُوا غَضِيفَةً وَفَسَدُوا عَلَى مَا كُانُوا يُؤْمِنُونَ فِيهِ وَكَانُوا مَسْلِمِيْنَ

The Messenger believes in what has been sent down to him from His Lord, and (so do) the believers. Each one believes in Allâh, His Angels, His Books, and His Messengers. They say, “We make no distinction between one and another of His Messengers” — and they say, “We hear, and we obey. (We seek) Your forgiveness, our Lord, and to You is the return (of

[1] (Al-Baqarah 2:136)
Lesson Three

all).\footnote{(Al-Baqarah 2:285)}

This verse describes the faith of the Prophet ﷺ and of the believers; it clarifies the faith they have been ordered to have — faith in Allâh, in His Angels, in His Books, in His Messengers — without differentiation between them. Therefore disbelief in some of them is tantamount to disbelief in all of them.

3) Allâh Almighty says:

\textit{وَالرَّسُولُ} ﷺ \textit{أَلْبَيْنَ أَلْبْيَنَةَ مَسِّوآ} بِلَهَنَّ وَرَسُولُهُ ﷺ \textit{وَالْرَّسُولُ} ﷺ \textit{ذَٰلِكَ عَلَىٓ رَسُولِهِ}

\textit{وَالرَّسُولُ} ﷺ \textit{أَلْبَيْنَ أَلْبْيَنَةَ مَسِّوآ} بِلَهَنَّ وَرَسُولُهُ ﷺ \textit{وَالْرَّسُولُ} ﷺ \textit{ذَٰلِكَ عَلَىٓ رَسُولِهِ}

\textit{وُلَّدَ فَوَّدَ صَدَقَّا بِعِيدًا١٥}

O you who believe! Believe in Allâh, and His Messenger, and the Book (the Qur’an) which He has sent down to His Messenger, and the Scripture which He sent down to those before (him), and whosoever disbelieves in Allâh, His Angels, His Books, His Messengers, and the Last Day, then indeed he has strayed far away.\footnote{(An-Nisa’ 4:136)}

In this verse, Allâh Almighty orders us to believe in Allâh, in His Messenger, in the Book revealed to the Messenger — the Qur’an, and in the Books revealed before the Qur’an. An important point to understand here is that Allâh joined disbelief in the Angels, Books, Messengers, and the Last Day with disbelief in Him.

4) When Jibril asked the Prophet ﷺ about faith, he ﷺ said:

\textit{أَنْ تُؤْمِنَ بِيَاءِٓ وَمُخْلِصَيْنِ وَمُسْلِمَيْنِ وَمُعْلَمَيْنِ وَآبَهَمَا الأَخْرَى وَتُؤْمِنَ بِالْمُقَدَّرَةِ}}

\textit{وُسُرُٰرَهُ}

To believe in Allâh, His Angels, His Books, His Messengers, the Last Day, and to believe in Divine Preordainment — both the good and bad of it.

In this Hadith, the Prophet ﷺ informed us that belief in the Books is one of the pillars of faith.

\footnote{(Al-Baqarah 2:285)}
\footnote{(An-Nisa’ 4:136)}
What Belief In The Books Includes

Belief in the Books includes four matters:

1) Belief that they were indeed sent down or revealed from Allâh.
2) Belief specifically in those Books that Allâh taught us the names of, such as the Qur'an. Allâh Almighty says:


dâ'îna azâna al-thurûn fi-bâbîa hâdi w-thorî

And We have sent down to you the Book (the Qur'an) as an exposition of everything, a guidance, a mercy, and glad tidings for those who have submitted themselves (as Muslims).\(^1\)

The Tawrah that Allâh revealed to Musa, peace be upon him:


dâ'îna azâna al-thurûn fi-bâbîa hâdi w-thorî

Verily, We did send down the Tawrah [to Musa], therein was guidance and light.\(^2\)

The Injil that Allâh revealed to 'Isa, peace be upon him:

wâqi'îna 'alâ l-ma'dârîm bînasî aîn mîrîm musâ'da lîma bîn bîn yusâ'du min al-thurûn w-ma'înîna

And in their footsteps, We sent 'Isa, son of Maryam, confirming the Tawrah that had come before him, and We gave him the Injil, in which was guidance and light.\(^3\)

The Zabur that Allâh gave to Dawud, peace be upon him:

wâ'amînî kâwqâf 'l-zubûr

And to Dawud We gave the Zabûr.\(^4\)

And the Scriptures of Ibrahim and Musa, peace be upon them:

'ânu hânu 'l-ashâ'înûrûlî bîn bîn yi salîbî hâdi w-thorî

Verily! This is in the former Scriptures, the Scriptures of

---

\(^1\) (Ar-Rahîm 16:94)
\(^2\) (Al-Ma'â'idah 5:44)
\(^3\) (Al-Ma'â'idah 5:6)
\(^4\) (Ar-Râsîl 4:163)
Lesson Three

Ibrahim and Musa.[1]

3) We must apply the rulings and laws of the Qur’an; but moreover, we must be pleased with those rulings, submitting to them, regardless of whether we understand the wisdom for any given ruling or not. We must also know that all of the previous Books have been abrogated by the Noble Qur’an, for Allah Almighty says:

وَأَرَأَيْتَ أَنَّ الْقُرْآنَ الْكَبْرَىُّ مُـصِبَّـفاً لِّيْسَ بِهِمْ مِنْ الْخَلْقِ وَهُمْ يَفْتَرُونَ

And We have sent down to you the Book (this Qur’an) in truth, confirming the Scripture that came before it and Mubāyminan over it (the earlier Scriptures).[2]

Mubāyminan over the old Scriptures means judging over them. Therefore it is not permissible to apply any of the laws from the previous Books unless the Qur’an confirms that law. Whenever there is a matter about which we are not sure, we must not turn to those Books, but to the Qur’an, for Allah Almighty says:

كَيْفَ ذَلِكَ نَزَّلَهُ هُوَ الْأَحْيَّانَ إِلَيْكَ وَرَسُولُهُ

(And) if you differ in anything among yourselves, refer it to Allah and His Messenger.[3]

The Prophet ﷺ said:

وَإِنَّ الْيَسِيرِ لَسْتُ مُحَايِدُ بَيْنِي لَا يَشْنَعُ بِيْنِي أُحْدَثُ مِنْ هَذِهِ الْأَمْرَ الأُحْدَاثِ خَيْرٌ وَلَا نَظْرُ عِلْمِيْنِ لَمْ يَمْتَعْ وَلَمْ يَمْتَعْ بِيْنَيْنِ إِلَّا كَانَ مِنْ أَشْخَاصِ الْإِسْرَائِيْلِ

By the One Who has my soul in His Hand, no one hears about me from this nation, from the Jews, or from the Christians, and then dies without believing in what I have been sent with, except that he is from the dwellers of the Fire. (Recorded by Muslim)

This Hadith states in the clearest of terms that the religion the Prophet ﷺ came with abrogates all that came before it, which is why

[1] (Al-A‘la 87:18,19)
it includes all that mankind needs in this world until the Day of Judgment. If people follow what the Prophet ﷺ came with, they will achieve happiness in the Hereafter. And Allah Almighty guaranteed the preservation of the Qur’an, so that it remains as a proof over mankind. Allah Almighty says:

إِنَّ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا بِالْكِتَابِ لَا جَاءَهُمْ وَذُمَّتْ لَكُنْبُ عِجْرَةٌ ۚ إِنَّا سَمِعْنَاهُمْ مِنْ بَيْنِ يَدَيْنِ ۖ وَلَا مِنْ حَكَمِ اللَّهِ مُجَبَّرٌ ۖ إِنَّا سَمِعْنَاهُمْ مِنْ حَكَمِ اللَّهِ ۙ ۙ (۸)

Verily, those who disbelieved in the Reminder (i.e., the Qur’an) when it came to them (shall receive the punishment). And verily, it is an honorable respected Book. Falsehood cannot come to it from before it or behind it (it is) sent down by the All-Wise, Worthy of all praise.[1]

The Noble Qur’an

The Meaning Of Qur’an

In the Arabic language, Al-Qur’an is taken from the infinitive Qir‘ah, which means reading. From it comes the verb Qarah, as in Qarah-ul-Kitab: I read the book. Allah uses the word Qur’an with the meaning of ‘to read’ in this verse:

إِنِّي أَجْعَلُ مَعَكُمْ نَبِيًّا وَأَضْعَفُ مَعَكُمْ دِينَاتٍ وَأَضْرَعُ مَعَكُمْ عِبَادَتَنِ ۖ وَأَضْرَعُ مَعَكُمْ عَبَدَتَنِ ۖ ۗ وَأَضْرَعُ مَعَكُمْ كَذَٰلِكَ كَلِمَةً مُّبِينَةً (۹)

It is for Us to collect it and to give you (O Muhammad ﷺ) the ability to recite it.[2]

Then the word Qur’an was given a new meaning—as a name for the Book that was revealed to Prophet Muhammad ﷺ. It is called the Qur’an because it embraces the fruits of all previous Books revealed by Allah. Allah Almighty says:

ولَيَكُنْ عَلَيْكُمْ كُلُّ شَيْءٌ مَّثْنَىً وَمَسْنُونًا وَرَحْمَةً عَلَى الْمُسْلِمِينَ (۱۰)

And We have sent down to you the Book (the Qur’an) as an exposition of everything, a guidance, a mercy, and glad tidings for those who have submitted themselves (as Muslims).[3]

[1] (Qassasat 41:41,42)
[3] (Ar-Nahl 16:69)
The Meaning Of Qur’an As An Islamic Term

It is Allâh’s Speech, it is the miracle that was sent down to His Messenger, Muhammad ﷺ as revelation, and its recitation is a form of worship.

The Qur’an is preserved in the hearts of men, it is recited on their tongues, and it is written in Mushaf’s (books), it is heard by the ears of men, and it has been transmitted to us by so many trustworthy sources that there is no doubt as to its authenticity.

The Qur’an Is Allâh’s Speech

In its wording and meaning, the Qur’an is Allâh’s Speech, and it is not created, Jibril, peace be upon him, heard it and conveyed it to Muhammad ﷺ, who in turn conveyed it to his Companions, may Allâh be pleased with them. It is the same Qur’an that we recite with our tongues, write in Mushaf’s, memorize in our breasts, and listen to with our ears. Allâh Almighty says:

\[ \text{كُتِبَ عَلَىٰ قُلُوبِكَانِ} \]

And if anyone of the polytheists seeks your protection then grant him protection, so that he may hear the Word of Allâh.

It is recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim that ‘Abdullah bin ‘Umar ﷺ narrated that the Prophet ﷺ forbade Muslims from travelling with the Qur’an to the land of the enemy. And the Prophet ﷺ said,

\[ \text{رَتَّبُ رُكَّةً} \]

Adorn the Qur’an with your voices. (An authentic Hadith recorded by Imam Ahmad.)

Belief in all that we have stated about the Qur’an is obligatory. It is also obligatory to believe that the Qur’an is the final Book revealed from Allâh: it came to confirm and support those truths that Allâh revealed in previous Books; but it was also revealed to clarify how man distorted those previous books. Therefore the Qur’an gives us an all-embracing Shari’ah — set of laws to live by — one that is suitable for all times and places, one that abrogates all previous laws. These beliefs are compulsory upon all those who have received the

\[ \text{[1]} \text{ (Al-\textbf{Taubah} 9:6)} \]
message until the time of the Hour. Since the time the Qur'an was revealed, Allâh Almighty informed us, that He accepts no religion other than Islam.

**The Fourth Pillar of Iman**

**Belief In The Messengers**

To believe in the Messengers means to believe with certainty that Allâh sent a Messenger to each nation, calling them to worship Allâh alone, without associating partners with Him, and calling them to disbelieve in all that is worshipped other than Him. We must also believe that every one of the Messengers is truthful, guided, righteous, and obedient to Allâh and that they conveyed all that Allâh sent them with: they neither hid any part of the message nor did they change any part of it. Allâh Almighty says:

٨٧٠ وَأَنْتُمْ لَعَلَّا إِلَّا أَبْعَضُ الْجِنَّ وَالْأَرْضُ وَمَنْ ذَاتَ الْقُلُوبِ

Are the Messengers charged with anything but to clearly convey the Message? And verily, We have sent among every Ummah (community, nation) a Messenger (proclaiming): “Worship Allâh, and avoid the Tagbut (all false deities).” Then of them were some whom Allâh guided and of them were some upon whom the straying was justified. So, travel through the land and see what was the end of those who denied (the truth).[1]

Some of the Messengers were better than others:

٨٧٢ وَاتَّقُوا اللَّهَ وَمَنْ مَعَ اللَّهِ مِنْ رَبِّكُمْ وَمَنْ أَتَىٰ مِنْ فِرْعَوْنَ بِرَسُولِهِ

Those Messengers! We preferred some of them to others; to some of them Allâh spoke (directly); others He raised to degrees (of honor); and to ‘Iesa, the son of Maryam, We gave clear proofs and evidences, and supported him with Ruhul-

[1] (An-Nabî 16:35,36)
Lesson Three

**Qudsu [Jibril].**[1]

The best of the Messengers are five known as *Ulul 'Azm,* or the Messengers of firm will: Nuh, Ibrahim, Musa, 'Iesa, and Muhammad, may the peace and blessings of Allah be upon them all, and the best of these five is Muhammad ﷺ.

To have belief in all of the Messengers is obligatory; whoever disbelieves in one from them, then he has not only disbelieved in them all, but he has also disbelieved in the One Who sent them — Allah. Allah Almighty says:

وَإِنَّ الْبَيَانَ لَيَكْفُرُونَ بِاللَّهِ وَرَسُولِهِ إِنَّهُمْ أَفْسَدُوا بِذَٰلِكَ سَيَبَلُوا

Verily, those who disbelieve in Allah and His Messengers and wish to make distinction between Allah and His Messengers saying, “We believe in some but reject others,” and wish to adopt a way in between. They are in truth disbelievers. And We have prepared for the disbelievers a humiliating torment. And those who believe in Allah and His Messengers and make no distinction between any of them (Messengers), We shall give them their rewards, and Allah is Ever Oft Forgiving, Most Merciful. [2]

We must believe in the Messengers in general, meaning that we believe in those that we know of and those that we don’t know of. So, we must specifically believe in those Messengers that Allah named, and we must believe that Allah sent Messengers other than the ones He named to us:

وَلَقَدْ أَرْسَلْنَا رُسُلًا مِن قَبْلِكَ وَمِنْهُمْ مَنْ قَصَصَتْ عَلَيْكَ وَمِنْهُمْ مَنْ أَتَى}

[1] (Al-Baqarah 2:253)
And, indeed We have sent Messengers before you; of some of them We have related to you their story and of some We have not related to you their story.\footnote{\textit{Ghafir} 40:78}

It is not a part of faith to raise them above the status that Allāh gave to them, for they are human beings and His creatures. They are distinct in that Allāh chose them and prepared them to carry His Message.

Their nature is that of man; they have no share in the qualities specific to godhood, so they don’t know the information of the unseen, except for those matters that Allāh has informed them about. Allāh ordered Muhammad ﷺ to convey to his nation:

\[
\text{ titulo } \text{ إِنَّما أَنَا بِمَا نَزَّلْتُ مُبِينٌ} \text{ يُوحِيُّ إِلَيْهِ}.
\]

Say: “I am only a human being like you. It is inspired in me that your \textit{Ilah} (God) is One \textit{Ilah},”\footnote{\textit{Rassulat} 41:6}

\[
\text{ إِنَّمَا أُوْلَىَ الْكُلُّ مَعِيَ إِخْرَاجِيُّ الْأَمَٰنِ} \text{ كَمَا أَوْلُواٰ لِكُلِّ مَلِكٍ، إِنَّمَا أُوْلُىَ الْكُلُّ إِلَىٰ مَلِكٍ إِنَّمَا أُوْلُىَ الْكُلُّ إِلَىٰ مَلِكٍ}.
\]

Say: “I don’t tell you that with me are the treasures of Allāh, nor (that) I know the unseen; nor do I tell you that I am an angel. I but follow what is revealed to me by inspiration.”\footnote{\textit{Al-An’am} 6:50}

**The Definition Of \textit{Nabi} (Prophet) and \textit{Rasul} (Messenger)**

\textit{Nabi} in the Arabic language: It is taken from the word \textit{Naba‘a}, which means news or information. A Prophet is called a \textit{Nabi} because he informs us about Allāh Almighty — i.e., he conveys to us His Orders and revelation. A Prophet is perhaps also called \textit{Nabi} because Allāh informed him.

\textit{Rasul} in the Arabic language: \textit{Rasul} is taken from \textit{Rasul}, which means direction. Therefore the Messengers are thus named because they are directed from Allāh. Allāh Almighty says:

\[
\text{إِنَّمَا أُوْلِيَ الْأَمَٰنِ} \text{ مَعَنِيُّ مَعَنِي}.
\]

Then We sent Our Messengers in succession.\footnote{\textit{Al-Mu‘minun} 23:44}
The Difference Between A Nabi (Prophet) And A Rasul (Messenger)

A Rasul is a man who is inspired with a new Shari’ah or set of laws, and he is sent to a transgressing people, conveying to them Allâh’s Message — for example, the Messengers of firm will (Uluh-Azmi).

A Nabi is a man who is inspired with a message, but the message is to follow the Shari’ah of those who preceded him; he is sent to apply a previously sent Shari’ah (set of laws) — for example, the Prophets from the Children of Israel that came after Musa, peace be upon him. Allâh Almighty says:

(Quran 5:4) 

Verily, We did send down the Tawrah, therein was guidance and light, by which the Prophets, who submitted themselves to Allâh’s Will.\(^1\)

Prophethood Is A Blessing Granted By Allâh

Prophethood is a blessing that Allâh bestows according to His choice:

(Quran 6:123) 

Allâh chooses Messengers from angels and from men.\(^2\)

Therefore Prophethood is not a goal that is achieved through man’s striving or working; rather, it is a high and special rank for which Allâh chooses — purely by His grace — whomsoever He pleases from His creation. He prepares them to carry the message, He protects them from the effects of the devils, and He protects them from Shirk, as a favor and mercy from Him, not from the efforts they expended. It is a blessing and favor from Allâh; He says:

(Quran 7:29) 

Those were they to whom Allâh bestowed His grace from among the Prophets, of the offspring of Adam, and of those

\(^1\) (Al-Ma’idah 5:4)  
\(^2\) (Al-Hakim 22:75)
whom We carried (in the ship) with Nuh, and of the offspring of Ibrahim and Israel and from among those whom We guided and chose.\footnote{\textit{Maryam} 19:58}

Allâh said to Musa:

\[
\text{وَأَصَابَتِكَ الْفَتْحُ عَلَى الْأُناسِ يُسْتَجِيبُونَ رَبَّكَ}
\]

I have chosen you above men by My Messages, and by My speaking (to you).\footnote{\textit{Al-A'raf} 7:144}

And Allâh said, relating the words of Ya'qub to his son Yusuf, peace be upon them:

\[
\text{وَكَذَلِكَ يَعِبَدُ رَبُّكَ}
\]

Thus will your Lord choose you.\footnote{\textit{Yusuf} 12:6}

All of the above verses clearly indicate that Prophethood is not achieved by greatness or by actions; rather, it is a blessing and mercy from Allâh. He chooses men for that ranking by His Knowledge and Wisdom; it is a ranking that is not achieved by those who wish for it or work for it.

A Description Of The Messengers And Their Miracles

1. A Description Of The Messengers

The Messengers are good examples in their characteristics and manners; a discussion about their qualities is a long one indeed, but here we will suffice by mentioning the following qualities:

1) Truthfulness: Allâh informed us that His Messengers are truthful:

\[
\text{هَذَا مَا وَعَدَ الَّذِينَ أَرْمَعُونَ وَسَدَدْنَكُمُ الْمَيْرَاتُ}
\]

This is what the Most Beneficent had promised, and the Messengers spoke truth!\footnote{\textit{Ya Sin} 36:52}

Without a doubt, truthfulness is the core and heart of the message and calling, and with it matters are set straight and deeds reap their fruits. Lying is a defect that the best of creation — the Messengers —
are far above.

2) Patience: Calling people to the obedience of Allāh and warning them not to go against His Commands is indeed a difficult and rough path to follow, and not everyone can handle it. However, Allāh's Messengers, peace be upon them, are the best of creation. They were faced with all kinds of hardship and harm, yet their firm will was not affected, and they continued to call people to the way of Allāh. Allāh informed us about some of His Prophets and the harm that was inflicted on them because of the message they brought. Allāh informed us about the patience and forbearance they exhibited in order to raise Allāh's Word above all else. Allāh ordered the Prophet [SAW] to take example after the Messengers of firm will, when He Almighty said:

نَثْنِيَ عَلَى الْهَدِيَةِ وَأيْتِمَّ فَأَصِبْ مَعَهُمْ وَأَنْزِلْ مِنْهُمْ (14) 

Therefore be patient as did the Messengers of firm will and be in no haste about them (disbelievers). On the Day when they will see that (torment) with which they are promised (i.e. threatened, it will be) as if they had not stayed more than an hour in a single day. (O mankind! This Qur’an is sufficient as) a clear Message (or proclamation to save yourself from destruction). But shall any be destroyed except the people who are rebellious.\(^1\)

2. The Miracles of the Messengers [SAW]

What is meant by those miracles: The miracles of the Prophets and Messengers are those things that go against the nature or habitual pattern of occurrences; Allāh makes those miracles occur at the hand of His Prophets and Messengers, and man is unable and incapable of repeating that occurrence or causing something similar to occur. Such miracles occurred at the hands of Allāh’s Prophets and Messengers so that the proof upon man becomes final; the proof of those miracles is so binding that man must surrender and believe in what the Messengers came with, regardless of whether the people asked a given Messenger to bring them a miracle or no. Those

\(^1\) (Al-Abqāf 46:35)
miracles are called Ayat in the Qur’an.

Belief In Muhammad ﷺ As A Prophet And Messenger

Belief in Muhammad ﷺ consists of the following:

1) We must believe that he was sent to all of mankind, for Allâh Almighty says:

"Verily, I am sent to you all as the Messenger of Allâh."

And the Prophet ﷺ said:

"And he was sent to every red and black (i.e., to all of mankind)."

(Recorded by Muslim)

Allâh has made the religion complete for us, He has completed His favors upon us, and He is pleased with Islam as a religion for us, the religion that was revealed to Muhammad ﷺ, who is a mercy for all of mankind and the seal of Prophets and Messengers. He ﷺ is the Messenger of Allâh not only to man but to jinns as well — a giver of glad tidings, a warner, and a caller to Allâh, by His Will, and a torch illuminating the way.

Whoever from mankind doesn’t accept his message deserves a punishment from Allâh — just like his brother disbelievers, for Allâh Almighty says:

"And whoever seeks a religion other than Islam, it will never
be accepted of him.[11]

2) We must believe that he ﷺ is the final Prophet and Messenger, for Allâh Almighty says:

يَا كَانَتُ مَعَنًّا أَنْ أُخْبِرُ مَنْ يَجْعَلُوا مَعِيَ ﻷَنْ أُخْبِرُهُمُ ﻷُنْبِئُهُمُ ﻷُنْبِئُهُمُ ١٥

Muhammad is not the father of any man among you, but he is the Messenger of Allâh and the last (end) of the Prophets. And Allâh is Ever All-Aware of everything.[2]

The Fifth Pillar Of Iman

Belief In The Last Day

Belief in the Last Day is the fifth pillar of Iman, and what it means is that we must believe with certainty in all that Allâh informed us in His Book, and, all that the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ informed us about regarding what happens after death. This includes the following — the trial of the grave, the punishment and reward in the grave, resurrection, the gathering of mankind for accountability, the judgement, the Scale of deeds, the Hauwah (special basin granted to the Prophet ﷺ in the Hereafter, from which the believers will drink), the path, intercession, Paradise, Hell, and all that Allâh prepared in these two abodes for their dwellers.

Proofs Indicating That It Is Compulsory To Believe In The Last Day

1) Allâh Almighty says:

وَعَلِيَّ صَلِّيْنَا فَلَهُمْ أَحْرَمُهُمْ وَلَا حَوَّلٌ عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا فَوْقُهُمُ ١٨

Verily! Those who believe and those who are Jews and Christians, and Sabians — whoever believes in Allâh and the Last Day and does righteous good deeds — shall have their reward with their Lord, on them shall be no fear, nor shall they grieve.[3]

[2] (Al-Ka‘bah 33:40)
2) Allah Almighty says:

﴾سَأَرْبَىٰ الْجِبَّالَ نَشْرِهِمْ فِي الصَّبْرِ وَالْصَّمِّرِ وَلْكُنْيَةُ اَلْبَرِّ مِن مَّانِيِّ اللَّهِ وَالنَّبِيِّ (2: 177)﴾

It is not Al-BIr (piety, righteousness) that you turn your faces towards east and (or) west (in prayers); but Al-BIr is (the quality of the one who believes in Allah, the Last Day, the Angels, the Book, the Prophets and gives his wealth, in spite of love for it, to the kinsfolk, to the orphans, and to Al-Masakin (the poor), and to the wayfarer, and to those who ask, and to set slaves free, performs As-Salat, and gives the Zakat, and who fulfill their covenant when they make it, and who are As-Sabirin (the patient ones, etc.) in extreme poverty and ailment (disease) and at the time of fighting (during the battles). Such are the people of the truth and they are the pious.\(^1\)

3) Allah Almighty says regarding the Resurrection:

﴾سَأَرْبَىٰ الْجِبَّالَ نَشْرِهِمْ فِي الصَّبْرِ وَالْصَّمِّرِ وَلْكُنْيَةُ اَلْبَرِّ مِن مَّانِيِّ اللَّهِ وَالنَّبِيِّ (2: 177)﴾

Then (again), surely, you will be resurrected on the Day of Resurrection.\(^2\)

4) When Jibril, peace be upon him, asked the Prophet ﷺ about Iman, he ﷺ said:

﴿أَنْ نَوْمُ إِلَيْهِ وَفِي نَيْطَةٍ وَقُتُورٍ وَأَنْفُقُ إِلَيْهِ وَفِي نَيْطَةٍ وَقُتُورٍ﴾

To believe in Allah, His Angels, His Books, His Messengers, the Last Day, and to believe in Divine Preordainment, both the good and bad of it. (Recorded by Muslim)\(^1\)

\(^1\) (Al-Baqarah 2:177)
\(^2\) (Al-Mu'minun 23:16)
The Punishment Of The Grave, And Its Pleasures

There are so many Ābādīth related from the Prophet سALLAH التAWALLAH regarding the questions of the two angels, the punishment of the grave, and its pleasures that these are positively established realities. Therefore believing in them is obligatory. One is punished in the grave if he deserves punishment, and one is given bliss if that is what he deserves. Whichever the case, one will be recompensed in the grave, regardless of whether he is buried or not, or whether he is eaten up in his grave, or whether he is cremated, or whether he drowned and is at the bottom of the sea, and so on. The proofs that establish recompense in the grave are many — from them are the following:

1) Allâh Almighty says:

{5:22} يُجْنَبُنَّكُمُ اللَّهُ مَا ظَلَّ مَنْ عَمِّضَ ۖ خُذُواۡ الْزَّيِّدَةَ وَفِيٓ آلْجَرَّةِ ۖ وَيَضُرِّبُ اللَّهُ ٍمَا تَعَمَّلُونَ

Allâh will keep firm those who believe, with the word that stands firm in this world (i.e., they will keep on worshipping Allâh Alone and none else), and in the Hereafter. And Allâh will cause to go astray those who are wrongdoers, and Allâh does what He wills.\[1\]

"With the word that stands firm...and in the Hereafter": This is a proof that we will be asked in the graves (and those among us who believe and whom Allâh favors will be blessed with “the word that stands firm”).

2) Allâh Almighty says:

{2:28} ﴿١٨ أَتَيْنَىٓ أَعَزُّرُونَ عَلَیْهِ عَذَابًاۚ وَعَبْرَةًۖ وَيَوْمَ يَقُومُ السَّاعَةُۡ أَجْرُكَۡ أَنَّا أَحْمَدْنَاكَ إِنَّا أَنَّا أَحْمَدْنَاكَ﴾

The Fire; they are exposed to it, morning and afternoon, and on the Day when the Hour will be established (it will be said to the angels): “Cause Firâwn’s people to enter the severest torment!”\[2\]

This verse proves that some people are punished in their graves.

\[1\] (Ibnâhîm 14:27)
\[2\] (Ghâfîr 40:46)
3) Al-Bukhari recorded that Ibn ‘Abbas, may Allah be pleased with them, said:

“The Prophet passed by two graves and said:

الله أعلم أنكم تدخلون في كبر

Indeed they are being punished, and they are not being punished for something that is great.
Then he said:

ألا أخفى، أنا أنظر نفسك في الحياة، وأنا الآخر فلان لا يشبه من

Indeed (for something that is great). As for one of them, he would spread tales in order to sow dissension among people; and as for the other, he would not properly protect himself from his urine.

The Prophet then took a fresh stick, broke it in two, and drove each of the sticks on the grave, after which he said:

الله أعلم أنكم تدخلون في كبر

Perhaps their punishment will be lightened as long as they (the two sticks) do not get dry.

The Hour And Its Signs

Allah Almighty says:

وَمَنَّكَنِي مَعَهُمْ لَا يَعْلَمُهُمْ إِلَّا هُوَ

And with Him are the keys of the Ghaib (all that is hidden), none knows them but He.\[1\]

The knowledge of when the Hour will arrive is that part of the unseen that only Allah knows about:

إِنَّ اللَّهَ عَسَمَ عَلَمَ الْكِتَابِ

Verily, Allah! With Him (Alone) is the knowledge of the Hour.\[2\]

\[1\] (Al-An'am 6:59)
\[2\] (Luqman 31:34)
Lesson Three

There are many verses of the Qur’an, and sayings of the Prophet ﷺ, that prove the coming of the Hour; among them are the following:

1) Allâh Almighty says:

إِنَّ الْسَّاعَةَ لَا يَبْذِبُ فِيهَا وَلَكِنْ أَسْتَغْفَرُ النَّاسَ لَا يُؤْمِنُونَ

Verily, the Hour (Day of Judgement) is surely coming, therein is no doubt, yet most men believe not.[1]

2) The Prophet ﷺ said:

بَعُوثُنَا إِنَّ السَّاعَةَ كَجَهَانٍ وَيَقُولُنَّ أَصْبَحْتُمْ السَّماوَاتَ وَالْأَرْضَ

The time in which I have been sent and the Hour are like these two. He ﷺ then joined his index finger with his middle one.

The Resurrection

The Resurrection means bringing life to the dead at the second blowing of the Trumpet, a time when people will stand — barefooted, naked, and uncircumcised. Allâh Almighty says:

كَمَا بَدَا أَوَّلُ كَسِيِّبٍ وَعَرَبَ فَعَلَ إِنَّا كَا نَفْعَلِيكَ

As We began the first creation, We shall repeat it, (it is) a promise binding upon Us. Truly, We shall do it.[2]

The Qur’an, the Sunnah, and the consensus of the Muslims establish the truth of the Resurrection. In the Qur’an, Allâh Almighty says:

كُنْتُمْ قَابِلِينَ لِمَا كُتِبَ لَكُمْ وَأَنْتُمْ تَفْتَرِظُونَ

After that, surely you will die. Then (again), surely you will be resurrected on the Day of Resurrection.[3]

As for the Sunnah, the Prophet ﷺ said:

ۚۚ وَمَمَّا يُتَرُّنُّ اللّهُ مِنَ السَّمَاوَاتِ وَمَا فَيْيَبُوُّنُ كَمَا يُنبِثُ البَلَدُ ۚ

Then Allâh will send water from the sky, and you will grow just like vegetables grow.

And the Muslims unanimously agree that it is the truth.

[1] (Ghafir 40:59)
[3] (Al-Mu’minun 23:15,16)
The Gathering

After people will rise from their graves, they will be steered to the land of the Gathering. Allâh Almighty says:

(50:45)٥٠٤٥

On the Day when the earth shall be cleft, from off them, (they will come out) hastening forth. That will be a gathering, quite easy for Us. [1]

(98:9)٩٨٩

And you will see the earth as a levelled plain, and we shall gather them all together so as to leave not one of them behind.[2]

And the Prophet ﷺ said:

الِجَاهِزُونَ الْوَافِينَ يَوْمَ الْيَمِينِ ۗ حَتَّىَ يَكُونَ عَذَابَ عُدَّالٍ

The people will be gathered on the Day of Judgement, and they will be barefooted, naked, and uncircumcised.

The Reckoning

This means that Allâh will show man the deeds he performed in this world, and he will admit what he did; at that time, people will take the rights that are due to them from others, and all of that is most easy for Allâh. That the accountability and judgement will take place is proven by many verses from the Qur’ân, as well as Ahâdhâb of the Prophet ﷺ, such as these two verses:

(16:79)١٦٧٩

Then surely, We shall question those (people) to whom it (the Book) was sent and verily, We shall question the Messengers. [3]

(7:172)٧١٧٢

And they will be set before your Lord in (lines as) rows, (and

---

[1] (Q.50:45)
[2] (Q.98:9)
Allāh will say): “Now indeed, you have come to Us as We created you the first time.”[1]

Allāh will Himself take account of man’s deeds, for ‘Adi bin Hatim, may Allāh be pleased with him, related that the Prophet ﷺ said:

«نَبِيَّنَا وَمَنْ كَفَّرْنَاهُمْ مِنْ أَخْلَقِهِمْ إِلَّا مَعَ الْعَامَلِينَ وَيَبْعَثُنَا لَهُمْ عَجْمًا بِشَيْءٍ إِنَّهُ فَيَنَظُّرُونَ فَيَنَظُّرُونَ»

فَإِذَا بَرَزَّ إِلَّا مَا قُفِّنَ مِنْ عَمَلِهِ وَيَنَظُّرُ أَشْمَاعُهُ فَإِذَا بَرَزَّ إِلَّا مَا قُفِّنَ وَيَنَظُّرُ

بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ فَإِذَا بَرَزَّ إِلَّا النَّارُ بَلَّامَةً وَجَهَّلُوا الْمَيْخَابُ وَلَوْ رَيَّنُوا النَّارَ»

There is not one from you except that Allāh will speak to him; there will not be between Him (Allāh) and him any interpreter. He (man) will look to his right and see only that which he put forth; he will look to his left and see only that which he put forth. And he will look before him and will see only the Hellfire, which will reach his face. So, protect yourselves from the Fire, even if you do so with part of a date (by giving it in charity). (Recorded by Al-Bukhari)

The Ḥauḍab

The Ḥauḍab is a huge basin from which the nation of Muhammad ﷺ will drink, except for those who went against his guidance and who changed his religion after him. As the Prophet ﷺ was among his Companions, he said:

«إِلَّا عَلَى الْحُوْصَلَ أَنْظُرُ مَنْ بَرَزَّ عَلَى وَمْكُونَ، فَوَاللَّهُ لِيَفْتَعَّلُلَّ، وَرَجَالًا فَالْفَلَتُّ، إِنِّي رَبِّي، وَيَوْمٍ أَفْتَطَنَّ، فَيُبْيِنُونَ إِنَّكَ لَا تُبْيِنُ مَا عَمِلْتَ بَعْدَكَ، فَأَيُّهُمْ يُبِينُونَ عَلَى أَغْفَافِهِمْ»

I am at the Ḥauḍab waiting for whoever from you comes to me (to drink); by Allāh, some men will be blocked from coming to me, and I will say, “My Lord, they are from me and from my nation.” It will be said, “Indeed, you do not know what they did after you; they continued to go back on their heels.” (Recorded by Al-Bukhari)

This Ḥadīth establishes the reality of the Ḥauḍab and that people who innovate in religion or people who go against the guidance of

[1] (Al-Kāf 18:48)
the Prophet ﷺ will be prevented from drinking from it. The Hadiths regarding the Ḥaʾalāb are so many that its existence is positively established. ʿAbdul-Malik bin ʿUmar said, “I heard Jundub, may Allāh be pleased with him, saying, ‘I heard the Prophet ﷺ say:

‘أَنَا مَنْ تَعَجِّبُونَ عَلَى الْحَجَّارِ.’” (Recorded by Al-Bukhārī)

The Scale (or The Balance)

A scale is an apparatus for weighing things. The Scale of the Hereafter is real: it has two real pans upon which the deeds of Allāh’s worshippers will be placed. The Scale exhibits Allāh’s justice, for He doesn’t wrong any soul. So Allāh will bring forth the deeds of men, including deeds that in weight are equal to a grain or a mustard seed. Those deeds will be weighed: one will be rewarded according to the results of the weighing. The Scale of deeds may be one or many, and Allāh is capable over all things. Here are two of the proofs that establish the reality of the Scale:

1) Allāh Almighty says:

وَضَعَ الْمَيْسِرَةَ الْمِقْسَمَ بِعَجْلٍ فَلَا تَلْهِيمُ فَلا نِقَاطُ فَلا تَحْتُمُّ وَيْلَ الْمُقْسَمَ وَيْلَ الْمُقْسِمِ

And We shall set up Balances of justice on the Day of Resurrection, then none will be dealt with unjustly in anything. And if there be the weight of a mustard seed, We will bring it. And Sufficient are We as Reckoners.[1]

3) The Prophet ﷺ said:

قَلْ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَلَا مَعِيْرُ لَهُ وَلَا شَخْصٌ إِلَّاءَ اللَّهِ وَلَا مَعِيْرُ لَهُ وَلَا شَخْصٌ إِلَّاءَ اللَّهِ

Two words, beloved to the Most Merciful, light on the tongue, and heavy on the Scale: SubbaanAllāhi wa Bismillāh (How perfect Allāh is and with His praise) and SubbaanAllāhi wa Rabbikum Allāh (How perfect Allāh, the Magnificent).

[1] (Al-Anbiya’ 21:47)
Lesson Three

(Recorded by Al-Bukhari)

The previous proofs establish the weighing of deeds on the Scale, the success that results from good deeds being heavy, and the loss that results from the good deeds being light.

**As-Sirat**

*As-Sirat* means the path, and here it refers to the bridge that is erected over the Hellfire and that leads to Paradise. All must pass over this bridge, and only by passing across it does one enter Paradise. The existence of the bridge is established in both the Qur’an and the Sunnah. Allâh Almighty says:

> مَثَلَّ النَّارِ إِذاً كَانَ عَلَى رَبِّكَ حَمْساً مَّفْعَلًا (68) ثُمَّ عَلَى الَّذِينَ يَفْسَدُونَ وَالْجَاهِلِينَ

There is not one of you but will pass over it (Hell); this is with your Lord, a Decree which must be accomplished. Then We shall save those who use to fear Allâh and were dutiful to Him. And We shall leave the wrongdoers therein (humbled) to their knees (in Hell).[^1]

Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with him, related in a long *Hadîth* that the Prophet ﷺ said:

> يُصَبِّبُ العَصَرَ بَيْنَ طَفْقَيْهِ جَهَّلُ أَنَا وَأَنَا أَوَّلُ مِنْهُمَا

And the *Sirat* is placed over the Hellfire. I and my nation will be the first to cross it. (Recorded by Muslim)

**Ash-Sha`f`at (Intercession)**

*Ash-Sha`f`at* means to attach something to what is similar to it. And *Sha`f`at* signifies means or a request. Here it means to intercede for others to bring benefit or drive harm away.

In most cases, it is used to mean that someone who is higher in ranking or status intercedes for someone who is lower in ranking. And two conditions must be fulfilled for intercession to occur on the Day of Judgement with Allâh:

1) That Allâh gives permission to the intercessor to intercede. Allâh

[^1]: (Maryam 19:71,72)
Almighty says:

«من ذا الذئ يشفع عنده إلا بإذنِه؟»

Who is he that can intercede with Him except with His Permission?[^1]

2) That Allah is pleased with the one who is being interceded for.

Allah Almighty says:

«ولا يشفعون إلا لمن أرض منه»

And they cannot intercede except for him with whom He is pleased.[^2]

**Categories Of Intercession**

There are Two Categories of Intercession:

— The first is specific to the Prophet ﷺ.
— The second is general - for him ﷺ and for others.

**The First Category Includes The Following**

1) The greater intercession; it is specific to the Prophet ﷺ and it is the highest position of praise and glory that Allah promised him:

«عَسَى أَنْ يَعْلَمَ رَبُّكَ مَا قَضَاهُ مَعَكَ هُمْ»[^10]

It may be that your Lord will raise you to *Maqam Malmud* (the highest position of praise and glory) [^31]

This refers to when the standing becomes difficult for the people on the Day of Judgement, and they will be searching for intercession. They will go in succession to Adam, Ibrahim, Musa, and then to Jesus — all of these Prophets will say, “Myself, myself.” Then finally, they will reach our Prophet Muhammad ﷺ, who will say:

«آهَ أَهِيّاً»

I am to do this. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari)

2) Intercession for entering Paradise: Anas bin Malik, may Allah be

[^1]: *(Al-Baqarah 2:255)*
[^2]: *(Al-Anda 21:28)*
[^3]: *(Al-Isra 17:79)*
pleased with him, related that the Prophet ﷺ said:

«أَنَا أَوَّلَ الْنَّاسِ بِذَٰلِكَ فِي الْجَنَّةِ وَأَنَا أَكْثَرُ الْأَلْبَاءِ نَبِيًا»

I am the first of people to intercede regarding Paradise and among the Prophets I have the most followers. (Recorded by Muslim)

3) The Prophet ﷺ will intercede to have punishment lightened for his uncle, Abu Talib. Abu Sa’id Al-Khudri, may Allāh be pleased with him, related that the Prophet ﷺ mentioned his uncle Abu Talib to him, and then he ﷺ said:

«الْعَالَةُ نَفْعَهُ فَمَا أَلَّمَاهُ فِي ضَحْصَاءٍ مِّنْ نَارٍ يُعْلِي وَهُدِّي فِي ضَحْضَاءٍ»

Perhaps my intercession will benefit him on the Day of Judgement, so that he is placed in a shallow part of the Fire, and from it his brain will boil.

However, as one who died not upon Taubid, he will not benefit from intercession to the extent of being taken out of the Hellfire. And Allāh knows best.

The Second Category Consists Of The Following

1) Intercession for those people of Taubid who perpetrated great sins, people who were placed in the Hellfire but are then taken out of it. This kind of intercession has been related by a great many sources in Abadīth, so many so that its occurrence is positively established. The Prophet ﷺ will intercede many times for the people of this category; other intercessors in this case are the angels, the Prophets, and the believers.

The Muttazilah and the Khawārij, two deviant sects, reject this category of intercession. They reject it based on their false belief that one who perpetrates great sins is in the Hellfire for eternity, thus making intercession useless in his case.

2) Intercession will occur for the people of Paradise, that they may be raised to a position higher than the one that their situation calls for.

3) Some people will be interceded for, so that they can enter Paradise without being reckoned. When ‘Ukashah bin Mihsan
asked the Prophet ﷺ to supplicate for him to make him from the seventy thousand who will enter Paradise without reckoning, the Prophet ﷺ said:

«أَلَّهُمَّ اجْعَلْهُ مِنْهُمْ»
O Allah, make him from them.

Paradise and Hell

Paradise is the abode that Allah prepared for the righteous ones to inhabit in the Hereafter.

Hell is the abode that Allah prepared for the disbelievers to inhabit in the Hereafter.

Both of them are created and exist now, for Allah Almighty says about Paradise:

«يَعْدُّ الْبَيْتُ الْكَبِيرُ»
Prepared for the pious[1]

And about Hell:

«لِلْكَفِيرِينِ»
For the disbelievers.[2]

When the Prophet ﷺ prayed the Eclipse Prayer, he ﷺ said:

«إِنِّي رَأَيْتُ الْجَنَّةَ فَكَانَتْ لَمْ تَكُنْ عَلَيْهَا عَمْرٌ وَأَخْلَصْنَهَا لَكِنْمَ فَما يَكُنْ لَهَا»
Indeed I have seen Paradise and I reached for a cluster from it. Were I to have taken it, you would have eaten from it as long as the world would remain. I also saw the Hellfire, and I have never seen anything more horrible than it. (Agreed upon)

Paradise and Hellfire will never cease to exist, for Allah Almighty says:

«خَرَّاهُم مِّنَ السَّمَاوَاتِ عَلَى الْخَلْقِ نَفَقًا حَتي نَجْعَلَنَّهُمْ مَحْيَاءً فِيهَا أَيْمًا»
Their reward with their Lord is ‘Adn (Eden) Paradise (Gardens

[1] (Aal Imran 3:133)
of Eternity), underneath which rivers flow, they will abide therein forever.\[1\]

**The Sixth Pillar Of Iman**

**Belief In Al-Qadar (Divine Preordainment)**

The Definition Of Al-Qadar: What Allâh decrees for all in existence, based on what has preceded in terms of His Knowledge and in accordance with His Wisdom.

Belief in Al-Qadar is the sixth pillar of faith: when Jibrîl, peace be upon him, asked the Prophet ﷺ about Iman, he ﷺ answered:

الحمد لله وملائكته ورسوله وكتبenu في القبر ۭ

To believe in Allâh, His Angels, His Books, His Messengers, the Last Day, and to believe in divine Preordainment, both the good and bad of it.

Belief in Al-Qadar means believing with certainty that all that happens — good and bad — occurs according to Allâh's divine Preordainment and Decree. Allâh Almighty says:

لَا يَضُرّ عَلَى الْمُتَّقِينَ مِنْ نَارٍ عَلَى الْمُتَّقِينَ مِنْ نَارٍ

No calamity befalls on the earth or in yourselves but is inscribed in the Book of Decrees (Al-Lauh Al-Malîl), before We bring it into existence. Verily, that is easy for Allâh. In order that you may not be sad over matters that you fail to get, nor rejoice because of that which has been given to you. And Allâh likes not prideful boastiers.\[2\]

This verse indicates that all events in existence, and in the souls of men — both the good and bad of it — are divinely preordained by Allâh and were written before the creation was created. Therefore one should not grieve for not having something he loves, nor should

\[1\] (Abu-Dhârib: Al-Khulafa’ 98:8)

\[2\] (Abu-Haâlid 57:22,23)
he rejoice ever getting that which he wants.

Zaid bin Thabit, may Allāh be pleased with him, narrated that he heard the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ say:

كُلُوا ٱلنَّاسَ ٱلذِّكَرَ، ثُمَّ أَسْمَعُ ٱلذِّئَبَ، وَكَاذَّبُهُمْ إِنَّهُمْ غَبِيلُوُّ الْمَلَكَ، وَكَانَ لَهُ جَرَاءٌ أَحَدٌ آوُمْ بِيَّالِدَةٌ أَحَدٌ - َهُمْ أَصْمَاقُهُمْ فِي سَبِيلِ ٱللهِ مَا كَيْلَهُ مَلَكَ ۡعَلَىٰ غَيْبٍ يَلْعَبُونَ يَأْتِيْنَكَ وَأَلْقَبُكَ وَأَلْقَبُكَ وَأَلْقَبُكَ وَأَلْقَبُكَ وَأَلْقَبُكَ وَأَلْقَبُكَ وَأَلْقَبُكَ - إِسْرَمَ يَأْتِيْنَكَ وَأَلْقَبُكَ وَأَلْقَبُكَ وَأَلْقَبُكَ وَأَلْقَبُكَ وَأَلْقَبُكَ وَأَلْقَبُكَ لَكَ.

If Allāh were to punish the inhabitants of the heavens and the inhabitants of earth, He would not be doing them wrong by punishing them. And were He to have mercy on them, His mercy would be better than their deeds. And were you to have gold equal to Mount Uhud, or almost equal to Mount Uhud, and then you spent it in the way of Allāh, He would not accept it from you until you believed in divine Preordination — until you know that what befalls you wasn’t meant to miss you, and that what misses you wasn’t meant to strike you. If you die upon other than this (belief), you will enter the Hellfire.

(Recorded by Imam Ahmad)

Everything that Allāh decrees is by His Wisdom and Knowledge. He doesn’t create pure evil in the sense that no good or benefit will result from that evil; therefore evil is not ascribed to Him in the sense that it is evil; rather, it comes under the general reality that Allāh created all things. Justice, Wisdom, and Mercy — these are some of Allāh’s Qualities that we infer from His divine Decree. Allāh is categorically perfect and complete, for He says:

فَمَّا أَصَابَكَ مِنْ حَسَنَتٍ فَمِنَ ٱللَّهِ إِنَّهُۥ أَصَابَكَ مِنْ سَيِّئَتٍ فَنَقِيمُ ٱلنَّاسِ

Whatever of good reaches you, is from Allāh, but whatever of evil befalls you, is from yourself.[1]

The meaning of this verse is that whatever blessings and good things happen to man, then it is from Allāh; and whatever evil befalls him, then it is because of his own evil deeds and sins. No one can flee

[1] (Ar-Ra’i 4:79)
from the divine Decree or from that which is decreed. Allâh created His creatures; nothing occurs in His dominion except what He wishes, and He is not pleased with disbelief for His creatures. But Allâh granted them the ability to choose; man's actions occur by his ability and will, yet Allâh guides whomsoever He wishes by His Mercy, and He misguides whomsoever He wills by His Wisdom. And He is not asked about what He does, but they (mankind) will be asked.

**The Levels Of Belief In Al-Qadar**

There are four levels of belief in Al-Qadar:

1) **Knowledge**

Which means that we believe in Allâh's Knowledge; that He knows all things and that His Knowledge encompasses all things. Even something as small as an ant — whether it is in the heavens or in the earth — is not hidden from His Knowledge. He indeed knew the entire creation before He even created them; He knew every situation they were in, regardless of whether it is something open or hidden. There are many proofs to support this — these are a few:

a) Allâh Almighty says:

   
   وَلِنَفَنِيَّ الْمَقَانِقَةَ، فَلَا يَعْلَمُنَا إِلَّا هُوَ فَيُعْلِنُهُمَا مَّا فِي أَلْجَرَةَ وَأَلْجَرَاهَا، وَمَا فِي جِبَالَيْنِ عَدَّةً، فَأَيَّانِ ۚ إِنَّهُمَا أَجْزَاءٌ هَٰذَا مِنْ وَرَقَاتِهِنَّ. إِنَّهُ لَا يَعْلَمُنَا إِلَّا هُوَ وَلَا حَيِّييًَ، فَرَبِّي ٌ، وَلَا جَمِيعَ إِلَّا لَنَحْيَٰنِ. 
   
   And that Allâh surrounds (comprehends) all things in (His) Knowledge.[1]

b) Allâh Almighty says:

   
   وَلِنَفَنِيَ الْمَقَانِقَةَ، فَلَا يَعْلَمُنَا إِلَّا هُوَ فَيُعْلِنُهُمَا مَّا فِي أَلْجَرَةَ وَأَلْجَرَاهَا، وَمَا فِي جِبَالَيْنِ عَدَّةً، فَأَيَّانِ ۚ إِنَّهُمَا أَجْزَاءٌ هَٰذَا مِنْ وَرَقَاتِهِنَّ. إِنَّهُ لَا يَعْلَمُنَا إِلَّا هُوَ وَلَا حَيِّيًَ، فَرَبِّي ٌ، وَلَا جَمِيعَ إِلَّا لَنَحْيَٰنِ. 
   
   And with Him are the keys of the Ghaib (all that is hidden), none knows them but He. And He knows whatever there is in (or on) the earth and in the sea; not a leaf falls, but He knows it. There is not a grain in the darkness of the earth nor anything fresh or dry, but is written in a Clear Record.[2]

---

[1] (Al-Talaq 65:12)
c) Ibn 'Abbas, may Allâh be pleased with them, said that the Prophet ﷺ was asked regarding those children (who die before they become adults) whose parents are disbelievers, and the Prophet ﷺ answered:

اِنَّهُ الَّذِينَ مَاتُوا بِعِينٍ عَلَيْهِمْ نَاشِئٌ إِلَّا ذَاعُلُوهُمْ

Allâh knows what their deeds would be when He created them. (Recorded by Muslim)

Allâh has knowledge of all things that are present and hidden, those have taken place and those that have not taken place; He even knows those things that haven’t taken place, and how they would be were they to take place. There are many proofs that clearly indicate His All-Embracing Knowledge.

2) The Writing

We believe that Allâh wrote the decrees regarding His creation in Al-Laubah Al-Malîz (The Preserved Tablet); nothing is left out of that record. The proofs for this level are many indeed, and here are some of them:

a) Allâh Almighty says:

إِنَّلَّهَ يَعْلَمُ أُنْفَقَةَ عِبَادِهِ وَمَا فِي السَّمَاوَاتِ وَالمَيْمَاتِ إِنَّ ذَلِكَ فِي كِتَابٍ إِنَّ ذَلِكَ عَلَى اللَّهِ تَبَارَى

Know you not that Allâh knows all that is in heaven and on earth? Verily, it is (all) in the Book (Al-Laubah Al-Malîz). Verily! That is easy for Allâh.¹⁴

b) In a Hadîth related by ‘Ubâdah bin Samit, may Allâh be pleased with him, the Prophet ﷺ said:

أَوَلَمْ نَخْلُقَ الْهَيَّةَ بَعْزَهُ وَتَعَالَى إِلَى الْقُلُومِ، ثُمَّ صَوَّرَهُ بِقَالَةٍ، ثُمَّ قَالَ ُعْلِمَ قَالَ: وَمَا أَجْعَلْتُ قَالَ: الْقُرْآنُ كَتَبُ مَا كَتَبْنَوْنَ وَمَا كَانَ كَابِئًا إِلَّا أَنْ آتَيْنَاهُ الْبَيِّنَةَ

The first thing that Allâh created was the Pen. Then He said to it, “Write.” The Pen said, “What shall I write?” He said, “Write what will be and what will take place until the Hour arrives.” (Recorded by Imam Ahmad)

¹⁴ (Al-Hk. j 22:70)
The previous proofs clearly show that Allah wrote all things before creating the creation; He left nothing out of the Book — and that is easy for the One from Whom nothing is hidden.

3) His Will

We believe that Allah’s Will is executed and that His Ability is All-Embracing; whatever Allah wills to happen, necessarily occurs; whatever He doesn’t will, does not occur. The proofs that establish this level of belief are many, from them are the following:

a) Allah Almighty says:

وَإِذَا كَانَ آمَنُونَ إِلاَّ أَن يَنَبِئَنَّكُمَا رَبُّ الْعَالَمِينَ

And you will not (will), unless (it be) that Allah wills, the Lord of all that exists.[1]

b) Allah Almighty says:

إِنِّي آمَنُ إِذَا أَمَرَنِي فَأَمَّلَى نَفْسِي لَنْ يَنْفَعِ النَّارُ كَانَ مِثْلُهَا

Verily, His Command, when He intends a thing, is only that He says to it, “Be!” — and it is!![2]

c) Al-Bukhari and Muslim recorded that Mu’awiyah bin Abi Sufyan, may Allah be pleased with him, related that the Prophet ﷺ said:

فَهُنَّ لَهُمُ اللَّهُ سَيِّئَاتُهُمْ وَيُعَفِّهَهُمْ فِي الدُّنْيَا

Whoever Allah wants good for, He makes him knowledgeable in the religion.

These evidences prove that Allah’s Will is manifest over all things, everything that happens in the universe happens by Allah’s Will, for He is the sole Creator, King, Planner, and Sustainer of the universe. Nothing occurs in His dominion that He doesn’t wish; His Decree cannot be prevented and there is none to counter His Ruling. Whatever Allah doesn’t will, then it doesn’t happen, because He doesn’t will for it to happen, not because of a lack of ability. There is nothing that escapes Allah:

وَمَا كَانَ اللَّهُ يُعَجِّرُ مِنَ الْشَّمَاتِرِ وَلَا فِي الْأَرْضِ إِلَّا كَانَ عَلِيًّا

[1] (At-Takwir 81:29)
[2] (Ya Sin 36:82)
Allāh is such that anything in the heavens or in the earth escapes Him. Verily, He is All-Knowing, All-Capable.[1]

4) The Creation
We must believe that Allāh created everything, there is no creator or Lord other than Him. The following two proofs support this belief:

a) Allāh Almighty says:

»أَلَمْ يَسْتَنْفِعَ اللَّهُ مَا خَلَقَهُ وَهُوَ عَلَى كُلِّ شَيْءٍ قَدِيرٌ (73)<br />

Allāh is the Creator of all things, and He is the Wakīl (Trustee, Disposer of affairs, Guardian, etc.) over all things.[2]

b) The Prophet ﷺ said:

»إِنَّ اللَّهَ خَالِقُ كُلِّ شَيْءٍ وَصَاغِيٌّ<br />

Indeed, Allāh is the Creator of all makers and that which they make.

These two proofs plainly show that Allāh decreed and created all things and that He encompasses all things with His care and protection. He created all things without having a previous example to base their creation upon. He granted some of His creation both ability and action; He is the Creator of the doer and his action; He is the All-Knowing and the Creator of all things.

The Effects Of Iman On The Individual And On Society

Iman or faith, with all of its pillars makes up one complete unit, meaning that each component is related to the other, and no single component is sufficient in itself; it needs all of the other components as well. Believing in all of the pillars of Iman results in having Iman in each of the individual pillars, so in reality, they cannot be separated from one another. The same can be said for its effects on the individual and on society, for the individual is the first brick from which society is comprised. The Messages were addressed to individuals because if they are upright, the society becomes upright. Here are some of the effects of Iman:

[1] (Fatīr 35:44)
Lesson Three

1) Belief in Allâh Almighty is life for the hearts; it strengthens hearts as they climb to levels of completeness. *Iman* encourages man to take on good and noble characteristics, to stay away from evil and base characteristics, for Allâh Almighty says:

أوَ مَنَّا كَانَ مَيْتًا فَأَحْيَاهُ وَجَعَلْنَاهُ لَا نُؤُرُوهُ أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ كَمْ أَنْزَلْنَا مَطَالِبِكُمْ

Is he who was dead (without faith by ignorance and disbelief) and We gave him life (by knowledge and faith) and set for him a light (of faith) whereby he can walk amongst men, like him who is in the darkness (of disbelief, polytheism and hypocrisy) from which he can never come out? Thus it is made fair-seeming to the disbelievers that which they used to do.\[1\]

2) Because *Iman* conforms to the inborn nature of man, it is the source of comfort and peace for individuals; meanwhile, it is also the source of bliss and happiness for society: it strengthens the ties of one member of society to another. With faith in one’s heart, one is satisfied and contented in all situations — when he is rich or poor, when he is in comfort or difficulty, when he is happy or sad, but only because he believes in Allâh’s divine Preordainment and Wisdom, for Allâh Almighty says:

وَإِذَا أَجَسَحُوا سَبِيلَكَ وَفَوْقَ خَزَمَتَهُمْ وَقَسَّمَنَّكُمْ جَزَاءً عَسَمُكَ

And it may be that you dislike a thing which is good for you and that you like a thing which is bad for you. Allâh knows but you do not know.\[2\]

Imam Muslim recorded that Suhaib, may Allâh be pleased with him, narrated that the Prophet ﷺ said:

أَعْجِبَةٌ لَّا يُؤْمِنُونَ بِهَا أَقْرَهُّ لَهَا كَبِيرٌ، وَلْيَسْكُنُ كَأَنْ لَمْ يُؤْمِنُوا إِلَّا بِهَا، فِي أَصَابَتِهِ سَرَأَةً مَّكْرُوَّة، فَكَانَ خَبَرًا لَّهُ، وَإِنَّ أَصَابَتِهِ صَرَأَةً صَبَرُ فَكَانَ خَبَرًا لَّهُ

\[1\] (Al-An’am 6:122)
\[2\] (Al-Baqarah 2:216)
Wonderful is the affair of the believer, for his affair in its entirety is good, and that is for no one except the believer. If a good thing befalls him, he is thankful, and that is good for him; if a harmful thing befalls him, he is patient, and that is good for him.

The believer who has these qualities feels tranquility in his heart and calmness in his limbs and soul; those qualities fill his life with happiness and peace, and thus he becomes serene with Allah’s mercy and justice, serene because Allah is his sanctuary that he seeks refuge in.

3) With Iman, souls are purified and cleansed; this means that faith purifies souls from false beliefs and delusions, thus making the soul pure by what it believes in. When souls truly believe and feel that Allah created them and that He guarantees their provision, the chains are broken that make one fear and hope from creation, regardless of whether it is a real man that one fears or an illusion in the mind. Therefore one ceases to believe that planets, stars, trees, rocks, graves, or the dead can cause harm or bring benefit. One then clings to the truth, leaving all else. When many people have such faith, they will become united in their goal and objective, and they will no longer have motives to compete or fight with other members of that group.

4) Strength and honor abound when people believe that this world is a planting ground for the Hereafter, as Allah Almighty says:

وَأَفْيَمُوا ِالْكَذِبَةَ وَمَا أَرْكَبُواْ وَمَا أَنْفَقُواْ إِلَّا لِأُمِّيِّمٍ مِّنْ خَيْرِي ۚ عَفَوْنَا عَنْهُمْۚ إِنَّ اللَّهَ غَفُورٌ رَّحِيمٌ

And perform Salat and give Zakat, and whatever of good you send forth for yourselves before you, you shall find it with Allah. Certainly, Allah is All-See of what you do.\[1\]

And Allah Almighty says:

وَقَسَمْ بِمَثَلِ ِمَيْكَالٍ دَرَّةٍ حُبَّاً يُسَرُّ مِنْ بَعْضِكُمْ مِنْ بَعْضٍ حُبَّاً يُسَرُّ

[1] (Al-Baqarah 2:110)
So whosoever does good equal to the weight of an atom (or a small ant), shall see it. And whosoever does evil equal to the weight of an atom (or a small ant) shall see it.\[1\]

One who has true \textit{Iman} believes that whatever he missed out on in life was not meant for him and that whatever he did achieve was meant for him all along. With such a belief, one has no reason to fear, and so one stays away from humiliating or debasing himself. When we understand the points just mentioned, we should plainly see how the Muslim nation advanced as prodigiously as it did at the hands of the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ and his Companions, may Allāh be pleased with them. The strength and power of all of the earth cannot stand before those whose hearts are filled with faith, those who are righteous because they know that Allāh is aware of all of their deeds, those whose goal is the Hereafter; just as we should appreciate how individual Prophets stood, challenging their people, without worrying about their great numbers and power. Two wonderful examples of the great power of faith are Ibrahīm and Hud, may peace and blessings be upon them.

5) When one believes in a life after this life, and when one believes that he will be rewarded for his deeds, he will feel that his life has a noble purpose, a feeling that will urge him on in performing good deeds, in having good manners, and in staying away from sins. His goal is to develop himself into a noble individual, his community into a prosperous society, and his people into a productive nation.

6) When one has a correct belief in Allāh’s divine Preordainment, a belief that includes knowledge in causes and their effects, one will strive and work hard in his life; moreover, one will realize the many virtues of good works. One will also appreciate that when Allāh grants guidance and success to one of His worshippers, that worshipper will take all the appropriate steps to reach his goal, without allowing hopelessness to find a way into his heart when he misses out on something, and without allowing pride or haughtiness to find a way into his heart if he achieves something in this world. For Allāh Almighty says:

\[1\] \textit{(Az-Zalzalāh 99:7,8)}
No calamity befalls on the earth or in yourselves but it is inscribed in the Book of Decrees (Al-Lauh Al-Malik), before We bring it into existence. Verily, that is easy for Allâh. In order that you may not be sad over matters that you fail to get, nor rejoice because of that which has been given to you. And Allâh likes not prideful boasters.\(^1\)

\(^1\) (Al-Hadîd 57:22,23)
Lesson Four

The Categories Of *Taubid* And *Shirk*

There are three categories of *Taubid*:

1) *Taubid Ar-Rububiyah* (Lordship)

2) *Taubid Al-Ulubiyyah* (Godhood)

3) *Taubid Al-Asma' was-Sifat* (Names and Attributes)

*Taubid Ar-Rububiyah:* The belief that Allāh is the Creator, Ruler, and Sustainer of all things, and that He has no partners in those matters.

*Taubid Al-Ulubiyyah:* The belief that Allāh is the only One Who truly deserves to be worshipped and that He has no partner in that regard. And that is the meaning of *La ilaha illallāh,* or “None has the right to be worshipped but Allāh.” All acts of worship — such as prayer and fasting — must be performed sincerely for Allāh alone; it is not permissible to direct even a portion of that worship to other than Him.

*Taubid Al-Asma' was-Sifat:* The belief that all that has been related in the Noble Qur’an or in the authentic Sunnah regarding Allāh’s Names and Attributes must be established and affirmed for Allāh alone, in a manner that is suitable to Him — how perfect He is — without changing their meaning or ignoring them completely or twisting the meanings or giving resemblance to any of the created things. Allāh Almighty says:

َهُوَ الَّذِي خَلَقَكُمْ مِن نِّفَاثٍ مَّلِئٍ

Say, “He is Allāh, (the) One, Allāhus-Samad (Allāh — the Self-Sufficient Master, Whom all creatures need. He neither eats nor drinks). He begets not, nor was He begotten. And there is
none coequal or comparable unto Him.[1]
And He Almighty says:

اَنَّكَ لَنَعْظَمُهُ وَلَنَغَفِلْهُ وَلَنَخَافَ عَلَيْهِ وَلَنَتَّفَكَهُ وَلَنَقْبَنَعْهُ

There is nothing like unto Him, and He is the All-Hearer, the All-See.

Some of the people of knowledge hold that there are two categories of Taubid, simply because they have included the third category (Names and Attributes) under the first one (Ruhubiyah). There is no real difference in the two ways of classifying, because the goal of explaining Taubid is achieved either way.

The Classification of Taubid

Taubid is a crucial topic because it is the foundation of our religion and the basis for which all of the Messengers, peace be upon them, were sent, from the first of them to the last. This topic is also so important because people who go astray or are destroyed only suffer those consequences because they turn away from this foundation, because they are ignorant of it, because they act contrary to its implications.

The polytheists of old were ignorant regarding the aspect of Taubid which required them to worship Allah alone, without associating partners with Him — and it was because of that aspect that the Messengers were sent, the Books were revealed, and jinns and humans were created.

They thought that their religion of Shirk was correct, and that through it, they were getting closer to Allah Almighty. In reality, however, they were perpetrating the greatest crime and sin. But because of their ignorance, their turning away, and their blind following of their fathers and ancestors, they thought their religion

[1] (Al-Ikhlas 112:1-4)
was true, they rejected the Prophets, and they fought them. Allâh Almighty says:

\[
	ext{إِنَّهُمْ أَحْذَرُوا الْمُهَيْدِينَ أُوْلَٰٰيَاءَ مِنْ دُونِ اللَّهِ وَعَسَّرُوا أُمَّتَيْنِ فَهُمْ مَهْدُودُونَ.} (70:15)
\]

Surely they took the Shayatin (devils) as Auliya’ (protectors and helpers) instead of Allâh, and consider that they are guided.\(^{[1]}\)

The first people who went astray and believed in Shirk were the people of Nuh, peace be upon him; they were the first nation to believe in Shirk, while those after them followed them. What led them to Shirk was exaggeration in venerating righteous people: Wad, Suwa’, Yaghuth, Ya’uq, and Nasr. These were all righteous men who died and whose people were very sad to have lost them. The Shaitan embellished the idea of exaggerating in veneration for those righteous men. This led them to make images and erect statues of them at their gathering places. They reasoned that people would look at the statues of the righteous men and follow in their way; however, rather than following in their way, they were ruined, and so were those who came after them. As time passed, people forgot the initial reason why the statues were made, and they began to worship them. Some of our pious predecessors said, “When these people (who built the statues) were destroyed, those came after them who worshipped the statues, and so Allâh revealed this verse regarding them:

\[
	ext{وَقَالَ نَآءُلَا نَذَّرُونَ الْمُهَيْدِينَ وَلَا نَذَّرُونَ وَلَا نَذَّرُونَ وَلَا يَعْلَمُونَ وَلَا يَعْرَفُونَ وَلَا يَأْسَرُونَ} (70:15)
\]

And they have said: “You shall not leave your gods, nor shall you leave Wadd, nor Suwa’, nor Yaghuth, nor Ya’uq, nor Nasr.” And indeed they have led many astray. And (O Allâh): “Grant no increase to the wrongdoers except in error.” Because of their sins they were drowned, then they were made to enter the Fire, and they found none to help them instead of Allâh.\(^{[2]}\)

\(^{[1]}\) (Al-A’raf 7:30)
\(^{[2]}\) (Nuh 7:25-25)
Exaggeration regarding the status of angels, Prophets, righteous men, jinns, or statues is the basis of the evil of Shirk. At the hands of the Messengers, peace be upon them, Allâh clarified to mankind that it is obligatory to worship Him alone, that He is the true God, and that it is forbidden to take intermediaries between Him and His creatures; rather, we must worship Him directly without any intermediary. This is the message the Messengers were sent to deliver, and for which the Books were revealed, and for which creation was created. Allâh Almighty says:

وَمَا خَلَقْتُ الْجَنَّةَ وَالْأَرْضَ إِلَّا لِيُعْبُدَنِ (52)

And I created not the jinns and humans except they should worship Me (Alone).\[1\]

وَبَلَّاءَ الْأَلَّامِ نَزَعْتُ أَنْتُمْ رَيْحَٰمَى الَّذِي خَلَقْتُكُمْ وَالَّذِينَ مِنْ فِيْلَكَ

O mankind! Worship your Lord, Who created you and those who were before you.\[2\]

Tawhid is an issue that at all times and on all occasions requires much attention, especially when we are calling others to the religion of Allâh and to worship Him alone, and especially considering that Shirk is the greatest sin, a sin that most people of the past and present are guilty of. Therefore, Muslims must strive to call others to the way of Tawhid and warn them about Shirk and its different categories, so that people may be wary of it. The last Prophet, Muhammad ﷺ, delivered that message completely, both in Makkah and in Al-Madinah.

When calling others to Islam, the people of knowledge must give Tawhid priority over all else because it is the foundation; if it is spoiled in any way by Shirk, all other deeds are nullified.

وَأَلْبَسُوا لَيْسَ مُرْضَى عَنْهُمْ مَا كَانُوا يَعْمَلُونَ (68)

But if they had joined in worship others with Allâh, all that they used to do would have been of no benefit to them.\[3\]

---

[1] (Al-Thari'at 51:56)
[3] (Al-An'am 6:88)
The Definition Of Tawhid

It is to single out Allah with Ar-Rububiyyah (Lordship), Al-Ulubiyyah (Godhood), and Al-Asma’ wa-Sifat (Names and Attributes). To believe that He is One in His Self and in His Attributes, that He is One in His Sovereignty and in His actions. Indeed, He is One in His Self, in His Names, and in His Attributes; there is none that is coequal, comparable, or similar to Him.


There is nothing like Him, and He is the All-Hearer, the All-See.[1]

He is One in His kingdom and actions; as Creator, Planner, and Sustainer of all that exists, He has no partner:

Say: “O Allah! Possessor of the kingdom, You give the kingdom to whom You will, and You take the kingdom from whom You will.”[2]

As the One Who deserves worship alone, He is One, for there is none that deserves worship but Him. Allah Almighty says:

Say: “Verily, I am commanded to worship Allah, making all religion purely for Him.”[3]

The Virtue Of Tawhid

It is a great virtue to have belief in Tawhid; indeed, Allah made that belief to be a saving ship for His worshippers in this life and in the Hereafter.

As for this life — when one is from the people of Tawhid, living his life according to its implications, and not associating any partners with Allah whatsoever, Allah will shower him with safety, peace, guidance, and a good life, for He says:

[1] (As-Sab 42:11)
It is those who believe and confuse not their belief with wrong, for them (only) there is security and they are the guided.\[1\]

Wrong’ here means to mix one’s faith with Shirk. When one avoids that wrong, one will have achieved security and guidance. Allâh Almighty says:

\[\text{\textit{من عمل صلحاً من ذكور أو أنثى وهو مؤمن}}\]

Whoever works righteousness, whether male or female, while he (or she) is a true believer verily, to him We will give a good life.\[2\]

As for the Hereafter — when one dies upon Taubah and meets his Lord, not associating any partners with Him, He enters Paradise and Allâh Almighty saves him from the Hellfire. In an authentic Hadith, in the Two Sahâbs it is recorded that the Prophet ﷺ said:

\[\text{\textit{إِنَّ اللهَ حَرَّمَ عَلَى النَّارِ مِنْ قَالَ لَإِنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يَعْلَمُ وَلَا رَبُّ يَعْلَمُ.}}\]

Indeed, Allâh has forbidden upon the Fire he who says, ‘None has the right to be worshipped but Allâh,’ seeking from that Allâh’s Face.

The Shaikh mentioned that “there are three categories of Taubah,” a fact that the scholars derived through studying and contemplating verses of the Qur’ân, the sayings of the Prophet ﷺ, and the situation of the polytheists.

Of the three categories, the polytheists acknowledged two and rejected one, the one around which they disputed with the Messengers, fought with them, and showed enmity and hatred toward them, a fact that one appreciates when he reflects on the Qur’ân, the life of the Prophet ﷺ and the history of all Messengers, peace be upon them.

Some have added a fourth category, called Taubah Al-Mutabarâb (Following) meaning that it is obligatory to follow the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ and adhere to the Shari'ah. None is followed other than the

\[1\] (Al-An'âm 6:82)

\[2\] (An-Nahl 16:97)
Lesson Four

Prophet [musl] for he is the greater Imam that is always followed. It is not permissible, therefore, to go outside of the boundaries of his Shari'ah, for the Shari'ah is one and its Imam is one. Every jinn and man must follow and submit to his Shari'ah and they must follow his way in Tawhid. Though this fourth category is understood, it really falls under the category called Tawhid Al-Mutab'ah, for the Lord ordered His worshippers to follow the Book and the Sunnah, and following the Sunnah is Tawhid Al-Mutab'ah Muslim scholars agree that it is obligatory to follow the way of the Messenger of Allah [musl] and that no one is excused from following that way.

Then the Shaikh mentioned the three categories:
1) Tawhid Ar-Rububiyyah
2) Tawhid Al-Ulubiyyah
3) Tawhid Al-Asma' uas-Sifat

1. Tawhid Ar-Rububiyyah

What this means to single out regarding His actions. For example, creating, providing, giving life, causing death, sending down rain, causing crops to grow. The monotheistic Muslim believes that Allah is the Creator, the Provider, the One Who brings benefit, and the Only One Who can harm, the One Who brings to life, the One Who causes death, the King of the entire dominion — in His Hands are the reins of the heavens and the earth.

The polytheists believed in this category of Tawhid, for Allah Almighty says about them:

قُلْ مَنِ يَحْيِّ الْأَنْبَاتِ وَيُمْتِلِّ الْأَمْوَاتَ مِنْ بَعْدِ مَنْ قَضَأَ اللَّهُ وَيَنْدِرُ الْكَوْلَ وَيُبَشِّرُ الْأَمْيَالَ وَيُشَفِّيَ الْمََّالَ عَنْ مَنْ كَفَّرَ عَنْهُ مُثْلُهُ فَقَالَ أُلُّهُمْ مَّعَكَ

Say: ‘Who provides for you from the sky and the earth? Or who owns hearing and sight? And who brings out the living from the dead and brings out the dead from the living? And who disposes the affairs?’ They will say: ‘Allah.’ Say: ‘Will you not then be afraid of Allah’s punishment?’[1]

[1] (Yunus 10:31)
2. Taubah Al-Ulbūyāb

This means to single out Allāh with those actions that His worshippers perform as a form of worship — in ways that Allāh and His Messenger ﷺ have legislated. It means to believe that Allāh alone is the One Who deserves to be worshipped and obeyed, and that there is none that deserves to be worshipped other than Him. Therefore, all acts of worship must be performed purely for Him. So when one prays, he must pray only to Allāh; when one supplicates, he must supplicate only to Him. When one slaughters an animal, it must be done by Allāh’s Name only. When one makes a vow, one must do it only for Allāh. When one seeks help, one must seek it from Allāh in those matters that only Allāh is capable of. When one calls out for help, one must call out for help from Allāh — in those matters that only Allāh is capable of.

To believe and apply Taubah in this sense requires one to:
- Worship none except Allāh
- Fear none except Allāh
- Submit to none except Allāh
- Seek refuge in none except Allāh
- Seek help from none except Allāh
- Rely upon none except in Allāh
- Seek judgement from none except Allāh’s Shari’ah
- To not make lawful except that which Allāh has allowed
- To not make forbidden except that which Allāh has prohibited

It is confirmed that ‘Adi bin Hatim—who was a Christian in the Days of Ignorance—heard the Prophet ﷺ recite this verse:

فَاتَّهُمَا عَيْشَتَمَا وَرَأَيَا بِنْ ذَرَّةٍ وَسَأِرُبُّمَا بِنْ ذَرَّةٍ وَلَسُلَّمُ يَا نَزْرِيُّمَا

They (Jews and Christians) took their rabbis and their monks to be their lords besides Allāh, and the Messiah, son of Maryam.¹¹

‘Adi said, “O Messenger of Allāh, they did not worship them.” The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said:

¹¹ (At-Taubah 9:31)
Indeed, they (the rabbis and monks) would forbid them from that which was lawful, and they would permit them to do that which was forbidden. They followed them: that was their worship of them.”

The Taubah With Which The Messengers Were Sent

Taubah Al-Ulûbiyyah is the Taubah that the Messengers invited people to accept, and it is that category of Taubah that people rejected, from the time of Nuh, peace be upon him, until that of Muhammad ﷺ. Allâh Almighty says:

وَإِنَّ الزَّكَّارِينَ لَمَّا أُرْسِلْنَا مِنْ قَبَلِكَ مِنْ رَسُولٍ إِلَّا لَأُنْفِقُوا إِلَىٰ أَبَنَيْنَا لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا نَعْمَانُ وَأَنَا نَحْبِسُكَ الْأَقْدَرُ

And We did not send any Messenger before you but We inspired him (saying): “La Ilaha Illa Ana [none has the right to be worshipped but I], so worship Me.”[1]

And Allâh Almighty says:

وَلَقَدْ بَعْضُكُمْ فِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ أُهِدَى وَلَعْلَمَ أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ أَنْ أَنتُمْ مِنْ قَوْمٍ أُخْشَى

And verily, We have sent among every Ummah (community, nation) a Messenger (proclaiming): “Worship Allâh, and avoid the Tagbut (all false deities)...”[2]

Whosoever worships Allâh alone, leaving the worship of all else, has indeed followed the straight path, and has grasped the most trustworthy handhold:

فَمَنْ يَحْكِمُ بِالْقَوْلِ وَيَتَّبِعُ الْمُسْتَقِيمَ وَيَتَّبِعُ الْإِنْطَهَاءَ وَالْأَنْبَاطِ وَالْأَذْيَارِ وَالْأَلْغَامَ وَالْأَثْمَانَ وَالْأَذْبَاهِ وَالْأَكْبَلَاتِ وَالْمُدَّرَّاتِ وَالْمُخْلِصَاتِ وَالْمُتَّقِينَ

Whoever disbelieves in Tagbut and believes in Allâh, then he has grasped the most trustworthy handhold that will never break. [3]

لا يَنْتَهِنَّ إِلَىٰ مَكَانٍ اثْنَيْنَ إِلَّا وَهُوَ إِلَّا وَهُدَى إِلَيْنِي فَأَرْهَبُونَ (٨)

[1] (At-Taba’at’ 21:25)
[2] (At-Taba’at’ 16:36)
[3] (At-Baqarah 2:256)
And Allāh said: "Take not ilabain (two gods in worship, etc.). Verily, He is only One Ilab (God). Then, fear Me much."

The polytheists among the Arabs acknowledged that Allāh created all things, while their gods neither created, nor provided, nor brought things to life, nor caused death; Allāh Almighty says:

«وَإِنِّيٍّ سَأَلَنَّهُمْ مِنْ خَلْقِ الْشَّمْسِ وَالْقَرْنِينَ لِبَيَانٍ لَّهُمْ حَقَّ الْعَرْشِ الْعَمِيمِ»

And indeed if you ask them, "Who has created the heavens and the earth?" They will surely say: "The All-Mighty, the All-Knower created them."[2]

Nevertheless, they were polytheists because they worshipped other gods along with Allāh, gods that in their estimation were intermediaries between them and Allāh. So, because they rejected Taubah Al-Ulubiyah, their belief in Taubah Ar-Rububiyyah didn’t benefit them at all:

«وَمَا يُوْمَانِ كَمَثْلَهُمْ بِذَٰلِكَ إِلَّا وَمَنْ شَاءَ كَثِيرٌ»

And most of them believe not in Allāh except that they attribute partners unto Him.[5]

They didn’t single Allāh out for worship, supplication and seeking help; rather, they associated partners with Him in their worship:

«مَا تَعْبَدُهُمْ إِلَّا يَقُولُونَ إِلَى ٱللهِ رَفِيقٌ»

“We worship them only that they may bring us near to Allāh.”[4]

«هُؤُلَاءِ سَفَعُونَا هَدَى ٱللَّهُ»

“These are our intercessors with Allāh.”[5]

So again, it becomes clear that although one may believe in Taubah Ar-Rububiyyah, one is a polytheist, not a Muslim, as long as one doesn’t believe in Taubah Al-Ulubiyah.

[1] (Ar-Nābī 16:51)
[2] (As-Zukkāf 43:9)
[3] (Yāsīn 12:106)
[4] (As-Zumar 39:3)
[5] (Yūnus 10:18)
Lesson Four

Who Is Allâh?

Indeed Allâh is the One True God: He has no partner and there is no one who is equal or similar to Him, not similar to His Self, to His Attributes, or to His actions. With this belief, we are different from those who ascribe a wife or a child to Allâh:

َوَقَالَ الَّذِينَ كَفَرُوا إِنَّ لَهُ مُلُكَ وَمَلَأَّهُ وَمَلَأَّهُ نَجْعَلُهُمَا مُخْلِصَةً لَّهُ وَالِدَّةً وَأَبَاءً

Say: “He is Allâh, (the) One, Allâhu Samad (Allah — the Self-Sufficient Master, Whom all creatures need. He neither eats nor drinks). He begets not, nor was He begotten, And there is none coequal or comparable unto Him.”[1]

With our belief that is explained above, we are different from those who claim that Allâh is the third of three — far, far is Allâh above the evil they ascribe to Him:

كَذَلِكَ الْحَقُّ وَلَاتُ دُرُرٍ

Surely, disbelievers are those who said: “Allâh is the third of the three.” But there is no ilâh (god) (none who has the right to be worshipped) but One Ilâh (God — Allâh)[2]

وَهُدِئَ الْكُفَّارُ لَمْ يَكُونُنَّ لَهُ مُرَيَّةً

And your Ilâh (God) is One ilâh (God — Allâh), La Ilaha Illa Huwa (there is none who has the right to be worshipped but He), the Most Beneficent, the Most Merciful.[3]

And with that same belief, we are opposite of those who believe that a god other than Allâh has any power in the universe:

أَوَ كَانَ فِي إِنَاءٍ مِّلْيَةٍ إِلَّا أَنَّهُ لَفَلَدُ، فَمُكْسِنُ أَنَّهُ رَبُّ الْمَلَأِ، فَيُصَفِّيُهُ مَلَأَّهُ

Had there been therein (in the heavens and the earth) gods besides Allâh, then verily both would have been ruined. Glorified be Allâh, the Lord of the Throne, (High is He) above what they attribute to Him!”[4]

[1] (Al-Jklbas 112:1-4)
[2] (Al-Ma'â'idab 5:73)
3. Taubid Al-Asma' uas-Sifa'at (Names and Attributes)

Under this category, we affirm for Allāh all that He affirmed about Himself and all that His Messenger Muhammad ﷺ affirmed about Him — all of His Beautiful Names, and all of the Attributes that those Names indicate, without resembling them to the attributes of creatures, without comparisons, without distortions and without denying those attributes. Allāh Almighty has Names and Attributes that indicate His Perfection and Greatness, and no one is similar to Him in those Names and Attributes.

Allāh's Names and Attributes are mentioned in the Qur'ān and in the authentic Sunnah of the Prophet ﷺ, and we must believe that they are real, for Allāh said:

"ليس كِنَّا كَأَيُّوبُ وَهُوَ أَسْمَيعُ الخَيْرِ" (ṣūrat al-Ḥijr 15:85)

There is nothing like Him, and He is the All-Hearer, the All-Seeer.\[1]\n
Examples Of Allāh's Names And Attributes

1) Some Of His Names: Ar-Rahman, Ar-Rahim, Al-Qahir, Al-Qadir, Ass-Samī', Al-Basir, Al-Qudus.

2) Some Of His Attributes: Highness, Hearing, Seeing, Ability, that He has a Face and Hand, and that He descends (during the last-third of every night).

After explaining the different categories of Taubid, we can now explain the objective of sending the Messengers and the wisdom of their Messages.

The Messengers

Allāh sent the Messengers to the people to call them to His religion, to worship Him alone — without associating partners with Him, and to avoid the worship of others. The first Messenger was Nūh and the last one was Muhammad ﷺ.

The Wisdom Behind Sending The Messengers

Allāh sent them as a proof upon mankind, to convey the message of the religion to the people, to give glad tidings of Paradise and of a

\[1\] (Ṣūrat al-Ṣūra 42:11)
great reward to the obedient one, and to warn the disobedient one of a severe punishment and the Hellfire. Allāh Almighty says:

significant innovations in guidance for the people. It is for the people to (follow) as the guidance of their Lord.

The Messengers as bearers of good news as well as of warning in order that mankind should have no plea against Allāh after the Messengers.\(^\text{[1]}\)

There are three different kinds of Shirk:

1) The Greater Shirk
2) The Lesser Shirk
3) The Hidden Shirk

The Greater Shirk:
For the one who dies upon it, the Greater Shirk results in the nullification of deeds and eternity in the Hellfire. Allāh Almighty says:

But if they had joined in worship others with Allāh, all that they used to do would have been of no benefit to them.\(^\text{[2]}\)

And Allāh Almighty says:

It is not for the polytheists to maintain the Majids of Allāh while they witness against their own selves of disbelief. The works of such are in vain and in Fire shall they abide.\(^\text{[3]}\)

Whoever dies upon the Greater Shirk will not be forgiven, and Paradise will be forbidden for him, as Allāh Almighty

---

\(^\text{[1]}\) \text{(Arb-Nīser 4:165)}

\(^\text{[2]}\) \text{(Al-An'am 6:88)}

\(^\text{[3]}\) \text{(Al-Taubah 9:17)}
Verily, Allâh forgives not that partners should be set up with him in worship, but He forgives except that (anything else) to whom He pleases, \[1\]

And Allâh Almighty says:

> «إِنْ أَنتُمْ مِنْ بَعْدِنَا لَيْـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَ~ُّكَانَ مَعَنَا مِنْ هَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَـَ~ُّنَّ أَمْـَّكَ»

Verily, whosoever sets up partners in worship with Allâh, then Allâh has forbidden Paradise for him, and the Fire will be his abode. And for the wrongdoers there are no helpers, \[2]\n
Here are some of the forms of the Greater Shirk:

i) Supplicating to the dead
ii) Praying or supplicating to idols
iii) Seeking help from idols or the dead
iv) Making an oath by an idol or a dead person
v) Slaughter an animal for an idol or a dead person

The Lesser Shirk:

It is that which is called Shirk in either the Qur’ân or the Sunnah, but which is not from the category of the Greater Shirk. For example doing certain deeds for show off, swearing by other than Allâh, saying, ‘Whatever Allâh wills and whatever so and so wills,’ and so on. The Prophet \(\text{SAW}\) said:

> «أَخَافُ مَا أَخَافُ عَلَيْكُمْ السُّرْكُ الأَصْمَرُ»

What I fear most for you is the Lesser Shirk. When asked what it was, he \(\text{SAW}\) said:

> «الْوَرَنَاءِ»

\[1\] (Ar-Nisa 4:48)
\[2\] (Al-Ma’idah 5:72)
Rıya' (showing off).

It was recorded by Imam Ahmad, At-Tabarani, and Al-Bayhaqi from Mahmud bin Lubayd Al-Ansari, may Allah be pleased with him, with a good chain of narration. It was also recorded by At-Tabarani with a good chain, from Mahmud bin Lubayd from Rabi‘ bin Khadij from the Prophet ﷺ.

The Prophet ﷺ said:

«سْتَذَََّ أَمَرَنَا إِلَّا أَلْقَاوْنَ أَمْرًا وَمُرَّأَنَا بِهِ فَأَمَرْنَا وَأَجْهَلْنَا إِلَّا أَنْ تُقْنَى أَمْرًا وَأَمَرْنَا وَأَجْهَلْنَا»

Whoever swears by anything other than Allah has committed Shirk.

It was recorded by Imam Ahmad with an authentic chain, from ‘Umar bin Al-Khattab, may Allah be pleased with him.

Abu Dawud and At-Tirmithi recorded an authentic chain from a narration of Ibn ‘Umar, may Allah be pleased with them, from the Prophet ﷺ that he said:

«فِى حَالِبِهِ تَغْيِيرُ اللَّهُ وَالْحَقُّ بَيْنَ الْإِلَهَيْنِ»

Whoever swears by other than Allah has indeed disbelieved or committed Shirk.

And the Prophet ﷺ said:

لا تقولوا: ماضآة الله وشاط فلان، وكفى قولوا: ماضآة الله ثم شاء فلان

Do not say, “What Allah wills and what so and so wills.” Rather, say, “What Allah wills, and then what so and so wills.”

It was recorded by Abu Dawud with an authentic chain of narration from Hudhaifah bin Al-Yaman, may Allah be pleased with him.

Though this category does not mean that one has left the religion, or that one will spend eternity in the Hellfire, it does mean that one is lacking in the obligatory complete level of Tawhid.
The Hidden Shirk:

This third category is indicated by the following saying of the Prophet ﷺ:

"أَا أَخَافُكُم مَا هُوْ أَخَافُ عَلَيْكُمُ عَلَيْكُم بِمِنَ المَسْحُ الْمَجَال؟"

"Shall I not inform you of what I fear more for you than the Masih Ad-Dajja‘i?"

His Companions said, “Yes, O Messenger of Allâh.” He ﷺ said:

«الَّذِي يُقُومُ الْرَجُلُ فِي ضُرْبِينِ صَلَاةٍ لِيَأْتِي مِنْ نِظَّارِ الرَّجُلِ إِلَيْهِ»

“Hidden Shirk: a man stands to pray and adorns his prayer because he sees another man watching him.”

It was recorded by Imam Ahmad in his Musnad from Abu Sa‘îd Al-Khudri, may Allâh be pleased with him.

It is also possible to divide Shirk into two categories only, the Greater, and the Lesser.

As for Hidden Shirk, it is general in both, because it sometimes occurs in the Greater Shirk, such as the Shirk of the hypocrites — they hide their false beliefs, showing belief in Islam. This is because they want to show off to others and they are afraid for themselves.

Hidden Shirk also occurs in the Lesser Shirk, for instance in Rî‘a’ (doing deeds for show-off). Examples of when this happens can be found in the two above-mentioned Abadîth, one related by Muhammad bin Lubayd Al-Ansârî, may Allâh be pleased with him, and the other by Abu Sa‘îd, may Allâh be pleased with him. And success is from Allâh.


**Shirk And Its Kinds**

1. The first kind of *Shirk* the Shaikh mentioned is the Greater *Shirk*, which means either to worship other than Allah, or to make partners with Allah in something that is specifically His. For example, to take someone as His partner in worship, obedience, love, fear, supplication, and seeking help.

When one associates partners with Allah — regardless of who that partner is, such as a man, animal, plant, or inanimate object — one has perpetrated the Greater *Shirk*, examples of which are as follows:

- To supplicate to that partner as one supplicates to Allah.
- To love that partner as one loves Allah.
- To hope from that partner as one hopes from Allah.
- To submit oneself in obedience to that partner as one submits in obedience to Allah.
- To fear that partner as one fears Allah.
- To seek someone's judgement instead of the judgement of Allah's *Shari'ah*.

Allah Almighty says:

> وَأَعْبَدْنَا اِلَّهَ وَلَا تَشَرَّكُوا بِهِ شَيْئًا (2)

Worship Allah and join none with Him in worship.[1]

Of course, the Greater *Shirk* is the worst and most severe kind of *Shirk*; indeed, it is the greatest sin with Allah, for Allah does not accept any deed from its perpetrator, regardless of how pious he may be otherwise. If one dies, associating partners with Allah, Allah will not forgive him, for He says:

> أنَّ اللَّهَ لا يَغْفِرُ أَنْ يُشَرَّكَ بِهِ وَلَيْسَ رَبُّ هَٰذِهِ الْأُمَّةِ مَّنْ كَانَ مِنْ مَّسَأَلَةٍ إِلَّا الشَّهِيدُ الَّذِي كَانَ مُتَّقِيًّا فَيَقُلُّ (89)

Verily, Allah forgives not that partners should be set up with Him in worship, but He forgives except that (anything else) to whom He pleases, and whoever sets up partners with Allah in worship, he has indeed invented a tremendous sin.[2]

---

[1] (*An-Nisa' 4:36*)

Whoever dies upon this form of Shirk is from the dwellers of the Hellfire, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

«إِمَّامُ مَتِّ وَهُوَ يَدْعُو مِنْ ذُرُّوتِ اللَّهِ بِنَايَةٌ دَخَلَ النَّارِ»

Whoever dies and he is calling upon other than Allâh as a rival then he enters the Hellfire. (Recorded by Al-Bukhâri and Muslim from Ibn Mas'ûd)

In another Hadîth, the Prophet ﷺ said,

«فَمَعَ أَنَّ اللَّهَ لَا يَشَرِكُنَّهُ وَسَيْتُ مَا كَانَ مَعَهُ كَانَ مَعَهُ عَلَيْهِ السُّلَيْمَانُ ﷺ»

Whoever meets Allâh without associating any partner with Him enters Paradise. Whoever meets Him, associating any partner with Him enters the Hellfire. (Recorded by Muslim, from Jabir.)

The Muslim, therefore, worships and invokes only Allâh, and submits only to Him, for Allâh Almighty says:

«قُلُ إنِّي سَلَّمُ وَمُكَّثِرُ وَمُسَلِّمُ فَأَطْلُبُ رَبَّ الْكُلِّيْمَاتِ ﷺ لا شَرِيكَ لَهُ وَمُدِينُ»

Say: “Verily, my Salat (prayer), my sacrifice, my living, and my dying are for Allâh, the Lord of all that exists. He has no partner. And of this I have been commanded, and I am the first of the Muslims.”[1]

2. The second kind is the Lesser Shirk. It consists of various categories:

1) A little Rij'â (doing good deeds for show-off); for example, when one prays, fasts, or gives charity, he is seeking other than Allâh’s Face; hence, he is mixing good deeds with bad ones. The Prophet ﷺ said:

«أَخْفِفْ مَا أَخَافُ عَلَيْكُمْ الْسُّلَاكُ الْأَضِحَاءُ»

What I fear most for you is the lesser Shirk.

When asked about it, he ﷺ said,

[1] (Al-An’âm 6:162,163)
Lesson Four

«الرياء»

Ri'ya'. (Recorded by Ahmad from Shaddad bin Aws.)

When one performs any good deed or act of worship to impress or please people, then he has committed Ri'ya'; which is forbidden. In another Hadith related by Shaddad bin Aws, the Prophet ﷺ said:

"إِمَّنْ صَلَّى يَزَائِيَ فَقَدَ أَشْرَكَ، وَإِمَّنْ صَامَ يَزَائِيَ فَقَدَ أَشْرَكَ، وَإِمَّنْ تَصَلَّى يَزَائِيَ فَقَدَ أَشْرَكَ"

Whoever prays, showing off to others, he has indeed committed Shirk. Whoever fasts, showing off to others, he has indeed committed Shirk. Whoever gives charity, showing off to others, he has indeed committed Shirk.

2) Another form of the Lesser Shirk is to swear by anyone other than Allâh, for instance, to swear by the Prophet ﷺ, by the Ka'bah, or by one's parents. In the Two Sahihs it is recorded that Ibn 'Umar narrated from the Prophet ﷺ:

«إِنَّ اللَّهِ يَتَبَأَدُمُ أَنْ تُبَيِّنُوا رَبَّكُمُ، مَنْ كَانَ حَالَتُهُ فَأَنْبَأْتُ يَالَّهُ أَوْ يَنْصَرْتُ"»

Indeed, Allâh has forbidden you from swearing by your fathers; whoever makes an oath, let him swear by Allâh or remain silent.

3) Another form of the Lesser Shirk is for one to say the following expressions:

- "What Allâh wills and what you will."
- "This is from Allâh and from you."
- "I am what I am because of Allâh and because of you."
- "I have no one except Allâh and you."
- "I place my trust upon Allâh and upon you."
- "Were it not for Allâh and you, such and such would (or wouldn't) have happened."

Based on one's intention when saying these phrases, such statements may even become a form of the Greater Shirk.
Protecting The Belief In Tauhid

The Prophet ﷺ strove hard to keep the belief in Tauhid clean and pure in the hearts of Muslims, making every effort to allow no doubt or Shirk to enter those hearts. He ﷺ taught his Companions to turn with their hearts to Allâh only, to seek help in Him alone, and to put their trust in Him alone. As soon as the Prophet ﷺ saw anything that might weaken the relationship between the Muslims and their Lord, that might damage the belief of Tauhid in their hearts, he ﷺ raced to warn the Muslims of the effect of that matter on their faith. Some examples of such matters are as follows:

1) Magic

Incantations, spells, or charms that are used to have an effect on hearts and bodies, intended to make them sick, to make people kill one another, to divide between a man and his wife, and so on. Magic is a matter that depends on secrecy and concealment. Magicians use the above-mentioned techniques to inflict harm on people, and in the plainest of terms, Islam forbade magic when the Prophet ﷺ said:

«اجتنبوا السبع الخوارقات»

“Stay away from the seven grave (and deadly) sins.”

The Companions asked, “And what are they, O Messenger of Allâh?” He ﷺ said:

الشرك بالله والسحر وتكيل النص الاني حوّم الله إلا بالحقّ. وأكل الرّبا.

وأكل مال اليجيم. والنفيوي يوم الرّحب. وئف المخاضات العفايلات

“Associating partners with Allâh, magic, killing a soul that Allâh has forbidden unless it is by a right, consuming usury, consuming the wealth of an orphan, fleeing on the day of battle, and accusing chaste, innocent women.”

Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim from Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with him.

In Islam, the magician’s punishment is execution — by being struck on his neck with a sword. The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said:

«حذّ الساحر بضربة بالسّيف»
Lesson Four

The punishment of the magician is striking him with the sword.

The one who is deceived by magicians, believing in them, going to them, and seeking a cure from an ailment or help in any matter that involves the unseen, has indeed disbelieved in what was revealed to Muhammad ﷺ.

The proof for that: The Prophet ﷺ said:

«إِنَّمَا مِنْ الْعَصِيرِ ۖ أَوْ نَفَّذَ الْهَيَابِ ۖ أَوْ نَكْتَبَ لَهُ ۖ أَوْ نَكْتَبَهُ لَهُ ۖ أَوْ سَحَرَ أَوْ سَحَرَّهُ»

These are not from us: one who interprets an omen or has one interpreted for him, one who predicts the future or has someone predict it for him, and one who performs magic or it has been performed for him.

It was mentioned by Shaykh Muhammad bin ‘Abdul-Wahhab in Kitab Al-Tauhid and he attributed it to Al-Bazzar with a good chain.

And Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with him, related that the Prophet ﷺ said:

«وَهُوَ يَوْمَ أَتَاهُ هَيَابًا ۖ فَقَضَلَ ۖ فَقَمَ ۖ فَقَمَ فَمَا أَنْزَى عَلَى مَحَمَّدَ»

Whoever goes to a soothsayer and believes in what he says, has indeed disbelieved in what has been revealed to Muhammad.

It was recorded by Abu Dawud, and the remainder of the four Sunan compilers.

2) Ruqya (Incantations)

These are known as incantations and spells that one recites. From this category, Islam forbade that which involves Shirk, such as invoking anyone other than Allâh, seeking help from anyone other than Allâh, or seeking protection from anyone other than Allâh. Examples of such spells are those that use the names of angels, of devils, of jinns, and so on.

However, if, for the same purpose, one recites verses of the Qur’ân, says Allâh’s Names or Attributes, or supplicates to Allâh alone, then that is permissible because it doesn’t involve Shirk.

Mu‘aww bin Malik said that they used to recite incantations during the days of ignorance and so he asked, “O Messenger of Allâh, how do
you view that?” The Prophet ﷺ answered:

«اغرضاً علني رقاتكم لا بأس بالرقت مالكم يكن في بكم»

“Present your Rūqāya to me; there is no harm in using Rūqāya as long as there is no Shirk involved.” (Muslim and Abu Dawud)

The Rūqāya Of The Prophet ﷺ:
The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ would use Rūqāya; one form that is related to us from him is the following:

اللهم رب الناس أذهب البأس، وأشفى آدم الساقيف لا شفاء إلا بشفاعتك

O Allāh, Lord of mankind, take away the severe sickness and cure. You are the Curer; there is no cure except Your cure, a cure that leaves behind no sickness. (Recorded by Muslim)

3) At-Tamā'im

The plural of Tamīmah (a talisman). This is something that one hangs on the neck of children; it consists of beads or other materials. They claimed that it would protect them from evil and jealousy.

The Prophet ﷺ forbade the use of such things, because no one drives away evil and envy except Allāh. The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said:

المن علق كمجمة فلا أتيم الله له، ومن علق ودعة فلا أودع الله له

Whoever wears a Tamīmah, then may Allāh not complete for him his affair; and whoever wears a shell (a good-luck charm) may Allāh not protect him.

According to the correct view, it is not only forbidden to hang a Tamīmah around one’s neck, but it is also forbidden to hang a small copy of the Qur’ān around one’s neck. First because of the general prohibition, and second because we must block the door to further evils. This opinion is held by Ibn Mas’ud, Ibn ‘Abbas, some of the Tabi‘īn, and the noble Shaikh, ‘Abdullāh bin Baz.

To hang other things around one’s neck, seeking some sort of benefit is an act of Shirk. It has been reported that the Prophet ﷺ said:
Lesson Four

Whoever wears a *Tanimab* has indeed committed *Shirk*.

4) *At-Tiwalah*:

It is an item that a woman makes, thinking that it has power to make her more beloved to her husband. The Prophet ﷺ forbade this practice because it is one in which one seeks benefit or seeks to ward off harm from other than Allāh. This is why it has been related in a *Hadīth*:

> إنَّ الرَّقَبَةَ وَالرَّمْلَةَ وَالتَّوْأَمَةَ شَرِكٌ

Indeed, *Ar-Ruq'a*, *At-Tama'am*, and *At-Tiwalah* are *Shirk*.

(Recorded by Abu Dawud and Ibn Majah from Ibn 'Abbas)

Whoever Depends On Something, Then He is Entrusted to It

Whoever believes that some of the forbidden matters mentioned above have a special effect on things, such as the ability to cure the sick, to fulfill needs, to ward off evil, to bring back the lost, or so on, then Allāh forsakes that person, leaving him to what he believes. The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said:

> الْحُزْنِ عِلْمًا وَكَلَّمَ إِلَيْهِ

Whoever hangs something (a charm), he is entrusted to it.

This means whoever turns to other than Allāh and attaches his heart to that thing, forsaking His Lord, then Allāh entrusts him to it.

But whoever relies upon Allāh from his heart, entrusts his affairs with Him, and relies upon Him, then Allāh suffices him, protecting him from all evil, granting him ease in every difficult matter, and saving him from every trial. Allāh Almighty says:

> وَمَنْ يَثْوِّبُ عَلَى اللَّهِ فَهُوَ حَسْبَهُ

And whosoever puts his trust in Allāh, then He will suffice him.[1]

[1] (*Al-Talaq* 65:3)
Exaggerating In Honoring People

Islam forbids us from exceeding the proper bounds when it comes to praising people or glorifying them. Muslims know that no matter how high the level of a person is, he is still a slave of Allâh. Allâh Almighty says:

إِنَّكَ لَا تَمَلُّ نَفْسَكَ مِنْ فِي السَّمَاءِ وَالأَرْضِ إِلَّا مَعِيَ الْمَجِيدِ عِبَادِيَّ(45)

There is none in the heavens and the earth but comes to the Most Beneficent as a slave.[1]

Islam forbade us from exceeding the proper bounds in this matter so that Taubah may remain pure and clean, and so that deeds may be performed purely for Allâh. Exaggerating the good qualities of people most definitely leads to associating partners with Allâh.

In this regard, we have the example of the Christians, who continued to exaggerate the qualities of ‘Isa, peace be upon him, until they made him a god on one occasion, and the son of a god on another, and a part of a god on yet another occasion—all of which is disbelief itself. Allâh Almighty says:

أَلَمْ تَرَ أَشْهَرُ الْقُلُوبُ قَالُوا إِنَّهُ أَخَى اللهِ هَوَّا السُّيُبُعُ أَحْلَمُ آبَاهُ(46)

Surely, they have disbelieved who say: “Allâh is the Messiah, son of Maryam.”[2]

أَلَمْ تَرَ أَشْهَرُ الْقُلُوبُ قَالُوا إِنَّهُ أَخَى اللهِ هَوَّا السُّيُبُعُ آبَاهُ(47)

Surely, disbelievers are those who said: “Allâh is the third of the three.”[3]

They only deviated so far away from the correct path because they exceeded the proper bounds regarding ‘Isa, peace be upon him. Allâh clarified that fact and explained the way of the truth to them, saying:

أَيُّهَا النَّاسُ أَلَا تُمَسِّوا فِي دِينِي مَكَانًا وَأَلَا تُسَيَّبُوا عَلَى اللهِ إِلَّا اللَّهَ أَلَا تُسَيَّبُوا(48)

O People of the Scripture (Jews and Christians)! Do not

---

[1] (Maryam 19:95)
[2] (Al-Ma‘idah 5:72)
[3] (Al-Ma‘idah 5:73)
Lesson Four

exceed the limits in your religion, nor say about Allâh but the truth.\footnote{(Ar-Nisâ’ 4:171)}

So the Muslims would be saved from what other nations have fallen into, the Prophet ﷺ said:

«لا تزوّوني كَمَا أَطْرُقَ الْكُتَّارِى ابْنَ مَرْيَمَ إِنَّمَا أَنَا عَبَدُ. فَتُولِّواٍ: عَبْدَانَا وَرَسُولُهُ»

Do not praise me as the Christians praised the son of Maryam; indeed, I am only a slave, so say, “the slave of Allâh and His Messenger.” (Recorded by Al-Bukhari in the Book of the Prophets)

Exaggerating Over the Righteous People

Is The Basis of Idol Worship

It has been related that the names of the idols that were worshipped are the names of righteous people: they had followers who would glorify them, and when they died, those followers said, “Let us erect statues where they used to gather so that we may continue to remember them.” When that generation died and when much time passed, future generations came, not knowing the purpose of the statues; the Shaitan seduced them into believing that their fathers and grandfathers used to worship the statues, and so they began to do the same.
Lesson Five

*Ihsan*

The pillar of *Ihsan* is to worship Allah as if you see Him, although you don't see Him, He certainly sees you.

Know — may Allah have mercy on you — that Allah knows everything about every creature; He knows their circumstances and their deeds; He misses nothing, and nothing is hidden from Him, not even the smallest ant — nothing smaller than that nor greater. Allah Almighty says:

وما تكون في نَّارٍ وما تتولى منه من ذرَّةٍ ولا تُعْمَلُونَ من عملٍ إلاَّ سَمِيَّةٌ نَّبِئَرٌ

Whatsoever you may be doing, and whatever portion you may be reciting from the Qur'an, — and whatever deed you (mankind) may be doing (good or evil), We are Witness thereof, when you are doing it. And nothing is hidden from your Lord (so much as) the weight of an atom (or small ant) on the earth or in the heaven. Not what is less than that or what is greater than that but is (written) in a Clear Record.\(^1\)

Other than affirming Allah's complete Knowledge, Ability, and Care regarding His creatures, this verse teaches Allah's worshippers to always feel that He is aware of their actions or lack of action, their sayings and deeds, and all that circulates in their hearts.

واِسْتَرِخُواْ قُلُوبَكُم أوْ أَعْمَلُواْ بِعِظَمَةِ ذِي الْفَاتِرِ

And whether you keep your talk secret or disclose it, verify, He is the All-Knower of what is in the breasts (of men).\(^2\)

The feeling that Allah knows all, should become more acute when a

\(^1\) (Yeuns 10:61)

\(^2\) (Al-Mulk 67:13)
Lesson Five

Muslim performs an act of worship, a time when he is standing before his Lord, when he grasps that Allāh sees him and when it is as if he sees Allāh: this is the highest level of religion, which the Messenger ﷺ clarified when he explained Islam, Iman, and Ihsan. He ﷺ said:

«الإحسانُ أن تَعْبَدِ الله كَأَنَّكَ تَرَاهُ فَإِنَّمَا تَرَاهُ الَّذِي نَكُونُنَّ لَهُ بِلَٰتٍ»

Ihsan is to worship Allāh as if you see Him, and though you do not see Him, He indeed sees you.

The Definition Of Ihsan

In the Arabic language, Ihsan is the opposite of a wrong or an offence. A person who does good deeds is called a Mulsin or, according to the famous grammarian Sibawayh, Mubsan. Deeds that are good are called Mahasiln, just as deeds that are bad are called Masayna. When you say that one has Hasana something, you mean that he has adorned it. Ihsan means proficiency in action, and sincerity, and truthfulness.

As used in the Sharī'ah, Ihsan changes in meaning according to the context it is used in. When mentioned along with Islam and Iman, it means good obedience and watching what one does. Al-Manawi said, “Ihsan is outward Islam, which is held up by inward Iman, which is perfected by the observing Ihsan.”

Ihsan means to perform deeds, knowing that Allāh is aware of one’s deeds, and it also means to be obedient to Him. When one performs deeds, knowing that Allāh is watching him, one will perform good deeds in a better way. In Ihsan, then, is the essence and spirit of Iman.

The Reality Of Ihsan

When Jibril, peace be upon him, asked the Prophet ﷺ about Ihsan, he explained:

«هُوَ الَّذِي يَسْتَأْتِي اللَّهُ كَأَنَّهُ يَرَاهُ، فَإِنَّمَا تَرَاهُ الَّذِي نَكُونُنَّ لَهُ بِلَٰتٍ»

It is to worship Allāh as if you see Him, and though you do not see Him, He indeed sees you.

This means that a person will perform deeds in a good way when he is cognizant of the fact that Allāh sees him, and that is the
interpretation of this verse:

«إِنَّ اللَّهَ يُحِبُّ الْمُحْسِنِينَ»

Verily, Allâh enjoins Al-Adl (justice) and Al-Ihsan.[1] That is why Allâh magnified the rewards of the people of Ihsan, for He said:

«إِنَّ اللَّهَ يُحِبُّ الْمُحْسِنِينَ»

Truly, Allâh loves Al-Muhsinun (the good-doers).[2] And He Almighty says:

«قَالَ اللَّهُ ﷺ ﺔَنْ تَعْبَدُواَ اللَّهَ كَأَنَّكُمْ نَرَايُوهُمْ»

Is there any reward for good other than good?[3] Meaning, what reward is there in the Hereafter for those who do good in this world other than good being done to them.

Ihsan is one of the best levels of worship, because it is not only the essence and spirit of faith, but it is also its completion; all other levels of Iman are included in it. Ihsan in this sense, then, signifies a complete level of attentiveness before Allâh, making one fear Allâh and perform deeds sincerely and purely for Him alone.

The Levels Of Ihsan

Ihsan comes at many different levels, the highest of which is one feeling that he is in the presence of Allâh Almighty as the Prophet ﷺ explained in the Hadith. The level beneath that is seeking closeness to Allâh by performing voluntary deeds; then other acts of Ihsan follow after that, regardless of whether those are represented by intention, objective, or action.

To worship Allâh as if you see Him

The Prophet’s explanation here indicates that the worshipper should worship Allâh in this manner — feeling His closeness, that He is before Him, and feeling as if he sees Him. What follows

[1] (Ar-Rahman 55:60)
[2] (Ar-Rahman 55:60)
[3] (Ar-Rahman 55:60)
necessarily are reverence, fear, awe, and glorification. The wording in the narration of Abu Hurairah, may Allah be pleased with him, is,

أَن يَحْسِبُوا اللّهَ كَأَنَّهُ لَمْ يَرَ تَرَاهُ

To fear Allah as if You see Him.

What also necessarily follows is sincerity in worship, which makes one strive to improve his worship of Allah, making it more complete. Ibn 'Umar, may Allah be pleased with them, said, “When we would make Taqwâ, we would imagine that Allah was before our eyes.” (Recorded by Abu Nu‘aym in Hilyatul-Auliya’ 1:309)

إِنَّ أَمْ بُنِيَّ نَزَّلَتْ لَنْ تُرَاهُ إِلَّا فِي نَظَارَةٍ بَرَاكَانَ

And though you do not see Him, He indeed sees you.

This encourages the worshipper to feel Allah’s closeness to him when he is worshipping Him — so that he reaches such a level that it is as if he sees Him. If that is difficult, the worshipper seeks help through his faith that Allah is watching him and is aware of not only his outer deeds, but also of his innermost secrets. The worshipper knows that none of his deeds are hidden from Allah. When this level is achieved, it is easy for one to move on to the next level, and that is to always act as if he sees Allah and according to the knowledge that Allah is near and close to him. Know that Ihsan is made up of two ranks:

1) The rank of sincerity, and that is for one to worship Allah, cognizant of the fact that Allah sees him and is near to him. When one applies this, he becomes sincere to Allah. Remembering that Allah is near him and knows his deeds when he is actually performing an act of worship prevents one from doing that act for anyone other than Allah.

2) The rank of the Musahhid (observer), and that means for the worshipper to act in conformity to the feeling in his heart that Allah sees him. This is for the heart to be illuminated with Iman and for one to penetrate the depths of knowledge, until the unseen to him becomes like the seen. And this is the reality of the Ihsan explained in the Hadith of Jibril, peace be upon him.11

11 This was taken from Jam‘ Al-Ulum wal-Hikam [by Ibn Rajab] 1:75-76, with some editing.
Lesson Six

The Conditions For Prayer

There are nine conditions or requisites for prayer: Islam, sanity, (the age of) discernment, the removal of Ḥadāth, removal of any impurity, the covering of one’s Awwāb (any area of that body the must be covered), the entrance of its time, facing the Qiblah, and intention.

In Arabic, the conditions are called Shurūt, the plural of Shart, which linguistically means a sign. However, in the Shartāb, it has another meaning: When it is nonexistent it necessitates nonexistence, but when it is existent, it does not necessitate existence. Put more simply, if there is no purity, then there is no prayer, but if one is pure, it is not necessarily the case that he has to pray (at that specific moment). And by the conditions of prayer, we are referring to those conditions upon which the correctness of one’s prayer depends.

The Nine Conditions For Prayer:

1) Islam, the opposite of which is disbelief (Kafr). The disbeliever’s actions are rejected, no matter what deed it is he performs, for Allāh Almighty says:

ما كان قوما مشركين أن يعمموا من جميع أفعالهم على فأسيمكلت قالو أتذاكوا

It is not for the polytheists to maintain the Masjids of Allāh, while they witness against their own selves of disbelief. The works of such are in vain and in Fire shall they abide.\[1\]

And in another verse, Allāh Almighty says:

قَدْ أَخْلَصْنَا إِلَى مَا عَمِلُوا مِنْ عَمَلٍ فَخَلِصَتْهُ أَيْضًا قَدْ نَفَقَتْ

And We shall turn to whatever deeds they (disbelievers) did, and We shall make such deeds as scattered floating particles

\[1\] (Al-Tauhīd 9:17)
Lesson Six

of dust.[1]

The only prayer that is accepted is the Muslim’s prayer, a reality that is proven by this verse:

وَمَن يَبْتَغِ عَبْرَ الْإِسْلَامِ دَيْنًا فَلَا فَنَاسَ إِلَّا مَا هُوَ فِي الأَجْهَرِ مِنَ الْعَجْزِينَ

And whoever seeks a religion other than Islam, it will never be accepted of him, and in the Hereafter he will be one of the losers.[2]

2) Sanity, the opposite of which is obviously insanity or madness. The Pen is raised for the insane person, which means that he is not held accountable for his deeds until he returns to his senses. The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said:

الرَّنْعَ الْقَلَمِ عَنْ نَلَأَةٍ: النَّامِيَ حَتَّى يَسْتَبْطَعْ، وَالْمَجُونُ حَتَّى يَبْلُغَ

The Pen has been raised from three: the one who is sleeping, until he awakens; the insane person, until he returns to his senses; and the child, until he reaches puberty.

Recorded by Ahmad in his Musnad, and Abu Dawud, An-Nasa’i and Ibn Majah.

3) The age of discernment, the opposite of which is early childhood years. The age of discernment is realized at the age of seven, the time when a child must be ordered to pray, for the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said:

عُوْدَ أُبْنَاهُ بِالْصَّلَاةِ لِيَسْتَعِنَّ، وَبَيْنَاهُمْ عَلَيْهِمْ لِيُعْتَرَّ، وَفَرْقُوا بَيْنَهُمْ فِي الْعَقْصَاجِ

Order your sons to pray when they turn seven, and hit them (if they refuse) when they turn ten, and at that time, make them sleep in separate beds.

Recorded by Al-Hakim, Imam Ahmad, and Abu Dawud, and in one version it is:

Order your children...

4) The removal of Hadath, and there are two kinds of Hadath:
   (i) the greater one, (ii) the lesser one. The former includes
   menstruation and sexual intercourse; one purifies himself from
   these forms of Hadath by performing Ghusl. An example of
   the latter is the passing of wind, and this form of Hadath is removed
   by ablation; the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said:

   «لا يقبل الله صلاة يغبر طهور»

   Allâh does not accept prayer without purification. (Recorded
   by Muslim and others)

   He ﷺ also said:

   «لا يقبل الله صلاة من أخذت حمى نوضًا»

   Allâh does not accept the prayer of one in a state of Hadath
   until he performs ablution. (Agreed upon)

5) The removal of impurities from three: from one’s body, from
   one’s clothing, and from the place one prays in.

   «وإذاء الظفر»

   And your garments purify!\(^1\)

   The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said:

   «نفرحو من البول فإن غمامة عذاب القيامة وله»

   Purify yourselves from urine because verily, it is the most
   common reason for punishment in the grave.

6) The covering of one’s ‘Aurâb (any area of the body that must be
   covered) with clothing that doesn’t reveal one’s shape, skin, or
   complexion. The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said:

   «لا يقبل الله صلاة حامضي إلا بحجاب»

   Allâh does not accept the prayer of a woman who has reached
   the age of menstruation unless she wears a veil. (Recorded by
   Abu Dawud)

\(^1\) (Al-Muhaddithân 74:4)
The people of knowledge concur that if one is able to wear clothes, but prays naked instead, then his prayer is invalid. The *Aurab* for man, or the area of his body that must be covered, is the area between his belly button and his knees, and the same goes for the female slave. The *Aurab* of the free woman is her entire body except for her face, and even that must be covered when she is in the presence of strange men.\(^1\) In a *Hadîth* related by Salamah bin Al-Akwa', the Messenger of Allah ﷺ ordered him to cover himself, even if he had only one garment to accomplish that. And Allah Almighty says:

وَاللَّهُ يَجْعَلُ حَضُورَكُمْ عِندَهُ مَسْجِرًا

O children of Adam! Take your adornment to every Majiid.\(^2\)

That means, for the prayer.

7) The entrance of the prayer’s time. The proof for this condition is taken from the *Hadîth* of Jibril, peace be upon him, wherein he led the Prophet ﷺ in each prayer, once at the beginning of the time for each prayer, and then at the end of its time. He said, “O Muhammad, the prayer is between these two times.” Allah Almighty says:

وَأَنَّ الصَّلَاةَ كَانَتْ عَلَى الْمُتَّقِينَ كَنِمَّى مَوْعِظَةً

Verily, the prayer is enjoined on the believers at fixed hours.\(^3\)

وَأَقِمِ الصَّلَاةَ بِذَوَّالَاتِ السَّمَاءِ إِلَى عَشِيٍّ الْيَتِّيْحِ وَقَوْمِ الْفِجْرِ وَقُرْءَانِ الفَجْرِ كَانَتُ صَلَاةً

Perform *As-Salat* from midday till the darkness of the night, and recite the Qur'an in the early dawn. Verily, the recitation of the Qur'an in the early dawn is ever witnessed (attended by the angels in charge of mankind of the day and the

\(^1\) A strange man is any man that is not her *Mubram*; a *Mubram* to her is a man whom she may never marry and who is allowed to be in seclusion with her.

\(^2\) ([Al-'A'raf](7:31))

\(^3\) ([An-Nisa'] (4:103))]
night).\[1\]

8) Facing the Qiblah:

«قد رأي نقلت وجهك في السماء فقلت لكما وطينت جبالا رصدتها فؤد ووجهك نظرت
المستجد الحراق ووثبتما كسر قلوبنا ووجهكم نظرت»

Verily! We have seen the turning of your face towards the heaven. Surely, We shall turn you to a Qiblah (prayer direction) that shall please you, so turn your face in the direction of Al-Masjid Al-Haram (in Makkah). And wherever you people are, turn your faces (in prayer) in that direction.\[2\]

9) Intention: it resides in the heart and its utterance is an innovation. The Prophet ﷺ said:

«إِنَّمَا الأَنْبِعَال بِالْقَلْبِ، وَإِنَّمَا يُقُلُّ الْمُرْمُونَ مَا يُرْمُونَ»

Indeed, deeds are by intentions, and for every person is what he intended.

\[1\] (Al-Isra' 17:78)
\[2\] (Al-Beqara: 2:144)
Lesson Seven

The Pillars (Arkân) of Prayer

There are fourteen pillars of prayer: standing, if able; the opening Takbir; recitation of Al-Fatihah; bowing; standing up straight after bowing; prostrating, with seven specific body parts touching the ground; rising from the prostration; sitting between the two prostrations; tranquility in all of the prayer’s actions; performing these pillars in order; the final Tashahhud; sitting down for it; sending Salat upon the Prophet ﷺ and the two Taslims.

1) Standing, if able; this is a pillar in the obligatory prayers. That this is a pillar of prayer is taken from this verse:

«خَيَّارًا عَلَى الْمَسْتَوَى وَالْبَكَّارَةَ اِلْوَسَّاعَ وَقَوْمًا يَتَّقُونَ»

Guard strictly Al-Salauat (the prayers) especially the middle Salat (i.e., the best prayer ‘Asr). And stand before Allah with obedience.[1]

«ضَلُّ كَانِيًا»

Pray in a standing position.

2) The opening Takbir, i.e., to begin the prayer by saying, “Allâhu Akbar,” and no other phrase can act as a substitute for this one.

The Prophet ﷺ said:

«تَحْيَيْهَا الْتَّكْبِيرَ وَتَحْيَيْهَا الْطَّلَامِعَ»

Its sacred state is entered with its Takbir and it is ended with its Taslim.

In the famous, long Hadith regarding the one who didn’t pray correctly, the Prophet ﷺ said:

«إِذَا فُسَتَ إِلَى الْصَّلَاةِ الْكَبْرَ»

[1] (Al-Baqarah 2:238)
When you stand for prayer, then say, "Allâhu Akbar."

3) Reciting Al-Fatihah. It must be recited in every unit of prayer. The Prophet ﷺ said:

"لَا صَلَاةٌ لَّمْ يُقُلِْغَا رَبَّكَ الْكَبِيرَ"

There is no prayer for one who does not recite Al-Fatihah of the Book.

4) Bowing.

5) Standing up straight after bowing.

6) Prostrating, with seven specific body parts touching the ground.

7) Rising from the prostration.

8) Sitting between the two prostrations. The proof for these pillars can be found in this verse:

"بِنَاتِيْنِ أَذِينَ أُصِيبُوا أَرْسِلْنِيَ وَسَأْنُشِئُنَّا"

O you who believe! Bow down, and prostrate yourselves.\(^1\)

Another proof is the saying of the Prophet ﷺ:

"أَمَرَتُكُمْ أَنْ أُسْجِدُ عَلَى سُبُرَّ اَغْلَمْ"

I have been ordered to prostrate on seven bones. (Recorded by Al-Bukhâri and Muslim)

9) Tranquility in all of the prayer's actions.

10) Performing all of these pillars in order. The Hadîth about the one who prayed incorrectly can be considered a comprehensive proof for this and for all preceding pillars. Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with him, said, "As we were sitting with the Prophet ﷺ, a man entered and prayed. He then stood and gave greetings of peace to the Prophet ﷺ, who replied:

"أَرْضِعُ فَصُلْنَ أَلَّا يَصُلَّ"

Go back and pray, for indeed you have not prayed.

The man went back, but the same occurred three times, after which the man said, ‘By He Who has sent you as a Prophet with the truth, I can do no better than this, so teach me.’ The Prophet

\(^1\) (Al-Hikîf 22:77)
Lesson Seven

said:

إذا قُمْتَ إلى الصلاة فكُنْ مُهْتَمّاً، فمَّا أفْرَأْتُ مَا نُشُرَّ مَعَكَ مِنَ الْفَزْرَاءِ، فمَّا أرْفَعْتُ حَتَّى تَطَبَّقَ رَأْيَا، فمَّا أرْفَعْ حَتَّى تُنْفِقَ قَمِيْعاً، فمَّا أصَامَدْ حَتَّى تَطَمُّنَ سَاحِنًا، فمَّا أرْفَعْ حَتَّى تَطَمُّنَ جَالِسَا، فمَّا أقْفُلْ ذِكَ فِي صَكَّالِبِ ذَلِكَ.

When you stand for prayer, say: ‘Allâhu Akbar,” then recite what is easy for you from the Qur’an. Then bow down until you become tranquil in your bowing. Then rise until you are standing upright. Next, prostrate until you become tranquil in your prostration. Then rise and sit until you become tranquil in the seated position. And then continue to do that for the rest of your prayer.”

11) The final Taskhabbud; This pillar is taken from the Hadith of Ibn Mas‘ud, may Allâh be pleased with him, who said, “Before the Taskhabbud became obligatory upon us, we used to say: ‘Peace upon Allâh from His worshippers, and peace upon Jibril and Mika’il.’ But then the Prophet ﷺ said:

لا تقولوا: السلام علي الله من عباده، فإن الله هو السلام، ولكن

قولوا: اللهم ورسلك وطبلت.”

Do not say: ‘Peace upon Allâh from His worshippers,’ for indeed Allâh is As-Salam; rather, you should say: ‘At-Tabi‘yyat is for Allâh. All acts of worship and good deeds are for Him.”

We will give the exact wording of the Taskhabbud mentioned in this Hadith, along with its meaning in the next lesson — if Allâh wills.

12) Sitting down for it, i.e., sitting down for the Taskhabbud. The Prophet ﷺ said:

إذا قُمْتَ فكُنْ مُهْتَمّاً، فمَّا أفْرَأْتُ مَا نُشُرَّ مَعَكَ مِنَ الْفَزْرَاءِ، فمَّا أرْفَعْتُ حَتَّى تَطَبَّقَ رَأْيَا، فمَّا أرْفَعْ حَتَّى تُنْفِقَ قَمِيْعاً، فمَّا أصَامَدْ حَتَّى تَطَمُّنَ سَاحِنًا، فمَّا أرْفَعْ حَتَّى تَطَمُّنَ جَالِسَا، فمَّا أقْفُلْ ذِكَ فِي صَكَّالِبِ ذَلِكَ.

When one of you sits for the prayer, then let him say At-Tabi‘yyat. (Agreed upon)

13) Sending Salat (blessings) upon the Prophet ﷺ. In one narration the Prophet ﷺ said:

إذا صلى أهْدِكم — وَفِي هِوَ — فمَّا يُضَلُّ يَكْفُرُ عَلَى النَّبِيِّ
When one of you prays, then in it let him send blessing upon the Prophet.

In another narration:

"اليصل على النبي ثم يدعو"

Then let him send blessings upon the Prophet then supplicate... (Recorded by Ahmad and Abu Dawud)

14) The two Taslms (i.e. to say As-Salamu Alaikum wa Rahma-tullah, turning one’s head to the right, and then saying the same, turning to the left), for the Prophet ﷺ said:

"وتحليلا لله التسليم"

...it is ended with its Taslim.
Lesson Eight

The Obligatory Elements Of Prayer

There are eight obligatory elements in the prayer: All of the Takhbirs, except for the opening Takbir (because it is one of the pillars of prayer); to say: *Sami'Allâhu Lîman Hamidab* (Allâh listens to those who praise Him), both for the Imam and for the one who prays alone; to say: *Rabbana wa a'îlak-Hand* (Our Lord, and for You is all praise), for everyone. During the bowing position, to say: *Subhâna Rabbiyak-Azeem* (How perfect my Lord is, the Supreme); during prostration, to say: *Subhâna Rabbiyak-Ala* (How perfect my Lord is, the Most High). Between the two prostrations, to say: *Rabbigh fir Lee* (My Lord, forgive me); the first *Tasbîhât*; and sitting down for it.

1) All of the Takhbirs, except for the opening Takbir — Ibn Mas'ud said, “I saw that the Prophet ﷺ would say *Allâhu Akbar* whenever he would rise or descend, and whenever he would stand or sit.” (Recorded by Ahmad, Al-Nasa’i, and At-Tirmithi who said it was *Sabih*.) And the Prophet ﷺ used the imperative when he said:

«إِذَا كَبَرَ الْإِسْمَاءَ فَاذْكُرْواٌ»

When the Imam says, “*Allâhu Akbar*,” say (all of you), ‘*Allâhu Akbar*.”

When the imperative is used, it indicates an obligatory.

2) During the bowing position, to say: *Subhâna Rabbiyak-Azeem* (How perfect my Lord is, the Supreme). In a Hadith related by Fuduhah, in which the Prophet’s prayer is described, the Prophet ﷺ would say while bowing:

«شَهِيَّانِ رَبِّيِّ الْعَظِيمِ»

*Subhâna Rabbiyak-Azeem.*

and while he was prostrating:

«شَهِيَّانِ رَبِّيِّ الْعَظِيمِ»
3) To say: *Sami‘-Allâhu ‘Iman Hamidab* (Allâh listens to those who praise Him), both for the Imam and for the one who prays alone. As he was describing the Prophet’s prayer, Abu Hurairah said that when the Prophet ﷺ would raise his backbone from the bowing position, he would say:

«سبح الله ليمن‌ حونه»

*Sami‘- Allâhu ‘Iman Hamidab.* (Agreed upon)

4) To say: *Rabbana u.a Lakal-Hamd* (Our Lord, and for You is all praise), for everyone: for the Imam, for the one following the Imam, and for the one who is praying individually. In the previous *Hadith* related by Abu Hurairah, we learn exactly what the Prophet ﷺ would say as he was rising, which indicates that he would say:

«رَبّنَا وَلَقَيّ الْحَمْدُ»

*Rabbana u.a Lakal-Hamd*

when he reached the standing position.

5) During prostration, to say: *Subhanna Rabbî‘al-‘Ala* (How perfect my Lord is, the Most High). That this is an obligatory element of prayer is also indicated by the previous *Hadith*.

6) Between the two prostrations, to say: *Rabbigh fir Lee* (My Lord, forgive me). That the Prophet ﷺ would say this phrase between the two prostrations is related in a *Hadith* narrated by Huthafah. Recorded by An-Nasa’i and Ibn Majah.¹¹

7) The first *Tasbahbud*.

8) And sitting down for it, i.e., for the first *Tasbahbud*. These last two are based on a *Hadith*, wherein the Prophet ﷺ is described as follows: He used to read the *Tabâyят* (i.e., the *Tasbahbud*) after every two units. And the Prophet ﷺ said.

«إِنْ أَعَلَمُ فِي كُلِّ رَكَعَةٍ قَالَوْا التَّجَابَتْ»

When you sit after each two units, say *At-Tabâyят*. (Ahmad

¹¹ See *Shuruus Salat u.a Arkanuha* by Shaikh Al-Islam Muhammad bin ‘Abdul-Wahhab, and *Al-Udâ’ab Shahrub-‘Umâd*, 13-71, and *Manarus-Sobîl* 70-87.
Lesson Eight

and An-Nisa’i)

The difference between the pillars of prayer (Arkan) and the obligatory elements (Wujibat) of prayer, is that when one leaves out any pillar of prayer, regardless of whether he leaves it out on purpose or because he forgets, his prayer is nullified. But only when one purposefully leaves out one of the obligatory elements of prayer is his prayer void. If one forgets to perform one of the obligatory elements of prayer, one may make it up by performing the prostration that is legislated for forgetfulness.\(^1\)

\(^1\) *Sunatuus-Salat* by Imam Muhammad bin ‘Abdul Wahhab.
Lesson Nine

An Explanation Of The Tashahhud

The Tashahhud is to say, “Greetings to Allâh, and blessings and goodness. Peace be upon you, O Prophet, and the mercy of Allâh and His blessings. Peace be upon us and all of Allâh’s righteous servants. I bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped except Allâh and I bear witness that Muhammad is His servant and Messenger.”

Then the worshipper sends peace and blessings upon the Prophet ﷺ saying, “O Allâh, bestow Your favor on Muhammad and on the family of Muhammad as You have bestowed Your favor on Ibrahim and on the family of Ibrahim, You are full of praise, Most Glorious. O Allâh, bless Muhammad and the family of Muhammad as You have blessed Ibrahim and the family of Ibrahim, You are full of praise, Most Glorious.”

Then in the final Tashahhud, which is in the last unit of prayer, the worshipper seeks refuge in Allâh from four: from the punishment of the Fire, from the punishment of the grave, from the trials of life and death, and from the evil trial of Al-Masih Ad-Dajal. And then finally, one may supplicate as he wishes, but especially using those invocations that have been related from the Prophet ﷺ, such as the following: “O Allâh, help me to remember You, to give You thanks, and to be Your good servant. O Allâh, I have greatly wronged myself and no one forgives sins but You. So grant me forgiveness and have mercy on me. Surely, You are Most Forgiving, Most Merciful.”

As for the first Tashahhud (which is in the second unit of prayer), after having said, “I bear witness that none has the right to be worshipped except Allâh and I bear witness that Muhammad is His servant and Messenger,”
Lesson Nine

one rises to the third unit — in the Zuhr, ‘Asr, Maghrib, and ‘Isha’ prayers. But because there are Abadith, which in general, indicate that one should send peace and blessings upon the Prophet ﷺ, it is better for one to send peace and blessings upon him and then to rise to the third unit of prayer.

The Tashabbud: The Shaikh chose the Tashabbud that was related by Ibn Ma’sud, may Allâh be pleased with him, who said, “When the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ taught me the Tashabbud, my hands were clenched in his, in the same way that he would teach me a Surah of the Qur’an.” (Recorded by Ahmad 1:114) Al-Bukhari (4:175) Muslim (2:14) and others.) Yet there are other wordings to the Tashabbud: whichever one the worshipper chooses, his prayer is correct. If he varies, using this one sometimes and that one others, then this is good. And Allâh Almighty knows best. Nonetheless, among the different narrations regarding the Tashabbud, Ibn Ma’sud’s narration is most authentic.

Abu Ma’sud Al-Badri, may Allâh be pleased with him, related that Bashir bin Sa’d asked, “O Messenger of Allâh, Allâh ordered us to send blessings upon you, so how should we send blessings upon you?” At first, the Prophet ﷺ remained silent, and then he said:

اللهِ ﷺ صلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَعَلَى أَلِيّ إِبْرَاهِيمْ

وَبَارَكَ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَعَلَى أَلِيّ إِبْرَاهِيمْ كَمَا بَارَكَ عَلَى أَلِيّ إِبْرَاهِيمْ في

الْمَلَكِينَ إِلَّاّ أنَّ خَيْبَتُ مُحَمَّدٍ مَّجْبُودٌ وَالْمُلْكِ كَمَا عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ

Say: “O Allâh, bestow Your favor on Muhammad and on the family of Muhammad as You have bestowed Your favor on the family of Ibrahim, and bless Muhammad and the family of Muhammad as You have blessed the family of Ibrahim from all that exists, You are full of praise. Most Glorious... And Taslim is as you know.” (Recorded by Muslim)
Both Al-Bukhari and Muslim related another narration, which is narrated by Ka‘b bin ‘Ujrah. In it, the Prophet ﷺ said:

"اللَّهُمَّ صلِّ عَلَى مُحَمَّدٍ وَعَلَى آلِ مُحَمَّدٍ كَمَا صلَّيتَ عَلَى آلِ يَزَاهِيمٍ إِنَّكَ حَيٌّ وَقَدِيمٌ"

Say: “O Allah, bestow Your favor on Muhammad and the family of Muhammad, as You have bestowed Your favor on Ibrahim and the family of Ibrahim. Verily, You are full of praise, Most Glorious... And he mentioned the rest of the Hadith. Recorded by Al-Bukhari (3:15) and Muslim (2:16)

Abu Hurairah, may Allah be pleased with him, narrated that the Messenger of Allah ﷺ said:

"إِذَا تَسَهَّلَ أَحَدُكُمْ فَلْيَسَهَّلْهُ ابْنُ أَمْرٍ بِيَّ، وَمِنْ عَذَابِ الْجَهَنَّمَ، وَمِنْ عَذَابِ الْأَعْمَى، وَمِنْ عَذَابِ الْمَكْسَرِ، وَمِنْ عَذَابِ الْمُكَذِّبِينَ، وَمِنْ عَذَابِ الْمُكَذَّبِينَ`

When one of you says the Tasbih, seek he should seek refuge in Allah from four, saying, “O Allah, I seek refuge in You from the punishment of the grave, from the torment of the Fire, from the trials and tribulations of life and death, and from the evil trial of Al-Masih Ad-Dajjal.”

This Hadith indicates that after one sends peace and blessings upon the Prophet ﷺ, one should seek refuge in Allah Almighty from the four mentioned above.

In another narration, Abu Bakr, may Allah be pleased with him, related that he said to the Messenger of Allah ﷺ, “Teach me a supplication that I can use in my prayer.” He said:

"اللَّهُمَّ إِنِّي طَلَّمْتُ نَفْسِي طَلَّمًا كَثِيرًا وَلا يَعْفَ عَنِ النَّافِرِ إِلَّا أَنْ تَعْفَوَ الْرَّحْمَٰمِ"

Say: “O Allah, I have greatly wronged myself and no one forgives sins but You. So grant me forgiveness and have mercy on me. Surely, You are Most Forgiving, Most Merciful.”

(Agreed upon)

This Hadith clearly proves the categorical permissibility of supplica-
tion during prayer: one of the times to supplicate during prayer is at
the end of the *Tashahhud* — after one has already made the
*Tashahhud*, has sent peace and blessings on the Prophet ﷺ, and has
sought refuge in Allāh from the four above-mentioned afflictions.
And it is okay to choose another supplication that has been related
from the Prophet ﷺ for he said in Ibn Mas‘ūd’s narration:

«ُّمِّنَّا لْيَبِينُرُونَ مِنْ الدُّعَاءِ أَعْجَبُهُ إِلَيْهِ فَيُقَدِّعُوً»

Then he may supplicate with that invocation that is most
beloved to him.

And this *Hadith* indicates even more: that not only is it permissible
to supplicate with an invocation that has been related from the
Prophet ﷺ, but it is also permissible to supplicate with any other
invocation, as long as the invocation does not consist of that which is
prohibited. In yet another narration, the Prophet ﷺ said:

«ُّمِّنَّا لْيَبِينُرُونَ مِنْ الدُّعَاءِ مَا شَاءَ»

Then let him choose to ask whatever he wishes.

One of the supplications that can be said after the *Tashahhud* is the
following recorded by Muslim and Abu ‘Awanaḥ:

«اللَّهُمَّ اغْفِرْ لِيْ مَا قَلَّتْنِ وَمَا أَفْلَتْنِ وَمَا أُسْرَتْنِ وَمَا
أَغْفَرْنِ وَمَا أَعْلَمْنِ وَمَا أَعْلَمْنِ وَمَا أَغْفَرْنِ وَمَا أَعْلَمْنِ وَمَا
لاِلَّهِ إِلَّا أَنْتَ»

O Allāh, forgive me for those sins which have come to pass as
well as those which shall come to pass, and those I have
committed in secret as well as those I have made public, and
where I have exceeded all bounds as well as those things about
which You are more knowledgeable. You are *Al-Muqaddim*
(the First) and *Al-Mu’akkibir* (the Last). None has the right to
be worshipped except You.

The Imam may make these supplications as long as it does not
become burdensome on those that are following him in prayer.

You may pray for a specific person, just as the Prophet ﷺ
suppricated for the weak from Makkah.
The term **At-Tawāyīn** means everything that indicates the glorification of Allah, such as bowing and prostrating. And everything by which Allah is glorified belongs to Him alone; if one performs anything that is solely for Allah's glorification to anyone else, then he is a polytheist, a disbeliever.

**As-Salawāt** means all supplications, though it has been said to mean the five prayers.

**At-Tayyibat Lillah** means all good deeds.

Allah is glorified, but peace is not sent upon Him, because by seeking to send peace upon someone, one is making supplication. Allah is pure and good and He doesn't accept sayings or deeds unless they are good and pure.

**As-Salamu 'Alaika 'Ajyubanabiyyu wa Rabbatullabi wa Barakaatubu** means that one is supplicating for peace, mercy, and blessings to be sent on the Prophet. From this, we take a lesson: since we can pray for the Prophet, we cannot pray to him.

**As-Salamu 'Alaina uwa 'Ala 'Ibaadillabhs Salibeen**: Here, you are sending peace upon yourself and upon every righteous servant of Allah, whether that servant be on earth or in the heavens. And again, the fact that we are supplicating for the righteous clearly indicates that we cannot supplicate to them.

**Ashbaadu Al-Loa ilaha illallahu Wahdabu Loa Shareeka Labu uwa Ashbaadu Anna Muhammadan 'Abdubu uwa Rasoolubu**: Here, you bear witness with certainty that no one in the heavens or the earth deserves to be worshipped except Allah Almighty, and that Muhammad is Allah's Messenger and worshipper — a worshipper is not worshipped, and a Messenger should not be disbelieved in; rather, he should be obeyed and followed. Allah honored the Prophet by calling him His servant:

![Quranic Verse]

_Blessed is He Who sent down the Criterion (of right and wrong, i.e., this Qur'an) to His servant (Muhammad that he_
may be a Warner to the ‘Alamin (mankind and jinns).\(^\text{[1]}\)

\(\text{اللهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلَى مُهَمَّدَ وَعَلَى آلِ مُهَمَّدَ كَتَابَهُ إِلَّا إِبَراهِيمَ وَكَبْرِيَّةَ مُحَمَّدَ} \)

\(\text{Allâhummâ Salli ‘Ala Muhammadin wa ‘Ala Aali Muhammadin Kama Sallaita ‘Ala Ibrahîma Innaka Hameedum Mejed: Salat} \)

\(\text{from Allâh means for Him to praise his servant in the highest gathering, as Al-Bukhari mentioned in his Sabih, from Abu Al-‘Alîyah, who said “Allâh’s Salat is His praising His servant in the highest of gatherings.” And they say that it means mercy. But the first view is correct. Salat from the angels means for them to ask Allâh to forgive His servant. And Salat from human beings means supplication for them.} \)

\(\text{Aali Muhammad} \)

\(\text{means the family of the Prophet \(\text{AS} \) from the children of Hashim, the children of Al-Muttalib, and his wives. It is forbidden for any of them to accept Zakat. And the family of Ibrahim means those believers that are from his progeny.} \)

\(\text{Just as one can send Salat upon the Prophet \(\text{AS} \) from what has been related, one may also send Salat upon others as well, but as long as one doesn’t do so often. It is permissible to send Salat upon other people because the Prophet \(\text{AS} \) did so when he said,} \)

\(\text{“اللهُمَّ صَلِّ عَلَى آلِبي أُوْفِقْ”} \)

\(\text{O Allâh, send Salat on the family of Abi Awfa.} \)

\(\text{But one must not make someone recognized as a person upon whom Salat are sent: that is something specific to the Prophet \(\text{AS} \), nor should one choose a specific Companion or a set of Companions, by sending Salat only on him or on them, leaving out the rest.} \)

\(^\text{[1]}\) \text{(Al-Furqan 25:1)}
Lesson Ten

The Sunan Elements Of Prayer

The following are the Sunan elements of prayer:

1) The opening supplication.

2) While standing, placing one's right hand on one's left, over the chest; before bowing and after rising from that position.

3) With joined and outstretched fingers, raising one's hands, so that they are parallel to his shoulders or to his ears, in the following situations: the opening Takbir, when going down to bow, when rising from the bowing position, and when rising from the first Tasabhud, i.e., standing for the third unit of prayer.

4) Saying the statements of glorification more than once while bowing and prostrating.

5) What may be added to Rabbana wa Lakal-Hamd after standing from the bowing position, and supplicating for forgiveness more than once between the two prostrations.

6) To place the head at the same angle and level of one's back during the bowing position.

7) While prostrating, one should distance his upper arms from his sides, his stomach from his thighs, and his thighs from his calves.

8) Keeping the forearms away from the ground while prostrating.

9) During the first Tasabhud and between the two prostrations, one should place his buttocks on his left calf and foot, while his right foot should be erected, with his toes on the ground holding the foot up, and with the bottom of his foot facing the opposite direction of the Qiblah.

10) Specifically in the last Tasabhud of the three-unit and four-unit prayer, one should let his buttocks rest on the ground, while his left calf is resting under his right leg, once again
resting the weight of the right foot on its toes, with the bottom of the foot facing away from the Qibla.

11) Pointing one’s right index finger during both the first and last Tashabhud, from the time one sits until the time he finishes the Tashabhud; and in the same position, he should move that finger when he is supplicating.

12) During the first Tashabhud, sending blessings on the Prophet ﷺ, his family, on Ibrahim and on his family.

13) To supplicate during the final Tashabhud.

14) Audible recitation during the Fajr prayer, the Jumu’ah prayer, the two ‘Eid prayers, the prayer for rain, and in the first two units of the Maghrib and ‘Isra’ prayers.

15) Quiet recitation during the Zuhr prayer, the ‘Asr prayer, the third unit of the Maghrib prayer, and the last two units of the ‘Isra’ prayer.

16) Reciting more than Al-Fatihah during prayer. Just as one should follow those Sunan mentioned above, one should also follow those not mentioned among them: saying more than Rabbana wa Lakaal-Hamid, for the Imam, his follower, and the one who is reading alone, for that is a Sunnah.

Another example is to place one’s hands on one’s knees during the bowing position, with his fingers spread out.

The Sunan Elements of Prayer:

The Sunan elements of prayer are divided into two categories: 1) sayings, 2) actions. It is not binding upon the worshipper to perform the Sunnah sayings or actions of prayer: if the worshipper performs them, he is rewarded; if he doesn’t, then just as in all other deeds that are Sunnah, there is no sin upon him. Nonetheless, the Muslim should perform them, following the Prophet’s command:

אָלֹהֵיכָּמִי וּפְנֵי הָבֵית הַחַלְעַגא הַרְאָשִׁים הַמְּזִדְיִים עָלָּיוֹ בַעֲלָהֵיהוּ בְּלַזְוַאֵהוּ

الأَرْحَامُ يُسِيِّرُهَا وَتَقُلُّ يَا الخَلِّيَاءِ الرَّأِيُّ الْرَّأَايِ الْمَهْدِيِّينَ عَلَى عَلَيْهَا بِالْمَوَاچِدِ
Follow my Sunnah (way) and the Sunnah of the rightly —
guided caliphs — cling to that way by biting on it with your
molars.

The Opening Supplication:
It is so called because with it, one begins the prayer. This is one of
the opening supplications that has been related from the Prophet ﷺ:

Subhaanaka Allâhumma wa Bibamdika wa Tabaarakasmu-
ka wa Ta’ala Jadduka wa Laa Ilaaha Gha’iruika.

meaning: “Glory is to You, O Allâh, and praise, Blessed is Your
Name and Exalted is Your Majesty, and none has the right to be
worshipped except You.”

Phrase by Phrase Translation:

(سبحانك المهم) Subhaanaka Allâhumma: With your Sublimity, I
consider You far too exalted to have any faults, O Allâh.

(ربما دينك) Wa Bibamdika: It has been said to mean that I join
between two: I consider you free from having any faults and I
praise You.

(ربنا أحكمك) Wa Tabaarakasmuka: Blessings are achieved by Your
remembrance.

(رب تعالي جدك) Wa Ta’ala Jadduka: Your Exaltedness is Sublime.

(لا إله إلاك) Wa Laa Ilaaha Gha’iruika: There is no one on the earth
or in the sky that is rightfully worshipped except You.

Because there are different opening supplications that have been
related from the Prophet ﷺ, it is recommended for a Muslim to
sometimes supplicate with one version and sometimes with another,
so that his adherence to the Sunnah is more complete.

Another opening supplication that has been authentically related
from the Prophet ﷺ:

اللهُمَّ باَعْدُ بَني خَطَأَتِي ۗ كَمَا باَعَلتُ بَني السَّرِّ وَالْمَعْنَبُ
اللهُمَّ باَعْدُ بَني خَطَأَتِي ۗ كَمَا باَعَلتُ بَني الْثَّوبِ الأَبْيَضِ وَالْمَنَعُ
اللهُمَّ باَعْدُ بَني خَطَأَتِي ۗ كَمَا باَعَلتُ بَني الْأَدْمَحَ وَالْمَسْتُرُّ،
Lesson Ten

O Allâh, distance me from my sins just as you have distanced the East from the West; O Allâh, purify me of my sins as a white robe is purified of filth; O Allâh, cleanse me of my sins with water, snow and ice pellets. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim)

“Placing one’s right hand on one’s left”: In a Hadîth related by Wâ’il bin Hujr, the Prophet ﷺ is described as having placed his right hand on his left hand. It was recorded by Ahmad and Muslim. And the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said:

"إِنَّا مَعَكِّرُ الأَنْتَيْنَ أَمْرًا يَتَعْجِبُ فَطَرَنَا وَنَجِبُرُ سَحْوَرًا وَأَنَّا نَضْعُ أَيْمَانًا عَلَى صَنَاعَتِنَا فِي الصَّلَاةَ"

We, the Prophets, have been ordered to hasten to break our fast, and to delay our Subh; and to place our right (hands) on our left (hands) in prayer.

Recorded by Abu Dawud with a Hasan Mursal chain of narration from Tawus. It was also narrated from ‘Ali with a chain of narration that contains some unreliable narrators. In it he said, “Indeed from the Sunnah in prayer is to place the hand over the hand under the navel...” It was recorded by Ahmad and it mentions matters other than that, and the first narration is the more preferred. Allâh knows best.

“With joined and outstretched fingers, raising one’s hands”: The Prophet ﷺ used to raise his hands with his fingers stretched. (Recorded by Abu Dawud). In a Hadîth related by Abu Humaid, he says that the Prophet ﷺ used to raise his hands until they were parallel with his shoulders. (Agreed upon). Similar was recorded by Abu Dawud from Malik bin Al-Huwairith, who said that the Prophet ﷺ would raise his hands until they were parallel to his earlobes. And by raising his hands, the Prophet ﷺ indicated raising the veil between him and his Lord, just as the index finger is used in the seated position to signify the Oneness of Allâh.

In the Hadîth reported by ‘Ali, may Allâh be pleased with him, he said that when the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ would stand up for an obligatory prayer, he would say, ‘Allâhu Akbar and raise his hands to the level of his shoulders; he would do the same when he finished
his recitation, and he wanted to bow, and he would do that when he 
raised his head from bowing. He would not raise his hands in any 
portion of the prayer while he was sitting. And when he stood from 
the two prostrations, he would raise his hands with that Takbir. It 
was recorded by Ahmad, Abu Dawud, and At-Tirmithi who said it is 
Sahih. The meaning of “the two prostrations” is the two units of 
prayer.

“more than once”: In the Hadith of Huthaih, he reported that 
when the Messenger of Allah ﷺ bowed, he would say:

Subhana Rabbiyal-Azeem.
And when he would prostrate, he would say:

Subhana Rabbiyal-Ala. (Recorded by Abu Dawud)
It is compulsory, then, to say them once; the least level of 
completeness is to say them three times; and the highest level of 
completeness is to say them ten times.

“and supplicating for forgiveness more than once”: This is 
because it is compulsory to ask Allah for forgiveness once between 
the two prostrations: Huthaih, may Allah be pleased with him, 
related that between the two prostrations, the Prophet ﷺ would say:

O my Lord, forgive me. (Recorded by An-Nasa'i and Ibn 
Majah).

“To place the head at the same angle and level of one’s back 
during the bowing position”: Aishah, may Allah be pleased with 
her, said that when he ﷺ would bow, he would neither point his 
head (down) nor hang it back, but would remain between the two. 
(This was recorded by Muslim)

“While prostrating, one should distance his upper arms from 
his sides…and one should keep his forearms away from the 
ground”: It has been related that, during prostration, the Prophet ﷺ 
would not let his arms lie down. (This was recorded by Al-Bukhari
and Abu Dawud.) Rather, he would raise them above the ground and he would distance them from his two sides until the whiteness of his armpits could be seen from behind him. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim)

“...one should place his buttocks on his left calf and foot...”: When the Prophet ﷺ taught the person who prayed incorrectly, he said:

إذا جلست في وسط الفضالة فأجلس واقف وجلس اليسرى ثم سلّمه

And when you sit down in the middle of the prayer, be serene, lay down your left thigh, and make the Tashahhud. [Recorded by Abu Dawud and Al-Baihaqi with a good (ṣaṣiṣaṣ) chain of narration.]

And ‘Aishah, may Allah be pleased with her, said that the Prophet ﷺ would lay down his left leg, and erect his right (foot). (Recorded by Muslim)

“One should let his buttocks rest on the ground...”: As he was describing the prayer of the Prophet ﷺ, Abu Humaid As-Sa‘idi, may Allah be pleased with him, said:

إذا جلس في الركن الأخضر قلما رجل اليسرى ونصب الأخرى وقعد علي متقعد

“When he would sit for the last unit of prayer, he would put forward his left leg, erecting the other, and he would then rest his weight on his buttocks.” (It was recorded by Al-Bukhari 2:828)

And in the Ḥadīth of Rifa‘ah bin Rafi‘, recorded by Abu Dawud (no. 860) the Prophet ﷺ said:

إذا جلس في وسط الفضالة فأجلس واقف وجلس اليسرى ثم سلّمه

And when you sit in the middle of the prayer, be serene, let your left thigh rest, and then make Tashahhud.

“Sending blessings on the Prophet ﷺ”: It is Sunnah for the one praying to send blessings upon the Prophet ﷺ just as he does in the last Tashahhud, for the Prophet ﷺ would send blessings on himself not only in the last Tashahhud, but in the first Tashahhud as well (and
on other occasions as well). (This was recorded by Abu ‘Awanah in his Sahih and An-Nasa’i).

“To supplicate during the final Tashahhud”: As has been related in the Hadith:

«ثُمَّ إِبْتِعِرْ بِالْمُشَاهِدَةِ مَا شَاءَ أَنْ تَشْهَدِ»

Then he may choose whatever supplication he wishes.
(Recorded by Al-Bukhari)

Earlier some supplications were mentioned for this position. See lesson number nine.

“Audible recitation...” : Imam Ibn Qudamah said, “There is a consensus among the Muslims that it is recommended to read out loud and to read quietly, each in their respective places. The basis for this is the practice of the Prophet ﷺ, the knowledge of which has been transmitted from earlier to later generations.”

“Reciting more than Al-Fatihah”: Imam Ibn Qudamah said, “That it is Sunnah to recite a Surah after Al-Fatihah in the first two units of every prayer, and it is a practice about which we know no dissension.”

Another Sunnah is the Imam to say, ‘Allâhu Akbar” out loud, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

«إِذَا كَبَرَ الْإِنْضَامُ فَكَبِّرُوا»

When the Imam says, ‘Allâhu Akbar,” then all of you should say “Allâhu Akbar.”

He ﷺ also said:

«وَإِذَا قَالَ سَمِعَ اللَّهُ لَمْ يُحِبَّ حَمِيدَتَهُ تَفَرَّدْوا: رَبّنَا وَلَكَ الْحَمْدُ»

And when he says, “Sami‘Allâhu Liman Hamidab” then all of you should say, “Rabbana wa a Lakal Hamid.”

However, the follower of the Imam and the one who is praying alone should say both of these phrases quietly.

It is also Sunnah to quietly seek refuge in Allâh from the accused Shaitan: “A’uthu Billahi Minash-Shaitaanir-Rajem (I take refuge in Allâh from the accused Shaitan).” You may take refuge in Allâh
from the Shaitan using this invocation, or using any other that has been related from the Prophet ﷺ.

After seeking refuge from the Shaitan, you should quietly read Bismillah (i.e., Bismillahir-Rahmaanir-Raheem), even though Bismillah is neither from Surat Al-Fatihah nor from any other Surah; rather, it is a verse from the Qur’an that comes before and between Surahs of the Qur’an, except for Surahs Bara’ah and Al-Ar’fal.

It is Sunnah to write Bismillah at the beginning of books and letters, just as Sulaiman, peace be upon him, did, and just as the Prophet ﷺ used to do. It repels the Shaitan, you should also read it before performing all actions.

As you are reciting Surat Al-Fatihah it is recommended that you stop at the end of each verse (as opposed to reading the chapter through, without pausing, and without stopping to take a breath after the end of the verses). After reading the last verse, and then after pausing slightly, you should say, “Aameen,” which means, “O Allah, answer.” By pausing, you allow it to be known that the “Aameen” is not a part of the Qur’an. Both the Imam and his follower may say it after the audible prayers, and in the same prayers, based on Samarah’s Hadith, it is recommended for the Imam to remain quiet after that.

It is then recommended for the Imam to recite an entire chapter, and though reading one verse only is sufficient, Imam Ahmad preferred it to be long. And outside of the prayer, you may recite the Bismillah either out loud or quietly.

The recitation in the Fajr prayer should be from the longer Mi’jassal section of the Qur’an, or the beginning of Surah Qaf since Awaasked the Companions of Muhammad ﷺ about how the Qur’an was divided and they said, “A third, a fifth, a seventh, a ninth, an eleventh, a thirteenth — and the Mi’jassal section as one.”

The recitation in the Maghrib prayer should be from the shorter Surahs and in the remainder of the prayers from those of moderate length as long as there is no reason to prevent that. Otherwise, recitation should be from the shorter Surahs.

For the loud prayers, a woman may recite out loud as long as no strange man can hear her. When you pray voluntary prayers late at
night, you must consider the general good: if someone is nearby who will be disturbed by your recitation, then you should recite quietly; if the one who is nearby would like to listen, then you may recite out loud. If, by mistake, you recite out loud when you should have recited quietly or, recited quietly when you should have recited out loud, then you can correct yourself by simply changing the volume of your voice to what is appropriate, continuing in your recitation, without beginning all over. And finally, because the verses of the Qur’ān are in a particular order, you must recite them in order.

“Saying the statements of glorification more than once…”: The scholars say that, in terms of the Imam, he may reach the lowest level of completeness by reading those phrases three times and the highest level of completeness by reading them ten times. Also, you should know that the Prophet ﷺ forbade us from reciting the Qur’ān during both the bowing and the prostrating positions.

“What may be added to Rabbana-walakal-Hand”: For example, saying:

بِلَاءِ السَّمَاءِ وَالْأَرْضِ وَبِلَاءِ مَا بَيْنَ مَنْ شَيِّئَينَ بَعْدُ

The heavens and the earth and all between them abound with Your praises, and all that You will abound with Your praises.

If one likes, one may add:

أَهْلُ الْبَنَاءِ وَالْمَجْدِ أَحْكَمَ مَا قَالَ الْمَعَالِدُ وَكَلَّمَنَّا اللَّهُ عَنَّدَ جَانَبِ السَّماوَاتِ وَلَا مَعْطَى لَهُمْ لَمَّا أَعْطَىهُمْ

O Possessor of praise and majesty, the truest thing a servant has said (of You) and we are all Your servants. O Allah, none can prevent what You have willed to bestow and none can bestow what You have willed to prevent, and no wealth or majesty can benefit anyone, as from You is all wealth and majesty.

You may say any other phrase that has been related from the Prophet ﷺ, such as the one in Abu Sa‘īd’s Hadīth:

اللَّهُمَّ رَبِّي لَكَ الحَمْدُ

Allâhumma Rabbana Lalak-Hand.
A slight variation, which means, “O Allāh, Our Lord, for You is all praise.”

It is also recommended, when you go down for prostration, that your hands touch the ground directly, with your fingers joined together, pointed in the direction of the Qiblah. In that position, your fists should not be clenched, nor should your elbows be resting on the ground; rather, they should be raised.

“and supplicating for forgiveness more than once...”: Not only may you ask for forgiveness more than once, you may also read an additional supplication: Ibn ‘Abbas, may Allāh be pleased with them, said that the Prophet ﷺ would say the following between the two prostrations:

رزب أعفني لي وأرحيني وأ_ANS أبيني وأعانني

My Lord forgive me, have mercy upon me, guide me, give me sustenance, and give me health. (Recorded by Abu Dawud)

You may make the same supplication when you are prostrating, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

وآمنا السُّجود فأثيروا فيه من الدَّعاء فأتين أن يُعفِّفَات لَكُمْ

As for the prostration, when you are in that position, supplicate much — and it will be worthy for you to be answered. (Recorded by Muslim)

Abu Hurairah related that the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ would say when he was prostrating:

اللَّهُمَّ أعفني لي ذنبي نَحْلَةً دَفْعَةً ورُحْنَةً وأولَاهِ وآخِرَهُ وعُزَيْبَاتِهُ وجرَهُ.

O Allāh, forgive me all of my sins, the small and great of them, the first and last of them, and the seen and hidden of them.

Shaikh Muhammad bin ‘Abdul-Wahhab said, “Then he should sit for the Tashahhud, with his hands on his legs, stretching and joining the fingers of his left hand, so that they are facing the Qiblah. As for his right hand, his pinky finger (little finger) and the one next to it should be clenched, while thumb and middle finger should touch, making the shape of a ring. Then he should make Tashahhud, pointing with his index finger, signifying Taubid. He may point with
that finger when supplicating either during prayer or outside of prayer, for Ibn Zubair said, “The Prophet ﷺ would point with his finger when he supplicated, and he wouldn’t move it.” (It was recorded by Abu Dawud)

It is also Sunnah to turn towards your right and left when making Taslim (i.e., saying Assalamu ‘Alaikum wa Rabmatullah). The Imam says the Taslim out loud, and his followers should say it quietly. While he shouldn’t prolong his voice when he says the Taslim, he should make intention first to exit the prayer and second to send peace on the protecting angels and on those who are present.

After making Taslim, the Imam should not prolong facing the Qiblah; rather, it is Sunnah for him to turn toward those who followed him in prayer, either turning to his right or to his left. And no follower should leave the place of prayer before him, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

«إِنِّي إِماَمُكُمْ فَلاَ تَسْتَقَوْبُوا بِالرَّكُونِ وَلَا يَقْبَلُوا وَلَا يَأْصَرُوا»

I am your Imam, so do not precede me — neither in the bowing position, nor in the prostrating position, nor in leaving.

If women are praying with men, the women should leave first, while the men wait for a short while, so that they don’t accost the women or get in their way.

After the prayer is finished, it is Sunnah for you to remember Allâh, to invoke Him, and to ask His forgiveness, saying:
(Astaghfirullah ﷺ) Astaghfirullah (I ask Allâh for forgiveness) three times. Then you should say:

«اللَّهُمَّ أَلِتَ الْمَلَكَ وَمِلِكَ الْلَّهَ وَالْعَلِيمَ وَالْجُدَّ وَالْبَشَرَ وَالْأَمِينَ وَالْمَلِكَ وَالْأَمَيَّةَ وَالْبَشَرَ وَالْأَمِينَ»

الله ﷺ وَالْمَلَكَ وَالْعَلِيمَ وَالْجُدَّ وَالْبَشَرَ وَالْأَمِينَ وَالْمَلِكَ وَالْأَمِينَ وَالْمَلِكَ وَالْعَلِيمَ وَالْجُدَّ وَالْبَشَرَ وَالْأَمِينَ

(O Allāh, You are As-Salaam (The One Who is free from all defects) and from You is all peace, Blessed are You, O Possessor of majesty and honor. None has the right to be worshipped except Allāh, alone, without partner, to Him belongs all sovereignty and praise, and He is capable over all things. And there is no power nor ability except by Allāh. None has the right to be worshipped except Allāh, and we do not worship any other besides Him. His is grace, and His is bounty and to Him belongs the most excellent praise. None has the right to be worshipped but Allāh. (We are) sincere in making our religious devotion to Him, even though the desbelievers may dislike it. O Allāh, none can prevent what You have willed to bestow and none can bestow what You have willed to prevent, and no wealth or majesty can benefit anyone, as from You is all wealth and majesty:

Then you should say,

“Subhaanallab (How perfect Allāh is!” thirty-three times.

‘Al-Hamdulillah (All praise is for Allāh)” thirty-three times, and:

‘Allāhu Akbar (Allāh is the Most Great)” thirty-three times. To complete the hundred, say:

‘Laa Ilaah Illallahu Wabdalabu la shareeka labu, Labul-Mu’ku, ua Labul-Hamdu, ua Huuua ‘Ala Kulli Shay’in Qadeer. (None has the right to be worshipped except Allāh, alone, without partner, to Him belongs all sovereignty and praise and He is Capable over all things).”

After having finished the Fajr and Maghrib prayers, and before
saying to any person, say:

اللّهِ خَلِيفَّيْنِ ﻢِنْ آخِرِيْنِ (O Allâh, protect me from the fire), seven times.

Know that to supplicate quietly is better than to supplicate out loud, and moreover, you should supplicate with what is narrated from the Prophet ﷺ, and with a present heart, both hoping and fearing, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

لا يُستجوب الدعاء من قَلْبٍ عَادِيٍّ

The supplication of a heedless heart is not answered.

Ask Allâh Almighty by His Beautiful Names and Attributes, and ask Him, mentioning your belief in Taubbîd.

When you supplicate, try supplicating during those times when you are more likely to be answered: the last third of the night, between the Athâb (call to prayer) and the Iqamah, after the obligatory prayers, the last hour of (daylight on) Friday and between the Athâb and Iqamah during the Friday prayer.

You should patiently wait for your supplication to be answered, not rushing, and not saying, “I supplicated and I supplicated but I was not answered.” And it is okay to specify yourself when you supplicate, but it is disliked to do so when others are saying Aameen after you. And it is also disliked to supplicate out loud.

You should know that the Shaikh mentioned only some of the Sunnah elements of prayer, whereas there are more, and as I mentioned earlier, the people of knowledge classify those elements into sayings and deeds. There are seventeen sayings in prayer that are Sunnah:

1) The Opening Supplication.
2) Seeking refuge in Allâh from the Shaitan.
3) The Basmalah.
4) Saying “Aameen” after the Opening Chapter.
5-9) Reciting a Surah of the Qur’an in the first two units, and in the Fajr, Junûdah, voluntary, and two ’Eid prayers.
10-11) Reciting out loud when required; reciting quietly when
required.

12) After standing from bowing, reading, ‘Mil’asSamawaati ual-\nArab...’ to the end of that supplication.

13-14) Saying the statements of glorification more than once when
bowing and when prostrating.

15) Between the two prostrations, asking Allâh for forgiveness more
than once.

16) In the last Tasbahbud, seeking refuge in Allâh from four trials.

17) In the first Tasbahbud, sending prayers and blessings on
Muhammad ﷺ and his family.

All other Sunnah elements of the prayer are actions, such as the
following:

- (Raising the hands with) the fingers being stretched and joined
and (palms) facing the Qiblah when beginning the prayer, when
going down to the bowing position, and when rising from that
position. Also, lowering the hands after raising them.

- Placing the right hand on the left wrist, and putting them under
the navel.[1]

- Looking at the place of prostration.

- Separating one’s feet at a comfortable distance during the
standing position.

- Reciting in a metered pace (Tarzeel).

- That the Imam’s recitation in the first unit is longer than in the
second, and the length of his recitation should correspond to the
condition of his followers.

- Holding one’s knees during the bowing position, with the
fingers stretched open.

- During the bowing position, making one’s back straight; also, in
the same position, one’s head should be parallel to one’s back.

- When going down for prostration, one’s knees should touch the
ground before one’s hands.

[1] Publisher’s Note: The Hadith from which this act is mentioned is weak.
Please check the book NahlulAutaar, Volume 2, pages 207-211.
- When rising from the prostrating position, one's hands should precede one's knees in being lifted.
- While prostrating, placing one's forehead and nose firmly on the ground, while one's arms are spread away from one's sides; one's stomach should be away from one's thighs and one's thighs should be away from one's calves.
- During prostration, one's feet should be erected, with the tips of the toes separated and touching the ground.
- During prostration, one's hands should be parallel to one's shoulders; also, one's fingers should be stretched, joined, and facing the Qiblab.
- One's hands should directly touch the place of prostration.
- Standing to the next unit of prayer on the soles of the feet putting the hands on the thighs for support.
- Sitting on the left foot with the right foot erect between the two prostrations and in Tashahhud.
- Sitting on the buttocks (as described earlier) in the last Tashahhud.
- Turning to one's right and left when making Taslim.
- Putting his hands on his thighs with the fingers extended and together and the index finger pointing toward the Qiblab between the two prostrations and in Tashahhud.
- During the Tashahhud, to clench one's pinky finger and the one next to it from one's right hand, to make the shape of a ring with the thumb and middle finger, and to point with the index finger.
- Giving preference to turning away from the Qiblab from the left rather than the right.
Sa'dah As-Sahw: The Prostration For Forgetfulness

Imam Ahmad said that, from the narrations we have, the Prophet ﷺ made this special prostration five times:

1) When he ended the prayer after two units.
2) When he ended the prayer after three units.
3) When he did an extra action during prayer.
4) When he missed one of the actions of prayer.
5) When he stood after two units without making prostration.

Al-Khattabi said, “What is trusted among the scholars are these five Sahih,” referring to two related by Ibn Mas'ud, one related by Abu Sa’id, one by Abu Hurairah, and one by Ibn Buhainah.

One makes this prostration when one performs extra units or too few units, when one is doubtful during a compulsory prayer or a voluntary prayer, except if these things happen often: when they do, they are most probably whispers from the devil, and they should be disregarded, a ruling that applies to ablution, taking a shower, and removing impurities.

When one performs the actions of prayer more times than is prescribed on purpose, such as standing, bowing, or sitting, then that prayer is void; but if one does it by mistake, then he may perform the prostration for forgetfulness. The Prophet ﷺ said:

إِذَا زادَ الْرَّجُلُ أوِّ نَصَصَ فِي صَلاَةِ فَيُسْجِدُ سَجَدَتَينَ

If a man increases or decreases from his prayer, let him make two prostrations. (Recorded by Muslim)

If one forgets, but then remembers, he should return to the proper order of prayer without saying ‘Allahu Akbar.’ If one prays an additional unit, one should stop as soon as one remembers and base his prayer on those actions he performed before doing what was additional.

Whether one is an Imam or someone who is praying alone, one must return to a previous position when two trustworthy people prompt him to do so; if only one person prompts him to return, he does not have to do so unless he is sure that that person is right. The Prophet ﷺ did not return when Thah Yadaí told him to do so.

Small or few physical actions do not render one’s prayer void, for the
Prophet ﷺ opened a door for ‘Aishah while he was praying on another occasion, he carried Umanah while he was praying. If one says one of the phrases of prayer, not in its place, but during another part of prayer, one’s prayer is not rendered void.

When one forgets during prayer, one must prostrate twice, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

إذا نسي أحدكم فليسجد صنيع

If one of you forgets, let him make two prostrations.

If one says the Taslim on purpose before the prayer actually ends, it becomes void; but if he said the Taslim by mistake, and then during a short period of time, he remembered, he can simply complete his prayer, even if he exited from the Majid or spoke briefly for some benefit. If one speaks by mistake, sleeps, or if he speaks a word that slips out (i.e., a word that is not from the Qur’an) accidentally during recitation, his prayer is not rendered void. But if one laughs, then his prayer is nullified, a ruling that has jma’ (consensus) behind it; but one’s prayer is not nullified by merely smiling.

If one forgets one of the pillars of prayer (other than the opening Taktub) while he is reciting for the next unit, then the unit in which he forgot the pillar becomes nullified and the new unit replaces it. In such a situation, the opening supplication is not repeated, an opinion that is held by Ahmad. If one remembers that he missed a pillar before reciting, then he should return and repeat it and what comes after it.

When one forgets the first Tashahhud by standing after the prostrations of the second unit, he must return to the Tashahhud unless he has reached the standing position and stands erect. This was recorded by Abu Dawud. The follower must follow the Imam; he does not have to do the Tashahhud but he does have to make prostration.

When one is not sure how many units he prayed, he should base the number on what he is sure of, and when the follower doubts, he should just continue to follow the Imam.

If a follower joins the prayer when the Imam is bowing, and he is not sure whether he reached the prayer on time, he should disregard
that unit and repeat it. The follower does not have to prostrate for
forgetfulness unless his Inam has to do so, and he does it with him.

**Actions That Are Disliked During The Prayer:**

- To turn one’s head slightly or to raise it to the sky is disliked.
- To pray toward a picture, fire, or lamp.
- Resting one’s elbows on the ground during prostration.
- To pray when one has to relieve himself.
- To pray when food one desires is served; in this situation, one
  should delay the prayer even if one misses the congregation.
- To play with pebbles or to intertwine the fingers of his two
  hands.
- To rest on one’s hand during the seated position.
- To touch one’s beard.
- If one has to yawn, one should hold it back as much as possible; if
  he cannot control himself, he should simply put his hand on his
  mouth.
- To level the dirt on the ground without an excuse.
- When one passes in front of you while you are praying, don’t let
  him pass; hold him back, and if need be, push him back, whether
  the one trying to pass is a human or an animal, whether the
  prayer is compulsory or voluntary. If the one trying to pass by
  refuses to desist, you may even fight him. It is forbidden to walk
  between one who is praying and his Sutrah (an object he places
  before him, so that people may walk by him after that object, and
  not before it). It is also forbidden to walk right in front of him
  even if he doesn’t have a Sutrah.
- During prayer, one may kill a snake, scorpion, or louse. One may
  even straighten out his garment or turban.
- It is not disliked to give greetings of peace to one who is praying,
  but he may return your greeting by gesture.
- When the Imam makes an error, you may correct him; men
  should say ‘Subhaanaallah’ to point out his mistake and women
  should clap.
- While in the Masjid, if one has to spit, one should do so in his
garment; outside of the *Masjid*, he should do so on his left; it is hated to spit to one’s right or straight ahead.

- It is disliked for one who is praying individually not to have a *Sutrah*, even if one does not fear a passerby. One may use a wall, a stick, or something else that is readily available. One should pray close to one’s *Sutrah*, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

> إِذَا صَلَى أُحْدِتُمْ فَأَضْرِبْ تَوْلِيَةً إِلَى مَسْتَرَكَّ وَتَأْسِفُ وَيْهَا

When one of you prays, he should pray toward a *Sutrah* and he should get close to it.

He should turn slightly so as not to face it directly, since the Prophet ﷺ did that, and if there is a need he may just make a line and if anything passes beyond it then it is not disliked.
Lesson Eleven

**Actions That Nullify One’s Prayer**

There are eight actions that nullify one’s prayer:

1) Speaking, but only when: (1) one is conscious that he is in prayer, (2) one has knowledge of what he is doing, and (3) one does it on purpose. But when one speaks forgetfully or from ignorance, then his prayer is not nullified.

2) Laughing.

3) Eating.

4) Drinking.

5) Part of one’s ‘Aurab being exposed.

6) A significant turning from the direction of the Qiblah.

7) Much and continuous frivolous movement or fiddling around.

8)Exiting from the state of purity.

```
"Speaking... one does it on purpose": Zaid bin Arqam said, “We used to talk during prayer; one of us would speak to the man praying beside him, until this verse was revealed:

\[
\text{وَقُولُواْ إِبْنِيَّ بَلْ ثُمَّ قَامُواْ مُحَلَّٰلًا}
\]

And stand before Allāh with obedience [and do not speak to others during the Salat (prayers)].\textsuperscript{[1]}

We were ordered to remain quiet and we were forbidden from talking.”

"But when one speaks forgetfully or from ignorance, then his prayer is not nullified": When Mu‘awiyyah bin Al-Hakam As-Sulami spoke during prayer, not knowing the ruling thereof, the Prophet ﷺ said to him:

\textsuperscript{[1]} (Al-Baqarah 2:238)```
Indeed man’s talk is not appropriate to this prayer; verily, it (i.e., the prayer) is only glorification, exaltation (of Allah), and the recitation of Qur’an. (Recorded by Muslim)

Even though the Prophet ﷺ ordered him not to talk during prayer, he didn’t order him to repeat the prayer.

“Laughing”: Ibn Al-Munthir stated that there is, jina’ (consensus) in this issue: laughing renders one’s prayer void.

“Eating and Drinking”: Ibn Al-Munthir said, “Everyone that we know of agrees that whoever eats or drinks on purpose during a compulsory prayer has to repeat that prayer.”

“Part of one’s ‘Aurab’ being exposed”: As I already mentioned in lesson six, to cover one’s ‘Aurab’ is one of the conditions of prayer. So if one exposes his ‘Aurab’ on purpose, his prayer is nullified.

“A significant turning from the direction of the Qiblah”: Facing the Qiblah is also one of the conditions of prayer (refer to lesson six), so if one turns significantly away from that direction on purpose, his prayer is nullified.

“Much and continuous frivolous movement or fiddling around”: If one makes many extraneous movements continuously, movements that are not connected to the prayer, then by consensus of the scholars, his prayer is void. After mentioning this ruling, the author of Al-Kafi says, “If the movements are few, then the prayer is not nullified...because the Prophet ﷺ carried Ummahah during prayer - when he would stand, he would carry her, and when he would go down for prostration, he would place her on the ground...and in the Eclipse prayer, he moved forward and backward.”

“Exiting from the state of purity”: Purity is one of the conditions of prayer: if it is nullified, so too is the prayer. And the Prophet ﷺ said:

Allah does not accept the prayer of one of you when he commits Hadath until he then performs ablution.
Lesson Twelve

The Conditions Of Wuābud (Islamic Ablution)

The Conditions Of Wuābud are ten:

1) Islam.
2) Sanity.
3) Age of discernment,
4) Intention.
5) That the one performing it intends to fulfill it, not having the intention (to wash) for some other reason, until he has completed the processes of purification.
6) That what caused one to have to make Wuābud has stopped.
7) Before making Wuābud, the performance of Istihja' or Iṣtījar.
8) Purity of water being used, and its being lawful.
9) Removing anything (a stain, for example) that prevents the water from reaching one's skin.
10) That when one makes ablution, the time of prayer has arrived:
    This condition is particular to one who is afflicted with a sickness whereby he loses control of his bladder — for instance, causing him to urinate frequently.

Al-Wuābud refers to the water that is used for ablution; Al-Wuābud refers to actions involved in performing ablution. The definition of Al-Wuābud in the Shari'ah is as follows: using pure water on those body parts that Allāh has clarified and legislated.

"Islam, Sanity, Age of Discernment, and Intention": The first three have been clarified in lesson six — the Conditions of Prayer.

Intention is special because it is a condition for all deeds, and by intention, I am referring to the resolve in one’s heart to perform
**Wudu**, the resolve to apply Allāh’s Commands and His Messenger’s commands. It is not, however, legislated to utter one’s intention, for doing so is an innovation. Shaikh Al-Islam Ibn Taymiyyah said, “Intention resides in the heart, and not on the tongue, a principle that the Muslim Imams (i.e., scholars) not only agree upon, but agree upon for all acts of worship.” Even were one to wash all of the required body parts for the **Wudu**, it would not be correct unless he actually intended to make the **Wudu**. So, if one were to wash those body parts, say, only to remove impurities, then his **Wudu** would not be correct. Furthermore, the intention has to continue all the way through, until he finishes purifying himself; if, in the middle of making **Wudu**, he changes his intention from the **Wudu** to something else, his **Wudu** is cancelled.

“That what caused one to have to make **Wudu** has stopped”:
This means that if one has to perform **Wudu** because he defecated, for example, then his stool should completely stop flowing before he makes **Wudu**. The same can be said for vomiting: he should completely finish vomiting before starting to make **Wudu**.

“**Before making Wudu**, the performance of **Istijjā’ or Istjmar**”: **Istijjā’** means to purify oneself from urine or stool, using water, and in some contexts, it could mean **Istjmar** as well. **Istjmar** means to purify oneself from the same impurities using stones or what carries the same ruling as stones (such as toilet paper in the present day). Whoever, then, has relieved himself, must perform **Istijjā’** or **Istjmar** before making **Wudu**. But contrary to what some people think, if one wishes to make **Wudu**, it is not necessary to perform **Istijjā’** or **Istjmar** when one hasn’t actually relieved oneself.

“**Purity of water being used, and its being lawful**”: It is not permissible to use impure water, water that has been wrongfully usurped, or water that has been stolen. The Prophet ﷺ said:

```
َمَنْ أَخْلَفَ فِي أَمْرٍ نَّا هَذَا مَا أَيْسٍ فِيهِ فَهُوَ رَأْى
```

Whosoever introduces into this matter of ours that which does not belong to it, then it is rejected.
"Removing anything (a stain, for example) that prevents the water from reaching one's skin": So that one's ablution is performed properly, as the Prophet advised his nation to perform it, one should remove any stain or particles that prevent the water from directly reaching one's skin.

"That when one makes ablution, the time of prayer has arrived...": This is particularly for those who continually release impurities from their bodies, such as one who is afflicted with enuresis, a condition wherein one urinates uncontrollably. When a woman was afflicted not with her monthly bleeding, but with another kind of bleeding that was a result of sickness, the Prophet ordered her to make ablution for every prayer. (Recorded by Abu Dawud and At-Tirmithi).
Lesson Thirteen

Elements That Are Obligatory (Fardh) In The Wudhu'

There are six elements that are obligatory in "Wudhu":

1) Washing one's face, including Al-Madhamadhab and Al-Istinsbaq (These terms will be clarified in the explanation, if Allah wills)

2) Washing one's hands, elbows, and whatever is in between.

3) Wiping one's entire head, including one's ears.

4) Washing one's feet, including one's ankles.

5) Performing these elements in order.

6) Performing them at one time, without too long of a pause between one body part and another.

It is recommended to repeat the washing of one's face, hands, and feet three times; the same goes for the Madhamadhab and the Al-Istinsbaq. However, it is obligatory to perform each of those elements only once. And based on the meanings of authentic Abadith, one should wipe his head once only.

---

"Washing one's face, including Al-Madhamadhab and Al-Istinsbaq": The limits of one's face: from where the hair begins to grow on one's head to below one's cheekbones on each side of the face, until they meet at the chin, and until the base of one's ears. Allah Almighty says:

إِذَا فُسِّدَ إِلَى الْكَفَّةِ فَأَغْسِلُوا وَجْبَهًََّمْ وَأَخْطُوهُمْ إِلَى الْأَمْرِفينَ وَأَصْحَبُوا

When you intend to offer As-Salat (the prayer), wash your faces and your hands (forearms) up to the elbows, rub (by
Lesson Thirteen

passing wet hands over) your heads, and (wash) your feet up to the ankles.\[1\]

In a Hadith, Humran describes the Wudhu' of ‘Uthman, may Allah be pleased with him, who is describing the Wudhu’ of the Prophet ﷺ, ‘Uthman said, “Then he washed his face three times.”

We must perform Maahmaahah (washing out the mouth) and Istinshaq (snuffing water into the nose and blowing it out) based on two proofs: 1) everyone who described the Prophet’s Wudhu’ mentioned them, and 2) the nose and the mouth are parts of the face.

‘Aishah, may Allah be pleased with her, related that the Prophet ﷺ said:

«إِذَا نُؤْصِّيُّ فَقَضُوْضُ»

When you make Wudhu’, perform the Maahmaahah.

Abu Hurairah, may Allah be pleased him, related that the Prophet ﷺ said:

«إِذَا نُؤْصِّيُّ أَحْدَمُ مَانِجُوْزَلُ في أَنْفَيْهِ مَاَّ إِسْتَشْأَرُ»

When one of you makes Wudhu’, he should put water into his nose and then blow it out. (Agreed upon).

Based on what has been related from the Sunnah, the water is taken into the nose with the right hand, and blown out with the assistance of the left.

To follow the Sunnah, one should perform Al-Maahmaahah and Al-Istinshaq with one handful of water; when one of the Prophet’s Companions described his Wudhu’, he said, “He then made Maahmaahah and Istinshaq.” As long as one is not fasting, one should exaggerate in both, working the water inside one’s mouth and inhaling water through one’s nose to a high level. The Prophet ﷺ said:

«وَيَنَبِّعُ فِي الْمَضْحَةَ ْوَالإِسْتِنْشَاقِ إِلَّا أَنْ نَكُونَ صَابِعًا»

And exaggerate when performing the Maahmaahah and

\[1\] (Al-Ma‘idah 5:6)
**Istinsqaq** unless you are fasting. (Recorded by Abu Dawud and At-Tirmithi via a narration from Luqit bin Saburah).

"Washing one’s hands, elbows, and whatever is in between": One should wash his hands until (and including) his elbows. Allâh Almighty says:

> وَلَيَغْسِلِّهِمْ يَدَّهُمْ وَأَنْفُسَهُمْ

And your hands (forearms) up to the elbows [1]

In Humran’s narration: “He then washed his right hand up to the elbow three times, and then the left in the same way.” The elbow must be washed along with the hand, first because the Prophet ﷺ used to wash his elbow as well, and second because the scholars say that “up to” here means “with.”

"Wiping one’s entire head, including one’s ears":
Allâh Almighty says:

> وَلَا تَمْسَكْ أَذْنَابَكُمْ بِالزَّوْلِ

Rub (by passing wet hands over) your heads.[2]

‘Abdullah bin Zaid said when he described the Wudhu’ of the Prophet ﷺ, “Indeed, the Prophet ﷺ wiped his head with his hands, bringing them toward the front and taking them toward the back. He began with the front of his head, working his hands up until he reached the back of his head, and then he brought them back to their starting place.” (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim.) It is enough to wipe one’s head once.

The ears take the same ruling for the Prophet ﷺ said:

> الأَذْنَانِ مِنْ الرَّأسِ

The ears are part of the head.

Recorded by At-Tirmithi and Abu Dawud with a Sahîh chain of narration.

The Prophet ﷺ would wipe both his head and ears when making Wudhu’.

[1] (Al-Ma’îdah 5:6)
[2] (Al-Ma’îdah 5:6)
It is not legislated, however, to use new water for one’s ears; rather, one should use what remains after one wipes his head. The way to wipe one’s ears is described in Ibn ‘Umar’s Hadith, wherein he said, “Then he wiped his head, inserting his two index fingers into his ears, wiping with his thumbs the exterior of his ears.” (Recorded by Abu Dawud and An Nasa’i).

“Washing one’s feet, including one’s ankles”: Allâh Almighty says:

وَزُوَّهُمَا كَمَا أَمَرَكَ اللَّهُ

And (wash) your feet up to the ankles.\(^1\)

In Humran’s Hadith: “Then he washed his right foot until the ankles three times, and then he did the same with his left.” (Agreed upon). One’s ankles, the two bones that are protruding just above one’s feet, must be washed as well.

“Performing these elements in order”: This is because Allâh Almighty mentioned the Wu‘ubu’ in order; and the Prophet ﷺ would perform Wu‘ubu’ in that same order. When I say “in order,” I mean that one must perform Wu‘ubu’ the way Allâh Almighty and His Messenger ﷺ ordered us to perform it, without advancing certain body parts before their time, which, if done, nullifies the Wu‘ubu’.

By washing one’s elbows before his face, one invalidates his Wu‘ubu’; similarly, by washing one’s feet before wiping one’s head, one invalidates his Wu‘ubu’, and so on. The verse clearly indicates the order of Wu‘ubu’, and the Prophet ﷺ said:

وَزُوَّهُمَا كَمَا أَمَرَكَ اللَّهُ

Perform Wu‘ubu’ in the way Allâh ordered you (to perform it).

“Performing them at one time, without too long of a pause”: This is the sixth obligatory element of Wu‘ubu’, and what it means is this: while making Wu‘ubu’, one should not delay one body part so long that the previous body part has become dry. The body parts of Wu‘ubu’ must not only be performed in sequence, but also without too long of a pause between one part and the next.

\(^1\) (Al-Ma‘idah 5:6)
Khalid bin Ma’dan related that when the Prophet saw a man praying, he noticed that an area about the size of a coin on the back of his foot was unwashed. The Prophet ordered him to repeat his Wudhu’. (Recorded by Ahmad and Abu Dawud with a Sahih chain of narration.)

This Hadith clearly indicates that it is necessary to wash one part after another, without pausing too long; had it not been necessary, the Prophet would have ordered him to wash only that spot. Moreover, everyone who described the Prophet’s Wudhu’ mentioned that he would perform it continuously, without taking breaks in between body parts, and the Prophet is the one who delivers that legislation to his nation.

Finally, it is obligatory to wash all of the body parts for ablution once; twice is better; and three times is best. Ibn Majah recorded that on one occasion, the Prophet made ablution, washing each body part once, and he then said:

إِنِّيْ أَلْوَنُ الْغُرْفَةَ اِبْنَىْ، فَذُوُّورَتْنا أَمْ يُلْيُونَ اللَّهُ لَهُ صِلَاحًا

This is the ablution, that were one not to perform it, Allâh would not accept his prayer from him.

He then made ablution, washing each body part twice, and he then said:

إِنِّيْ أَلْوَنُ الْغُرْفَةَ اِبْنَىْ، فَذُوُّورَتْنا أَمْ يُلْيُونَ اللَّهُ لَهُ صِلَاحًا

This is my Wudhu’ and the Wudhu’ of the Messengers before me.

The proof for washing each body part three times is found in the Hadith related by ‘Uthman which preceded as well as others.
Lesson Fourteen

**Actions That Nullify One’s Ablution**

There are six ways in which one’s ablution becomes nullified:

1) Anything that comes out of the two passages.
2) Any impurity that comes out of one’s body excessively.
3) When one loses consciousness, during sleep or otherwise.
4) When one touches his private parts directly with his hand, without a barrier separating the two, be it the private part in the front or the one in the back.
5) Eating the meat of a camel.
6) Apostasy, we seek refuge in Allāh from that.

**Important note:** It is true that when you wash the body of a dead person, your *Wuḍū‘* is not nullified, because there is no proof to the contrary; this is the view of most scholars, but if your hand touches his private part without a barrier between the two (such as a cloth), you must perform *Wuḍū‘* again. Notwithstanding the previous ruling, you must not touch the private parts of a dead person unless it is behind a barrier.

Similarly, touching a woman does not nullify *Wuḍū‘*, regardless of whether it was accompanied by desire or not, according to the more correct view of the scholars, as long as nothing is emitted. From the two scholarly opinions in this issue, this one is correct. The Prophet ﷺ kissed some of his wives and then he would go for prayer without making ablution. The scholars who are of the other opinion refer to this verse:

"أوَ لَسْتُمْ أَحْيَانَةً"

Or if you have been in contact with women.[1]

However, the correct opinion is that this verse is alluding to

[1] (Al-Ma‘īdah 5:6)
sexual intercourse, an interpretation that is upheld by Ibn 'Abbas, may Allah be pleased with them, and a group of scholars from both early and later generations. And guidance lies with Allah.

In the last lesson, the Shaikh spoke about Wu'ubu, here, he mentions ways in which one's Wu'ubu becomes nullified. The first way in which one loses his Wu'ubu is when anything comes out of the two passages, regardless of whether what comes out is a little or a lot. There are two categories of material that come out of the two passages:

1) What is regular, such as urine and feces. The scholars agree that these discharges nullify one's Wu'ubu. Ibn 'Abdul-Barr mentioned this consensus in relation to this verse:

\[
\text{"أوَّل خَلْقَةَ أَحَدَّينَ مَنْ أَلْجَاكَنَّ مِنَ الْمَيْتَانِ"}.
\]

Or any of you comes from answering the call of nature.\[1\]

In a Hadith, the Prophet ﷺ mentioned:

\[
\text{"وَلاَّ فِي ذَلِكَ دَمَّرَ"}
\]

But from feces and urine.

And in regards to the passing of wind, he ﷺ said:

\[
\text{"فَإِذَا يَنْضُرُ حَتَّى يَسَعُ صَوَرًا أَوْ يُجَدَّ رِيحًا"}
\]

He should not leave (the prayer) until he hears a noise or detects a smell. (Agreed upon).

2) Things that rarely come out of the two passages, such as hair, stones, or worms. Here again one's Wu'ubu becomes nullified. When a woman was bleeding from her private parts because of sickness and not because of her monthly period, the Prophet ﷺ said:

\[
\text{"الْيَوْمِ الْأَخَرِ لَيْسَ لِكُلِّ صَلاَةٍ"}
\]

Make Wu'ubu for each prayer.

Because the discharge of that blood was abnormal or rare, the same ruling applies to all abnormal matters that come out of the two

\[1\] (Al-Ma'idah 5:6)
passages. Furthermore, there is another analogy that we can make. The first category of material, i.e., what is normal, requires one to make ablution, and so the same can be said of the second category, i.e., what is rare or abnormal, because both share one common factor: both involve material coming out of the two passages.

"Any impurity that comes out of one's body excessively": If an impurity comes out not from the two passages, but from some other area of the body, one's Wuabu' becomes nullified when the matter that comes out is excessive. If the discharge is small, then one remains in a state of purity, for Ibn 'Abbas said regarding blood, "If it is excessive, then he must make Wuabu' again." When Ibn 'Umar squeezed a blister causing blood to come out, he prayed without making ablution. In regards to this issue, there is no one known to have differed with the two of them. Therefore, Ibn Qudamah, in Al-Mughni, as well as others, mentioned that there is a consensus for that.

"When one loses consciousness, during sleep or otherwise": Other examples are insanity, when one becomes unconscious due to a blow, or when one is drunk. The Prophet ﷺ said:

أَلْعَنْ رَبِّي النَّارِ فَلَمْ تَكُنَّ نَافِزًا

The eye is the drawstring of the anus. So, whoever sleeps should then perform Wuabu':

The control one loses is not only limited to sleep, for unconsciousness, insanity, and drunkenness are more extreme ways of losing consciousness, so they too (in a way more deserving than sleep) nullify one's Wuabu'. The Prophet ﷺ said:

وُكَفِّيْنِ مِنْ عَامِضِينَ وَرَبِّيْنِ

But from feces and urine and sleep.

Here, the meaning of sleep is deep sleep, whereby the one who is sleeping is no longer aware of those who are around him.

"When one touches his private part directly with his hand...": The Prophet ﷺ said:

سَنُّ مَسَّ فَرَجَحَ فَلْيَتَوَضَّأْ

Whoever touches his private part, then let him perform Wuabu'.

Recorded by An-Nasa'i, Ibn Majah, Al-Hakim, Ad-Daraqutni, and
Imam Ahmad, from a narration of Busrah bint Safwan. It was graded *Sahih* by Al-Albani in *Al-İrwa*.

**"Eating the meat of a camel"**: Jabir bin Samurah related that a man asked the Prophet ﷺ, "Should I make Wuḍū’ after eating the meat of a camel?" He said:

» *‘Allāmā būṭā lāmadīnā lādīn*.

Yes, make *Wuḍū’* after eating the meat of a camel. (Recorded by Muslim)

But one does not have to make *Wuḍū’* after drinking the milk of a camel or after eating gravy, the source of which is a camel.

**"Apostasy, we seek refuge in Allāh from that"**: Allāh Almighty said:

> ِۚاَنِّی اِذَّنَتْ لِثَّابِتَنِّی عَلَیْکَ   

If you join others in worship with Allāh, (then) surely (all) your deeds will be in vain.\(^{[1]}\)

> وَمَنْ يَكْفُرُ بِاللَّهِ فَقَدْ حَرَّمَ عَمَّا صَانَى

And whosoever rejects faith, then fruitless is his work.\(^{[2]}\)

**"Important note: It is true that when you wash the body of a dead person, your *Wuḍū’* is not nullified..."**: Ibn Qudamah said, "This is the opinion of the majority of jurists, and - if Allāh wills - it is correct, because only from the revealed texts of the *Sharī‘ah* can we say that something is compulsory, and in regards to this issue, there is no revealed text.

**"An interpretation that is upheld by Ibn ‘Abbas and a group of scholars from both early and late generations"**: From them, are the following: ‘Aishah, and ‘Ali, may Allāh be pleased with them, ‘Ata, Al-Hasan, Tawus, Ash-Sha‘bi, ‘Ikrimah, and Sa‘id bin Juhaɪr, may Allāh have mercy on them all.

The Shaikh mentioned two issues at the end of this section about which there is disagreement: 1) washing a dead person, and 2) touching a woman. In both issues, he deemed that the stronger opinion is that the *Wuḍū’* is not nullified. And Allāh knows best.

\(^{[1]}\) *Al-Mā’idah 5:95*

\(^{[2]}\) *Al-Mā’idah 5:95*
Lesson Fifteen

Every Muslim Must Adorn Himself With Manners That Are Legislated By Islam

From those manners are the following:
1) Truthfulness
2) Trustworthiness
3) Chastity.
4) Modesty or shyness.
5) Bravery.
6) Generosity.
7) Fulfilling one’s word.
8) Staying away from all that Allāh has forbidden.
9) Being good to one’s neighbor.
10) Helping those in need, as much as one is able.
And all other manners that the Qur’an and Sunnah legislate.

After having explained the rulings for both the greater and the lesser Fiqh, the author now moves on to clarify certain Islamic manners to the general population of Muslims.

My brother Muslim — may Allāh Almighty grant us success in all that is good — you must apply those manners and become an excellent example for the people, an example of Islam’s high morals and manners.

From the very beginning, Islam spread throughout the populated lands of the earth by way of Muslim merchants and other traveling Muslims — people who were truthful and who fulfilled their trust. My hope is with Allāh Almighty, and then with you, my brother Muslim, in that you should be from those who are adorned with the greatest of manners — Islamic manners.
You must adorn yourself with every manner that Allāh or His Messenger ﷺ ordered you to apply or encouraged you to apply, for the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said:

إِنَّمَا يُعَجِّبُ لَأَنْحَمَّ تَكَامُ اللَّبَانَ

Indeed, I have only been sent to complete the noblest of manners.

Recorded by Al-Bukhari in Al-Adab Al-Mufrad as well as Ahmad and Al-Hakim with a Sāhib chain.

In another Hadīth, the Prophet ﷺ said:

إِنَّ اللَّهَ كَرَمَ  يُصَبِّحُ الَّذِينَ يَصُدُّ قُلُوبَهُمْ وَيُصَبِّحُ مَعَالَّي الْأَخْلاَقِ وَيَكُونُ مَيْتَاهُمَا

Indeed, Allāh is Generous: He loves generosity, He loves the highest of manners, while He hates the base ones.

Recorded by Al-Hakim and Abu Nu‘aym with a Sāhib chain.

Allāh Almighty described the Prophet ﷺ, saying:

وَرَيْحَ النَّعْمَانِ عَلَيْهِمُ الْحَمْدُ}

And verily, you (O Muhammad ﷺ) are on exalted standard of character.[1]

When ‘Aishah, may Allāh be pleased with her, was asked about the Prophet’s manners, she said, “His manners were the Qur’ān.” (Recorded by Muslim).

The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ would ask his Lord to guide him to righteous manners, to keep him far away from bad ones. In a Hadīth, he ﷺ said:

اللَّهُمَّ اغْفِرْ لي تُنْبِئَيْنِي وَتَحْيَاهَا غَلَابَتَا، اللَّهُمَّ اغْفِرْ لِي لَفَّاتِي عَلَى الْأَخْلاَقِ وَالْأَعْمَالِ وَالْأَطْبَاقِ، اللَّهُمَّ اغْفِرْ لِي لَفَّاتِي لَفَّاتِي إِلَّا أَنْتَ وَلَا يَضُرُّفُ نَفْسَيْنِ إِلَّا أَنْتَ

O Allāh, forgive me all of my sins and errors; O Allāh, rejuvenate me and protect me from poverty; O Allāh, guide me to good deeds and manners, for no one can guide to the good

[1] (Al-Qalam 68:4)
ones except You, and no one can ward off the bad ones except You.

Recorded by Al-Hakim and there is a witnessing narration for it according to Ibn As-Sunni, so it is a Hasan Hadith due to its many routes of transmission.

The following Hadith clearly shows the superiority of good manners:

«أَكْثِرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ إِيمَانًا أَخْسَسُوهُمْ حَالَتًا»

The most complete of believers in terms of faith is the best of them in manners.

Recorded by At-Tirmithi and Abu Dawud with a Hasan chain.

And in another narration:

«فَخَيَّارِيْمُ أَخْسَسُوهُمْ أَخْلَاقًا»

The best of you is the best from you in manners.

Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim.

The Prophetﷺ also said:

«أَكْثِرُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ أَخْسَسُوهُمْ حَالَتًا»

The most virtuous of the believers are the best of them in manners. (Recorded by Al-Hakim with a Hasan chain).

Good manners can help you get into Paradise, for the Prophetﷺ said:

«أَنَا رَاعِمُ أَحِيَّةٍ فِي أَعْظَمِ الْجَهَنَّمَ لِيُسَاهِمَنَّكُمْ حَالَتًا»

I am the guarantor of a house in the highest part of Paradise for the one who has good manners. (Recorded by Abu Dawud with a Hasan chain).

Good manners can also bring about Allâh’s love for His worshipper, for the Prophetﷺ said:

«أَحْبَبُ عِبَادَ اللَّهِ إِلَى اللَّهِ أَخْسَسُوهُمْ حَالَتًا»

The most beloved of Allâh’s worshippers to Him are the ones with the best manners. (Recorded by At-Tabarani with a Sabih chain).
Good manners can also help you gain the Prophet’s love and his closeness on the Day of Judgement; the Prophet ﷺ said:

«إنَّ من أحبَّكمُ إني وأُولِي الأمر وما خليستتم في يوم القيامة أحبَّبتمُ أخصائيكم أشدَّاًً»

Indeed, the most beloved of you to me and the ones seated closest to me from you on the Day of Judgement are those from you who have the best manners. (Recorded by At-Tirmithi with a Hasan chain)

Good manners are very heavy on your Scale of deeds; indeed, the Prophet ﷺ said:

«ما من شيء في الجزيرة أثقل من حسن الاقتراب»

There is nothing heavier on the Scale than good manners. 
(Recorded by Abu Dawud with a Sabib chain)

By having good manners, you can reach the level of the one who fasts and the one who stands late in the night to pray. The Prophet ﷺ said:

«إِنَّ الْجَنْحِيَّ الْيَوْمِ يَعْمَرُ عَلَيْهِ كَرَجَاتٍ قَأِمَ الْأَلْفِ صَٰحِبٍ نَّهاَرَ»

Indeed, through his good manners, a man reaches the levels of the one who stands at night (to pray) and the one who fasts during the day. (Recorded by Abu Dawud and Al-Hakim with a Sabib chain)

And finally, good manners can help increase you in your age and can help bring life into your home. The Prophet ﷺ said:

«حسنُ الجَنْحَى وَحسنُ الجَوَرُ يَعْمَرُانَ الْبَيْتَ وَتَوِيدُانَ في الأَعْمَالِ»

Good manners and being good to neighbors — both of these bring life to homes and cause one’s life span to be prolonged. (Recorded by Ahmad with a Sabib chain).

“Truthfulness”: The Shaikh began a list of good manners with truthfulness, a characteristic that Allah ordered us apply:

«بِكُلِّ شَيْءٍ مَا ءَاكَلْتُمْ أو مَا شَرِبْتُمْ وَمَا أَقْصَرْتُمْ مِنْ الصَّدَقَاتِ»

O you who believe! Be afraid of Allah, and be with those who are true (in the words and deeds).]

[1] (At-Tubah 9:119)
Lesson Fifteen
الدرس الخامس عشر

The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ said:

"إِنَّ الصَّلَاةِ يَهْدِي إِلَى الْبُرُّ وَإِنَّ الْبُرُّ يَهْدِي إِلَى الْجَنَّةِ، وَإِنَّ الْرَّجُلَ أَصْلَحُ حَتَّى يَكُونَ عَلَى اللَّهِ صَادِقًا."  

Indeed, truthfulness guides to righteousness; indeed, righteousness guides to Paradise. And a man continues to tell the truth until He is written with Allāh as a truthful one. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim).

The Prophet ﷺ said:

"الصَّلَاةُ طَمَانِينَةٌ وَالْكَفَّارَةُ رَبِّيَّةٌ"  

Truth is serenity while lying is uncertainty. (Recorded by At-Tirmithi).

Truthfulness involves many traits — truthfulness in speech, in promises, in appointments, in buying, and in selling. Let your slogan, my brother, be truthfulness, and in all situations, train yourself to be truthful, for it will serve as a protection.

"Trustworthiness": In many ways man is entrusted with duties, and Allāh Almighty has ordered man to fulfill the most primary of duties — all religious obligations and commandments — after the heavens and the earth declined to bear those duties:

"إِنَّمَا كَانَ الْأَمَانَةُ عَلَى الْأَمْوَةِ وَالْأَضْرَارِ وَالْجَنَّةِ فَأَطْلَقْنَهَا وَأَصِلَّنَّهَا وَهَمْ نَأَخُذَّنَهَا وَهُمْ لَا يَعْلَمُونَ مِثْلَهَا وَهُمْ لَا يَكْفِ يُونُكَ"  

Truly We did offer Al-Amanah (the trust) to the heavens and the earth, and the mountains, but they declined to bear it and were afraid of it. But man bore it. Verily, he was unjust (to himself) and ignorant (of its results).[1]

You fulfill your trust by performing deeds as Allāh Almighty ordered you to perform them. Then at another level, you have been entrusted with your wife and children; it is your responsibility to give those children a righteous upbringing. You have been entrusted with both a body and senses; therefore you must use them only in the obedience of Allāh. The Prophet ﷺ said:

[1] (Fāṭir 33:72)
Gatherings must be with trust, except for three gatherings: a gathering wherein blood is wrongly spilled, (a gathering wherein) the unlawful occurs with the private parts, (or a gathering wherein) wealth is taken from another without a right to do so. (Recorded by Abu Dawud)

At yet another level, there is a trust between husband and wife; the Prophet ﷺ said:

«إن أعظم الأمانات يوم القيامة هي أن تعطي الرجل ما عصاه، وعتصمه.»

(Al-Madeenah 33:40)

From the greatest of trusts (which are broken) with Allāh on the Day of Judgement is a man who has intimate relations with his wife and a wife who has intimate relations with her husband, and then he spreads her secrets. (Recorded by Ahmad)

Finally, one must return those things which were kept with him for safekeeping, or those things which were lent to him, returning them according to the agreement that was made, for Allāh Almighty says:

«إِنِّي أَنْزَلْتَ الْكِرَامَةَ إِلَى الْأُمَّةِ لَا تَحْذَرُوا الْأُمَّةَ إِلَّا أَنْ تُؤُدَا الْأُمَّةَ إلى أَمْلَاهَا»

(Al-Baqarah 2:225)

Verify, Allāh commands that you should render back the trust to those whom they are due.[1]

The Prophet ﷺ said:

آَذ الأُمَّةِ إِلَى مِنْ التَّمَكُّنِ وَلَا تَهْزَى مِنْ مَكَّةَ.

(Return the trust to the person who entrusted you, and do not deceive the one who has deceived you. (Recorded by At-Tirmithi and Abu Dawud with a Sahih chain).

We should try to fulfill all trusts that are given to us because, since not doing so is an indication of hypocrisy. When the Prophet ﷺ was describing the signs of a hypocrite, he said:

[1] (ArbNisa' 4:58)
And if he is trusted, he deceives.

"Chastity": In one context, the Arabic word for chastity means to protect oneself from sexual wrongdoing, a characteristic that is a must for a Muslim:

«وَإِذَا اعْتَيَنْ حَانِ»
And let those who find not the financial means for marriage keep themselves chaste, until Allâh enriches them of His bounty.\(^{[1]}\)

A Muslim protects himself from perpetrating vile and evil deeds, hoping to receive reward from Allâh. When the Prophet ﷺ was describing the seven categories of people who will be in Allâh’s Shade, one of the categories he mentioned was:

«وَرَجَّلٌ خَذَّلَ رَجُلَةَ اثْنَىَّ دَّابَّ مُتْقِيٌّ وَجَمِيعٌ قَالَانَ: يَلِيَّ أَخَافُ اللَّهُ»
And a man whom a woman possessing both status and beauty invites (to herself), and he says, “Indeed, I fear Allâh.”

In another context, the Arabic word that generally means chastity takes on the meaning of modesty and self-respect; Allâh Almighty says:

«بِعُصْمِهِمْ الرَّكَاذُ أَنْبِيَاءَ مِنْ أُمَّامٍ تَعَلَّمُوهُمْ بِعَصْمِهِمْ لَا يَسْتَطِعُونَ»
The one who knows them not, thinks that they are rich because of their modesty. You may know them by their mark, they do not beg of people at all.\(^{[2]}\)

The Prophet ﷺ said:

«الْيَدَ الْأَمْعَى خَيْرٌ مِّنَ الْيَدَ السَّمَّى وَأَنْبَا يَمْنَنتَ نَعْوَلُ، وَخَبِيرُ الصَّدَادُ مَا كَانَ عَنْ دُهْرِ عَيْنِي، وَمِنْ ٌّيْهَبِهِ مِّنْ يَتَحَتِّى بِيَدَيْهِ اللهُ وَمِنْ ٌّيْهَبِهِ مِّنْ يَتَحَتِّى بِاللَّه٥»
The upper hand is better than the lower one, and begin with

\(^{[1]}\) (An-Nur 24:33)
\(^{[2]}\) (Al-Baqarah 2:275)
those who are under your guardianship (or care). The best charity is to give that which is left after one spends on one's needs (and on one's family's needs); whoever stays away from the unlawful and from asking people, Allâh protects him; and whoever seeks independence from people (seeking total dependence on Allâh), Allâh makes him rich. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim)

"Modesty or shyness": Shyness helps prevent one from perpetrating evil deeds, acting as a barrier between man and sin. Furthermore, it prevents one from being negligent with Allâh’s rights and the rights of His creatures. The Prophet ﷺ said:

"إنّمَا أُرُدَّتِ الأُمُورُ مِنْ كَلَامِ النَّبُوتِ الأولِي إِذَا لَمْ كَثَّرْتُ فَصَاحِبَ ما

From what the people know regarding the earliest sayings of the Prophets is, ‘If you have no shame, then do as you please.’” (Recorded by Al-Bukhari)

Shyness is one of the branches of faith, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

"الإِيمَانُ يَبْعُدُ وَسُبْعَونَ سَمْعَةً، فَأَضْلَّلَهَا كَذَلِكَ لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا الَّهُ وَأَكْبَرَهَا إِزْناَبُهُ

Iman consists of more than seventy branches; the best of them is the saying, ‘None has the right to be worshipped but Allâh.’ The lowest one is to remove something harmful from a path, and shyness is one of the branches of faith. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim)

To emphasize the importance of shyness, the Prophet ﷺ said:

"الَّذِيَاءُ أَجْبَرَ رَبَّهُ

Shyness is everything that is good. (Recorded by Muslim)

And:

"إِنّ اللَّهَ غَيْبُ مَبْتَغِيهُ لِيَجْبَرُ الْحَيَاةَ وَالْمَسْرَحْ

Indeed Allâh is modest and concealed. He loves shyness and loves to cover the faults of His creatures. (Recorded by Abu Dawud, An-Nasa’i and Ahmad)
The greatest form of shyness is to be shy from Allâh Almighty, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

"استخفوا من الله حق الحبى، ومن استخفوا من الله حق الحبى فليس فحظك الزائر وما وصى والدبن وما حوى، بل ذكرهم الموت والدبن، ومن أراد الآخرة ترك زينة الدنيا، فمَن فعل ذلك فقد استخفوا من الله حق الحبى."

Be shy from Allâh with a true shyness; whoever is truly shy from Allâh, should be careful regarding his head and what it stores, and regarding his stomach and what it stores; (such a person) should remember death and passing away; whoever desires the Hereafter, leaves the beautiful things of this world. Whoever has done all of that, then he has been shy from Allâh with true shyness. (Recorded by Al-Tirmithi, Ahmad, and Al-Hakim, and it is a Hasan Hadith).

“Bravery”: Bravery is also one of the noble characteristics of the Muslim. You should know, however, that bravery lies in the heart, while strength lies in the body. The Muslim is one who says the word of truth for Allâh, without fearing the blame of anyone.

“Generosity”: We have in this regard the example of the Prophet ﷺ, about whom Ibn ʿAbbas, may Allâh be pleased with them, who said, “The Messenger of Allâh was the most generous of people.” And Allâh gave glad tidings to those believers who are generous:

"أَذْهَبْ بِفَضْلِ الْمَلَائِكَةِ، وَأَذْهَبْ بِفَضْلِ الْيَدَاءِ، وَأَذْهَبْ بِفَضْلِ الْخَالِدَةِ، فَأَطْهَرُوهُمْ عِندَ رَبِّكُمْ لاَ تَمْبِرُوهُمْ وَلاَ حَضَرَّوهُمْ.

Those who spend their wealth (in Allâh’s cause) by night and day, in secret and in public, they shall have their reward with their Lord. On them shall be no fear, nor shall they grieve.[1]

One of the best forms of generosity is that which is shown to one’s neighbors and guests, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

"ثَمَّ كَانَ يَؤْمِنُ بِاللَّهِ وَيَتَبَيَّنُ الْأَخْرَى فَأَجْلَسُوهُمْ صَدِيقًا"

Whoever believes in Allâh and in the Last Day, then let him honor his guest.

[1] (Al-Baqarah 2:274)
When given a choice between spending in the way of Allāh and between holding on to our wealth, we should consider this Hadith:

"Wa anna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm"  
O son of Adam, if you give in charity from your excess wealth then that is good for you, and if you keep it, then that is evil for you. (Recorded by Muslim and At-Tirmithī)

Whenever one spends for a good cause, Allāh rewards him with that which is better than what he spent, for Allāh Almighty says:

"Wa anna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm"  
And whatever you spend in good, it is for yourselves, when you spend not except seeking Allāh’s Face. And whatever you spend in good, it will be repaid to you in full, and you shall not be wronged. [1]

In a Qudsi Hadith, the Prophet ﷺ related that Allāh Almighty said:

"Wa anna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm"  
Spend, O son of Adam, and He (Allah) will spend on you. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim)

“Fulfilling one’s word or promise”: To fulfill one’s word or promise is one of the greatest characteristics of a Muslim; Allāh Almighty says:

"Wa anna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm"  
O you who believe! Fulfill (your) obligations. [2]

And:

"Wa anna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm inna akhīm"  
And fulfill the covenant of Allāh when you have made a covenant. [3]

[1] (Al-Baqara 2:272)  
[2] (Al-Ma’idah 5:1)  
[3] (At-Nahl 16:91)
Lesson fifteen

To not fulfill one’s promises is from the characteristics of the hypocrite; as the Prophet ﷺ was describing the traits of the hypocrite, he said:

وَإِذَا غَاهَ غَذَّرَ

If he promises, he betrays.

He ﷺ also said:

وَإِذَا وَعَدَ أَخَلَفَ

When he makes a promise, he breaks it.

Regardless of whether it is in buying, selling, or even in matters related to marriage, one should fulfill not only the agreement in general, but all of the conditions that were stipulated and agreed upon. The Prophet ﷺ said:

إِنَّ أَحْكَمَ السَّرُوطَ مَا أَسْتَخْلَّكَّمُ بِهِ النَّفَرُّ

Indeed, the most deserving of conditions are those that make another person’s private parts lawful (to you).

He ﷺ also said,

المُسْلِمُونْ عَلَى سُرُوطِهِمْ

The Muslims held to the conditions (they agree upon).

So let the Muslim beware of a stern punishment awaiting those who betray their brothers and usurp their rights.

“Staying away from all that Allâh has forbidden”: It is the responsibility of every Muslim to seek out lawful sustenance, while leaving anything that Allâh has declared to be unlawful. In a Hadîth related by Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with him, the Prophet ﷺ said:

إِنَّ اللَّهَ تَعَالَى طَبَّابَ لاَ يَغْلِبُ إِلَّا طَبَّابًا، وَإِنَّ اللَّهَ تَعَالَى أَمْرَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ يَمْنَا أَمْرُ يَوْمِ الْيَعْمَالِ

Indeed Allâh is good and pure and He doesn’t accept other than what is good and pure. And Allâh ordered the believers with the same command with which he ordered the Messengers.
For Allâh Almighty said:

" científico السّمّاءِ ما رُكِّبُوا مِنْ نَّفْسِهِمْ وَأَكَلَّوْا مَا أُهِبَّتْ إِلَيْهِ مِنْهَا."

O you who believe! Eat of the lawful things that We have provided you with, and be grateful to Allâh, if it is indeed He Whom you worship. [1]

Then the Prophet (ﷺ) mentioned:

الرجلُ يطيلُ السّمّاءَ أَشْعُبُ أَعْرُبُ يُمَدُّ يَدَّهُ إِلَى السّمّاءِ بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ وَقَلْطُمْهُ حَرَامٌ وَقَلْطُمْهُ حَرَامٌ وَقَلْطُمْهُ حَرَامٌ وَعَلِينِي بِالحَرَامِ فَأَلَّهُ بِسُبُعَجٍ

...A man on long journey, who was disheveled and dust-covered; he would raise his hands to the sky, and say, “O my Lord, O my Lord.” However, his food was unlawful, his drink was unlawful, his clothes were unlawful — he was sustained by unlawful. How is it that his prayer could be answered? (Recorded by Muslim)

The Muslim is ordered to stay far away from the unlawful, like consuming Ribâ (interest and usury):

"بِكَأْثِرِ الْبَيْتِ مُعَاذِيَ اللَّهُ وَذَوَّارُ ما بَيْنَ من أَرْبَعَةِ إِنَّكُمْ فُؤَدُّوا."

O you who believe! Be afraid of Allâh and give up what remains (due to you) from Ribâ (interest and usury) (from now onward), if you are (really) believers. [2]

Another example is to wrongfully consume the wealth of an orphan; Allâh Almighty says:

إِنَّهُمْ يَتَخَطَّمُونَ أَمَوَاتَ الْأَوْلَادِ فَلَهُمُ اللَّهُ وَأَنتُمُ امْتَلَّعُونَ فِي مَكَّةِ نَارًا رَسِمَتُهَا

Verily, those who unjustly consume the property of orphans, they eat up only fire into their bellies, and they will be burnt in

[1] (Al-Baqarah 2:172)
the blazing Fire.\footnote{\textit{Al-Nisa'} 4:1C}

And yet another example is eating from money taken through bribery:

\textit{وَكَذَٰلِكَ نَكَلُوا أَمْوَالَكُم بِالْأَغْلَامِ وَتَنَزَّلُوا بِهَا إِلَى النَّارِ} ٤٠٠

And consume not one another’s property unjustly, nor give bribery to the rulers that you may knowingly consume a part of the property of others sinfully.\footnote{\textit{Al-Baqara} 2:188}

The Muslim leaves not only what is forbidden, but also what is doubtful. The Prophet \(\text{ﷺ}\) said:

```
أَخَذْتُ مَا ثَمَرَنِقَ إِلَيْهِ مَا لَيْسَ ثَمَرَنِقَ
```

Leave that which you doubt thereof, for which you have no doubt. (Recorded by An-Nasa’i and At-Tirmithi with a \textit{Saibah} chain).

By perpetrating that which is doubtful, one is led to perpetrating that which is unlawful. The Prophet \(\text{ﷺ}\) said:

\textit{إِنَّ الْحَلَالَ بَيْنَ الْحَرَامِ بَيْنَ بَيْنَهُمَا أَمْوَدُ مَشْيَاتٍ لَا يُعَلَّمُونَ كِتَابَهُمْ} ٤٠١

Indeed, the lawful is clear and the unlawful is clear; however, between them are matters that are not clear, not many people know about those matters. Whoever avoids the unclear matters, he has protected both his religion and his honor. Whoever deals with the unclear matters, he deals with the unlawful. Like a shepherd, grazing around the limits of a sanctuary, coming close to entering it. Indeed every king has such a sanctuary; indeed the unlawful are the sanctuary of \textit{Allāh}. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim).
“Being good to one’s neighbor”: Allâh Almighty says:

وَاعْبُدُوا اللَّهَ وَلَا تَفَرَّكَا مَن يُؤْمِنُ بِالْكُفَّارِ وَمَن يَنْحَبُّ وَإِنَّهُمْ بِالْمُتَّقِينِ وَالْمُتَّقِينِ

Worship Allâh and join none with Him in worship, and do good to parents, kinsfolk, orphans, the poor, the neighbor who is near of kin, the neighbor who is a stranger, the companion by your side, the wayfarer (you meet).

Al-Qurtubi (Al-Jami‘ Al-Akbar Al-Quran Al-Karim 5:183) said, “It is correct that the order to be good to the neighbor means that it is recommended to be good to him whether he is a Muslim or a disbeliever. To do good to one’s neighbor may mean to console him, and it may mean to deal well with him, by not harming him, and by defending him.”

Allâh’s Messenger ordered being good to the neighbor, saying:

قُلْ وَرَعَاكُمْ وَنَكُونُنَا أَعْبَدُ النَّاسِ، وَقُلْ قُلِّ بَلْ أَسْكَرُ النَّاسِ، وَأَعْجَبُ للنَّاسِ

Be one who avoids certain things that are lawful for fear that they will lead to that which is forbidden, and you will be from those who are best in worship; be content, and you will be the most thankful of people. Love for others what you love for yourself, and you will be a believer. Be good to your neighbors, and you will be a Muslim. (Recorded by Ibn Majah, Abu Ya’la, and Abu Nu’aym in Al-Hîyab and it is Hasan.)

‘Aishah, may Allâh be pleased with her, related that the Prophet said:

فَأَرَأَيْتُ جَبَرِيلَ بَعْضَيْنِ بِالجِّبَارِ حَتَّى طَلَّتْ أَنَّهُ سُورَةً

Jibril continued to advise me to be good to my neighbor, so much so, that I thought he would make him one of my heirs. (Agreed upon)

One way to do good to one’s neighbor is to give him a gift. On one occasion, the Prophet said to Abu Tharr, may Allâh be pleased

[1] (AhîNisa’ 4:36)
with him:

«إِذَا صَفِحَت مَرَّةٌ فَأَثَبِّر مَا ءَامَنَ الْعَلَٰمَةَ مَثلِّهُمْ فِي چَرَائِكَ فَأَصِبِّهِمْ وَفِيهَا يَعْمَرُونَ»

When you cook broth, add more water to it, then go to your neighbor’s household, and give them a good portion thereof. (Recorded by Muslim)

Do not limit yourself in this regard, giving a gift only to the poor; rather, give gifts to your rich neighbors as well; the Prophet ﷺ said,

«خَبِيرُ الْحِجَرَانِ عِنْدَ اللَّهِ حُرُّهمْ لِيَجارَةٍ»

The best neighbor with Allâh is the one from them who deals most honorably with his neighbor. (Recorded by At-Tirmithi, Ahmad, Ad-Darimi, and Al-Hakim with a Saheeh chain).

Having a good neighbor can even help one achieve happiness, for the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said:

«أَنَّ عَمَّ اللَّهِ النَّافِعَةُ النَّارِ الإِلَّهَيْنِ ضَالُّلًا، وَالصَّالِحَةُ، وَالْمُكَابِرُ الْهَيْبِيَّةُ»

Four are from happiness: a righteous wife, a spacious home, a righteous neighbor, and a comfortable mount. (Recorded by Ibn Hibban with a Saheeh chain)

It is not only in giving things that one shows kindness to his neighbor, but it is also in ordering him to do good, forbidding him from evil, and advising him in general.

“Helping those in need, as much as one is able”: This is from the noblest of deeds, for the Prophet ﷺ said,

«وَلَّهُمَا فِي عُوَّنِ الْعَلِيّ مَا كَانَ الْعَلِيّ فِي عُوَّنِ أَجِيَّهُ»

Allâh continues to help the worshipper as long as the worshipper is helping his brother. (Recorded by Muslim)

He ﷺ also said,

«كَيْنَ كَيْنَ فِي حَاجَةِ أَحِبَّيْهِ كَانَ اللَّهُ فِي حَاجَةِكَ»

Whoever is there for his brother’s need, Allâh is there for his
need. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim)
The poor, the widows, the orphans, and those, who though not poor, in some areas are in need: all of these categories of people need help. The Prophet ﷺ said:

«المساجي على الأرامل والمساكين والمحتاجين في سبيل الله»
The one who seeks to help the widows and the poor is like the one who is fighting in the way of Allāh.
The narrator of the Hadith said, “and I think he said:

«وَالْمُتَّفَقِّمُ لا يَتَّفَقَّمُ وَالصَّامِعُ لا يَصَامُ»

and like the one who stands for prayer without tiring and the one who fasts without breaking his fast.” (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim)
Some people do not need material help in as much as they need someone to intercede for them; the Prophet ﷺ said:

«أَشْعِرُوا أَعْجَرُوا»

Intercede (for others when the cause is good and lawful) and you will be rewarded. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim)
Anytime a brother needs help from you, whether it be in a great matter or a small one, you should help him, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

«وَتَعْمِينَ الرَّجُلَ فِي خَزْيَةٍ فَتَعَجَّلْهَا عَلَيهَا أَوْ تَرْفَعْهَا لَهُ عَلَيْهَا مَنَاعَةً صَادِقَةً»

To help your brother onto his mount or to raise to him his belongings is charity. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim)
Lesson Sixteen

Taking On Islamic Manners

Here are only some of the many Islamic manners:

1) Greeting (As-Salam)
2) A smiling, cheerful face
3) Eating with your right hand, and drinking with the same
4) Before eating or drinking, one should say, “Bismillah (In the Name of Allâh).”
5) After eating or drinking, say, “Al-Hamdulillah (All praise is for Allâh)”
6) After sneezing, say, “Al-Hamdulillah.”
7) If another person sneezes and says “Al-Hamdulillah,” say, “Yarhamukallâh (May Allâh have mercy on you).”
8) Visiting the sick
9) Following a funeral — by praying the funeral prayer and attending the burial.
10) Following Islamic manners when you enter the Masjid or your home, and when you leave them,
11) Following Islamic manners when you travel, when you deal with your parents, your relatives, your neighbors, your elders, and those younger than you.
12) Congratulating parents upon the birth of a child.
13) Saying an invocation of blessings when there is a marriage.
14) Consoling the afflicted.
15) And all other Islamic manners, including the way we wear or remove our dress and shoes.

Other than the characteristics mentioned by the Shaikh, there are
many other good qualities that are mentioned in the Qur'an and the Sunnah, such as gentleness, forgiveness, honor, mercy, a heart free from rancor, patience, good speech, and humility. Shaikh 'Abdul-'Aziz bin Baz, may Allah have mercy on him, wrote a valuable dissertation entitled, "The Manners of Believing Men and Believing Women." It should be read, for it is full of great benefit.

"Greeting (As-Salam)" : To create a sense of love and unity between Muslims, it is legislated in Islam that we give greetings of peace to one another:

根據文件內容，來自於《古蘭經》和《聖訓》的內容

When you are greeted with a greeting, greet in return with what is better than it, or (at least) return it equally.¹

When asked which Islam is best, the Prophet said:

To feed others and to give greetings of peace to both he whom you know and he whom you know not. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim)

Al-Bara' said, "The Prophet ordered us with seven matters; one of the matters he mentioned was

"توأزوءاء السلام"

to spread greetings of peace." (Al-Bukhari)

And the Prophet said:

Indeed, from the rights of a Muslim over another Muslim is that when one meets the other, he should give him greetings of peace. (Agreed upon)

Spreading greetings of peace causes Muslim brothers to love one another, which is what we need to enter Paradise, for the Prophet said:

لا تدخلوا الجنة حكى تؤوينوا ولا تؤوينوا حكى تحايوا أز لا أكلكم على

¹ (Al Nisa' 486)
Lesson Sixteen

You will not enter Paradise until you believe, and you will not believe until you love one another. Shall I not guide you to something, that were you to do it, you would love one another: Spread greetings of peace among yourselves. (Recorded by Muslim)

"Imran bin Husain, may Allâh be pleased with him, said that on one occasion, while the Prophet was seated, a man came to him and said, 'As-Salaamu 'Alaikum' (Peace be upon you)." After the Prophet returned the greeting and after the man sat down, the Prophet said, "Ten." Then another man came and said, 'As-Salaamu 'Alaikum wa Rahmatullah.' After the Prophet returned his greeting and after the man sat down, the Prophet said, "Twenty." Finally, another man came and said the full greeting: 'As-Salaamu 'Alaikum wa Rahmatullahi wa Barakaatubu' (Peace be upon you, and Allâh's mercy and blessings [also be upon you])." He answered him, the man sat down, and then the Prophet said "Thirty," each time referring to the number of rewards achieved by the one who greeted him. It was recorded by Abu Dawud, and At-Tirmithi with a Sahib chain.

There are a number of manners we should keep in mind regarding the Islamic greeting:

1) We should not gesture when we greet one another, unless the gesture is accompanied by the verbal saying.

2) When you enter a room where some people are awake and others are sleeping, give greeting of peace, but in a low voice. The Prophet would give greetings in such a way as to not wake up one who was sleeping, yet allowing the one who was awake to hear. (Recorded by Muslim).

3) The Prophet said:

\[\text{سَلَّمُ الْرَّأَبِ عَلَى الْمَائِيَ وَالْمَائِيَ عَلَى الْقَاعِدِ وَالْقَاعِدِ عَلَى الْكَبِيرِ} \]

The rider should greet the one walking, the one who is
walking should greet the one who is sitting, and those that are few in number should greet those who are greater in number. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim).

In the narration of Al-Bukhari, the Prophet ﷺ also said:

وَالخَادِمُ عَلَى الْخَادِمٍ

And the young one should greet his elder.

4) When you enter your home, it is recommended for you to give greetings of peace, for Allah says:

إِذَا دَخَلَتُ مَعَكَ فَعِبْدُكُمْ خَلَقُهُمْ بِإِنَّ بَنَيَّةَ مَسْجِدِهِ مُطْهِرًا

But when you enter the houses, greet one another with a greeting from Allah, blessed and good. \[1\]

5) You are not permitted to initiate greetings of peace when you meet a disbeliever, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

لا تَبَارَكَا النَّاسُ وَلَا التَّصَارُّى بِالسَّلاَمِ

Do not initiate greetings of peace when you meet the Jews or the Christians.

However, if they extend to you greetings of peace, you may answer them with, “Wa Alaikum (and upon you).” In a Hadith related by Anas, the Prophet ﷺ said:

إِذَا سَلَمَ عَلَيْكُمْ أَهْلُ الْكَنَّاءِ فَوَلَوْا وَعَلَيْكُمْ

If someone from the People of the Book gives you a greeting of peace, then say, “Wa Alaikum.” (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim)

6) Not only should you greet people when you enter a gathering, you should also greet them when you leave that gathering. The Prophet ﷺ said:

إِذَا أَنْهَيْتُ أَحْدَثُمْ إِلَى الْمَجْلِسِ فَيُسَلَّمُنِ فَإِذَا أَرَادَ أنْ يُقُومُ فَيُسَلَّمُ

If one of you stops at a gathering, let him give greetings of peace; and if he wishes to leave, let him give greetings of

Lesson Sixteen

peace: the first greeting is not more worthy than the second (i.e., it is important to give both). (Recorded by Abu Dawud and At-Tirmithi).

“A smiling, cheerful face”: In a Hadith related by Abu Tharr, may Allah be pleased with him, the Prophet ﷺ said:

«لا تَحْيَرْنَّ منَّ الْمُؤَخِّرِينَ سَيِّئًا وَلَّوْ أَنْ نَلْقَى أَحَدَكُمْ رَجُلًا طَيِّبًا»

Do not look down upon any good deed, not even to meet your brother with a cheerful face. (Recorded by Muslim)

In another Hadith, he ﷺ said:

«تَبَـسِّمْ كَـيْفَ أَخْيَاكُ لَنَّ صِدَاقَةٌ»

To smile in the face of your brother is charity given on your behalf. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari in Al-Adab Al-Mufrad and At-Tirmithi with a Sahib chain).

So cheerful was the countenance of the Prophet ﷺ that one of his Companions, Jarir bin ‘Abdullah, said, “Since the day I accepted Islam, the Messenger of Allah ﷺ would never meet me without smiling in my face.” (Recorded by Al-Bukhari in Al-Adab Al-Mufrad with a Sahib chain).

A smiling face indicates a good quality and causes blessed results — it indicates that one’s heart is free of rancor and it causes affection to grow between Muslims.

“Eating with your right hand, and drinking with the same”: The Prophet ﷺ said:

إِذَا أَكَلْتُ أَكْلًا وَأُشْرَبْتُ أَشْرِبًا أَكْلًا وَأُشْرَبْتُ أَشْرِبًا قَالَ الْفَلِيْسَةُ وَالْبَلاْدُ فَأَكْلَتْ فَأُشْرِبَتْ يَبْتَغُونَ فَايْضَاتَنَّ يَبْتَغُونَ قَهْرَانَاتَنَّ

When one of you eats, let him eat with his right hand; and when one of you drinks, let him drink using his right hand, for verily, the Skaitan eats with his left and drinks with his left. (Recorded by Muslim)

Here are some more manners to keep in mind when you eat:

1) To mention Allah’s Name and to eat what is closest to you, for the Prophet ﷺ said:
O young boy, mention Allâh’s Name, eat with your right (hand), and eat that which is closest to you. Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim

2) While you are eating, do not lean on something to relax. The Prophet ﷺ said,

«إِنِّي لَا أُفْخَذُ مَنْ كُنيتِي»

Indeed, I do not eat, reclining (on something). (Recorded by Al-Bukhari)

3) If a morsel of food falls to the ground, eat it nonetheless. Jabir, may Allâh be pleased with him, related that the Prophet ﷺ said:

«إِذَا وَقَعَتْ أَلْفَةُ أُحَدَّمَ فَلَا بَعْدُهَا نَقِيهِ فَلَنَفِئُ ما كَانَ يَخُذُهَا مِنْ أَطْفَالِهَا وَلَا يَدْعُهَا إِلَيْهِمْ»

If a morsel of food belonging to one of you should fall down, pick it up, clean off any filth that may have attached itself, and then eat it, but don’t leave it for the Shaitan. (Recorded by Muslim)

4) Do not find fault with the food you eat. Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with him, said, “The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ never found fault with food; if he desired something, he would eat it; if he disliked something, he would (simply) leave it.” (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim).

5) It is recommended to lick clean both the plate one eats from and his fingers. In a Hadith related by Muslim, the Prophet ﷺ ordered us to do so and then said:

«إِنَّكُمْ لَا تُذُورُونَ فِي أَيْنَ عِلَمَتُكُمْ الْبُرْكَةُ»

Indeed, you do not know where the blessing is.

In the narration of At-Tirmithi, it is:

«إِنَّكُمْ لَا تُذُورُونَ فِي أَيْنَ عِلَمَتُكُمْ الْبُرْكَةُ»

Indeed you do not know in which portion of your food is the blessing.
Lesson Sixteen

6) When you finish your meal, you should do as the Prophet ﷺ did: he would supplicate, saying:

الحمدلله اللَّهُ إِنّي نَظَرُوْنا وَأَرَوْنا عِنْدَهُ مَكْفَهًا وَلَا مَكْفِيٰ

All the praise and thanks are to Allâh Who has satisfied our needs and quenched our thirst. Your favor cannot be compensated or denied. (Recorded by Al-Bukhârî).

"Following Islamic manners when you enter the Majíd or your home and when you leave them": As the Muslim is entering the Majíd, it is recommended for him to enter with his right foot first, and then for him to say:

رسِمَ اللَّهُ والعَلاَمَة وَالسَّلَام على رَسُولِ اللَّهِ ﴿مَعَ أُبَيْنِ ثَوَابٍ﴾

In the Name of Allâh, and prayers and peace be upon the Messenger of Allâh, O Allâh, open the gates of Your mercy for me. (Recorded by Muslim and Abu Dawûd).

When a Muslim enters his home, he should mention Allâh’s Name, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

وَأَنَا كَذَّلِكَ النَّارَ مِلْعَنَتَهُ فَذَكَّرْ إِنَّ اللَّهَ كَانَيْ جَنِينَ يَذُّكَرُ وَجَنِينَ يَطْعُمُ قَالَ السَّعِيدُ لِي أَهْلِهِ! أَدْخُلوُهُمُ وَلَا تَسْقُطُ هَالَّةُ هَالَّةٌ إِنَّكَ لَمْ تَذُّكَرْ إِنَّ اللَّهَ عَلَى فُطُّهُمُ قَالَ: أَذْكُرُهُمُ الْمَيْتَ وَالْعَلَايَاءِ

When a man enters his home and mentions Allâh’s Name upon entering and upon eating a meal, the Shaitan says (to his fellow devils), “There is no place for you to sleep here and there is no dinner for you over here.” If he doesn’t mention Allâh’s Name upon entering, the Shaitan says (to his fellow devils), “You have found your place of rest for the night.” And if he doesn’t mention Allâh’s Name upon eating, the Shaitan says, “You have reached your place of rest for the night and your dinner.” (Recorded by Muslim, Abu Dawûd, and Ibn Majâh).

It is also recommended to say the supplication mentioned in the
following Hadith:

إِذَا أَخَذَ الرَّجُلُ بَيْنَ يَدَيِهِ اللَّهُمَّ إِنَّمَا أَتَّلَكَ حَيْثَ اِمْتَوَىَ وَجَابَ المَخْرُجُ يَسْأَلُ اللَّهَ وَيُنَبِّئُ اللهَ حَرَجًا وَتَعُلُّا رَبَا نَوْقَلَنَا ةَمْ يَسَّأَلَ عَلَى أَهْلِهِ

When one of you enters his home, he should say, “O Allah, I ask of you the best of entrances and the best of exits. In the Name of Allah we enter and in the Name of Allah we leave, and upon our Lord we place our trust.” Thereafter he should give greetings of peace to his family. (Recorded by Abu Dawud with a Sabih chain).

When a Muslim leaves the Majid, he should begin with his left foot, saying:

بَسْمَ اللَّهِ وَالْمَلَائِكَةَ وَالشَّهَادَةِ عَلَى رَسُولِ اللَّهِ ﷺ إِنَّمَا إِيَّاهُ آثَارُ مِنْ فَضْلِكَ

In the Name of Allah, and blessings and peace be upon the Messenger of Allah. O Allah, I ask You from Your favor. (Recorded by Muslim and Abu Dawud)

In the following Hadith, the Prophet ﷺ also told us what to say when we leave our home:

إِذَا خَرَجَ الرَّجُلُ مَنْ بَيْنَ يَدَيِهِ: يَسْأَلُ اللَّهُ وَيُنَبِّئُ اللَّهَ حَرَجًا وَتَعُلُّا أَنَّ لَهُ الْاَنْفَصَالُ إِلَّا بِاللَّهِ، فَقَالَ: حَسُبُكَ أَنْ هَذِهِ وَقَدْ ثَمِّيتَ وَتَصَنِّيفًا، كَيْبُحُجَّتْ أَنَّ السَّيِّدَانًا فِيْنَعَ مُهْلِكَ أَنْ حَصِبَ تَصَنِّيفًا؟

When a man leaves his home, he should say, “In the Name of Allah; I place my trust in Allah, and there is no might nor power except with Allah.” It will be said, “That is sufficient for you; you have been guided, sufficed, and protected.” The Shaytan (devil) will move out of his way and another devil will say to the first, “How can you get to a man who has been guided, sufficed, and protected?” (Recorded by Abu Dawud and An-Nasa'i with a Sabih chain)

“Following Islamic manners when you travel”:

There are certain manners that you must adhere to when you travel:

1) In an Islamic way, you should bid farewell to those you leave behind. The Prophet ﷺ said:
Lesson Sixteen

Whoever is about to travel should say to those he leaves behind, “I place you in the trust of Allāh, whose trust is never misplaced.” (Recorded by Abu Dawud with a Saḥīḥ chain)

2) As you are about to travel, say the supplication that is specific to traveling. ʿAbdullāh bin ʿUmar, may Allāh be pleased with them, said:

إِنَّ رَسُولَ الله ﷺ صَلَّى اللَّهُ مَلَكَّهُ وَسَلَّمَ كَانَ إِذَا اسْتَوْى عَلَى بَيْتِهِ خَارِجًا إِلَى سِقَةٍ كَبِيرَةٍ كَثِيرًا مَّتَى مَرَّ قَالَ: شَيْخُانُ الْأَلْبَيْيِ سَكَّرْتُ آنَا حَتَّى رَوَمَتْهُ مَوْتُهُنَّ وَمَا إِلَيْهِ مَعَنُوْنَ وَإِنَّ الْأَلْبَيْيِ مَنْ أَرْضَى، الْلَّهُمَّ كُونْ عَلَيْنَا سَفِرًا نَّنا وَاِلْبَلْوَةُ عَلَى بَيْتِهِ الْأَلْبَيْيِ أَعْرُفُ يَكُونُ عَلَيْنَا سَفِرًا نَّنا وَالْبَلْوَةُ عَلَى بَيْتِهِ الْأَلْبَيْيِ أَعْرُفُ يَكُونُ عَلَيْنَا سَفِرًا نَّنا وَالْبَلْوَةُ عَلَى بَيْتِهِ الْأَلْبَيْيِ أَعْرُفُ يَكُونُ عَلَيْنَا سَفِرًا نَّنا وَالْبَلْوَةُ عَلَى بَيْتِهِ الْأَلْبَيْيِ أَعْرُفُ يَكُونُ عَلَيْنَا سَفِرًا نَّنا وَالْبَلْوَةُ عَلَى بَيْتِهِ الْأَلْبَيْيِ أَعْرُفُ يَكُونُ عَلَيْنَا سَفِرًا نَّنا وَالْبَلْوَةُ عَلَى بَيْتِهِ الْأَلْبَيْيِ أَعْرُفُ يَكُونُ عَلَيْنَا سَفِرًا نَّنا وَالْبَلْوَةُ عَلَى بَيْتِهِ الْأَلْبَيْيِ أَعْرُفُ يَكُونُ عَلَيْنَا سَفِرًا نَّنا وَالْبَلْوَةُ عَلَى بَيْتِهِ الْأَلْبَيْيِ A

Indeed, when the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ would be seated upon his mount, about to travel, he would say “Allāhu Akbar” (Allāh is the Most Great) three times, and then he would say, “How perfect He is, the One Who has placed this (transport) at our service, and we ourselves would not have been capable of that, and to our Lord is our final destiny. O Allāh, we ask You for righteousness and piety in this journey of ours, and we ask You for deeds which please You. O Allāh, facilitate our journey and let us cover its distance quickly. O Allāh, You are the Companion on the journey, and the Successor over the family. O Allāh, I take refuge with You from the difficulties of travel, from having a change of heart and being in a bad predicament, and I take refuge in You from an ill—fated outcome in terms of wealth and family.”

When he would start his return journey, he would say the same, except he would add:
"We return, repenting to, worshipping, and praising our Lord.” (Recorded by Muslim).

4) Because it is from Allâh’s favor that He has lightened certain rulings for the traveler, when you travel you should apply those lightened rulings; for instance, you should shorten your prayers; if needed, you may join them; you may continue to wipe over your socks for three days along with their nights; and you may break your fast.

“when you deal with your parents”: Being good to your parents is one of the greatest forms of worship; in fact, Allâh mentioned His right along with the right of parents, and He mentioned ill-treatment of parents along with the association of partners with Him. Allâh Almighty says:

وَمَنْ كَفَرَ فَلاَ يَعْتَرَفْنَ بِكُلِّ ذَلِكَ كُفُّاً إِنَّا سَوَّيْهِمُ فَسَّنَّهُمْ يَعْمَلُونَ إِنَّ اللَّهَ عَلِيمٌ بِذَلِكَ

And whoever disbelieved, let not his disbelief grieve you, to Us is their return, and We shall inform them what they have done. Verily, Allâh is the All-Knower of what is in the breasts (of men).[1]

And:

وَوَضَبَّنَا لَهُمَا أَمْرَيْنَاء حَمِّيْدَتُهَا أَمَّهَانَ نَعْمَانَ عَلَى وَهَبَنَ لَهُمَا في غَيْرِ أَن يَمْسَكَنَّهُمْ لِوَلَدَيْهِ بَيْنَهُمَا أَيَّامَهُمْ دَارًا

And We have enjoined on man (to be dutiful and good) to his parents. His mother bore him in weakness and hardship upon weakness and hardship, and his weaning is in two years, give thanks to Me and to your parents, to Me is the final destination.[2]

There are many instances in the Sunnah wherein the Prophet highlighted the importance of being good to one’s parents.

---

[1] (Israa’ 51:23)
Lesson Sixteen

Ibn Mas'ud, may Allâh be pleased with him, once said, “I asked the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ which deed is most beloved to Allâh?” He said:

«الصلاة في وقته»

“Prayer in its time.”

Ibn Mas’ud then asked, “And then which?” He said,

«والوالديين»

“Dutifulness to one’s parents.”

“Then which?” He said,

«الجهاد في سبيل اللات»

“Fighting in the way of Allâh.” (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim)

‘Abdullah bin ‘Amr related that a man said, “O Messenger of Allâh, I pledge allegiance to you: to emigrate and to perform Jihad.” The Prophet ﷺ asked:

«هل من والديك أحسن خطى؟»

“Are any of your parents alive?”

He said, “Yes, both of them.” The Prophet ﷺ asked,

«فثبتتني الآخر من الله تعالى»

“And you seek reward from Allâh?”

He said, “Yes.” And then the Prophet ﷺ commanded:

«فارج إلى والديك وأحسن صحبيما»

“Then go back to your parents and be a good companion to them.” (Recorded by Muslim)

Being dutiful to one’s parents is one of the causes to enter Paradise. Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with him, related that he heard the Messenger of Allâh ﷺ say:

«زغتم أليه زغتم أليه زغتم أليه»

“Ignominy upon him, ignominy upon him, ignominy upon him.”
He was asked, “Upon whom, O Messenger of Allah?” He ﷺ said:

“Whoever has one or both of his parents with him when they reach old age and then does not enter Paradise.” (Recorded by Muslim)

The Prophet ﷺ also said:

«الوَلَادُ أَوْرَثَتْ أُبُوَّةَ الْجَنَّةِ»

The father is the middle door (from among the doors) of Paradise. (Recorded by At-Tirmithi and Ibn Majah with a Sahih chain)

Mu‘awiyah bin Jahimah, may Allah be pleased with them, related that his father, Jahimah, went to the Prophet ﷺ and said, “O Messenger of Allah, I wished to fight, so I came here seeking your counsel.” The Prophet ﷺ asked:

«هُلْ أَنَّكَ فِي أَمِّي»

“Do you have a mother (who is alive)?” He said, “Yes.”

«فَاتَّرَمَّهَا فَإِنَّ الْجَنَّةَ عَنْدَ رَجُلِيَّهَا»

“Stick close to her, for verily, Paradise is at her leg.” (Recorded by An-Nasa‘i and Ahmad with a Sahih chain.)

In another narration, the Prophet ﷺ said:

«الرَّمَّةُ فَإِنَّ الْجَنَّةَ تِحْتَ أَفْنَادِهَا»

“Stick close to her, for verily, Paradise is under her feet.” (Recorded by An-Nasa‘i and Ahmad with a Sahih chain).

Being dutiful to one’s parents is a cause which leads to Allah’s pleasure, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

الرَّضَا الرَّبُّ فِي رَضَا الْوَلَادَيْنِ وَشَحْطَةٌ فِي شَحْطَتِهَا

The pleasure of the Lord is in the parents’ pleasure; His anger is in their anger.

Moreover, being dutiful to one’s parents leads to an increase in
sustenance and life; the Prophetﷺ said:

"مَسَاءَةُ الْيَوْمِ ۖ أَنْ تَعْمَلُوا فِي عُمُونِ " وَإِذَا ضَرَّتُ عُمُونُ أَنْ يُسْتَعْلَى "وَعَلِيمُ " رَجُمَّـهُمَا "أَوْ أَطِعُ " وَإِذَا وَلَىَّكُمْ فَهُمْ بِهِمَا عَلِيمُ أَلْتَجُرُّ "وَأَوْلَّىَ " يُعْلَمُونَ، وَإِذَا أَمَرَّكُمْ أَنْ تُؤْكِلُوا " وَإِذَا أَمَرَّكُمْ أَنْ تُعْلِمُوا " وَإِذَا أَمَرَّكُمْ أَنْ تُؤْخَذُوا نَفْسَكُمَا، وَعَلِيمُ أَلْتَجُرُّ لَهُمَا... "

Whoever wishes to have his life extended and his sustenance increased, then let him be dutiful to his parents and let him nurture relations with his relatives. (Recorded by Ahmad)

In fact, being dutiful to one’s parents causes all good, wards off all evil; here are a number of ways in which you can fulfill your duty to them:

1) Feed them, clothe them, serve them, and answer them when they call you.
2) Obey them, for the Prophetﷺ said:

"وَأَطِعُ " وَإِذَا وَلَىَّكُمْ فَهُمْ بِهِمَا عَلِيمُ أَلْتَجُرُّ "وَأَطِعُ " وَإِذَا أَمَرَّكُمْ أَنْ تُؤْكِلُوا " وَإِذَا أَمَرَّكُمْ أَنْ تُعْلِمُوا " وَإِذَا أَمَرَّكُمْ أَنْ تُؤْخَذُوا نَفْسَكُمَا، وَعَلِيمُ أَلْتَجُرُّ لَهُمَا... "

Obey your parents, if they command you to leave your land then leave it for them. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari in Al-Adab Al-Mufrad with a Sahl chain)

3) Be humble with them and speak gently with them.
4) Do not call them by their names.
5) When you walk with them, walk behind them.
6) Do to them what you would like to be done to you, and hate for them what you would hate for yourself.
7) Whenever you pray to Allâh, ask Him to forgive them.
8) Honor your parents’ friends.

But know that whatever you do to show your duty toward them, you can never fulfill the rights they have upon you, so great are their rights. The Prophetﷺ said:

"لَا يَحْزَني وَلَدُ وَالدَّةُ إِلَّا أَنْ يُحْزَنى مَثَلَّهُمَا يُحْزَنُهُمَا، وَلَا يَحْزَني وَلَدُ وَالدَّةُ إِلَّا أَنْ يُحْزَنى مَثَلَّهُمَا يُحْزَنُهُمَا.

A son cannot pay his father back unless he finds him a slave, buys him, and then sets him free. (Recorded by Muslim)

“your relatives”: Abu Ayyub, may Allâh be pleased with him, related that when a desert Arab asked the Prophetﷺ to inform him of what would bring him closer to Paradise and farther away from the Fire, Heﷺ said:
Worship Allâh, and do not associate any partners with Him; establish the prayer; pay the compulsory charity; and join relations with your relatives. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim).

Abu Hurairah may Allâh be pleased with him, reported that the Prophet ﷺ said:

«هَلَّلَ اللَّهُ عَزَّ وَجَلَّ الْخَلْقَ فَلَمَّا قَرَعَ مِنْهُ قَامَتْ الرَّجُمُ فَقَالَ مَاذَا قَالَهَا؟ قَالَ هَذَا مَقَامُ الْعَالِمِ إِلَّا مِنْ النَّطْعِةِ قَالَ أَلَا تَرْضَى أَنْ أُصِيبَنَّ مِنَ الْوَصَلِّ وَأَقْلِعْ مِنْ نَطْعِهَا قَالَ بَلْ يَأْتِي بَارِثَ فَأَقْلِعْ فَذَلِكَ لِكَ»

Allâh Almighty created the creation, and when He finished doing so, the womb stood. Allâh said, “What is this?” It said, “This is where refuge is sought in You from those who cut off relations.” He said, “Are you not pleased that I will join those that are good to you and that I will cut off those who cut you off.” It said, “Indeed, yes, O my Lord.” And then He said, “Then that is for you.”

After mentioning the Hadith, Abu Hurairah said, “And recite, if you wish:

«فَهِلَ عُسْتَهُ إِنْ تَأْتَمْ أَنْ تَفْسَدْ فِي الأَرْضِ وَيَقُولُوا أَيْنُ السَّمَكَ»

Would you then, if you were given the authority, do mischief in the land, and sever your ties of kinship? (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim)

Like in obedience to one’s parents, joining relations with relatives by dealing honorably and kindly with them also causes one’s life to be prolonged, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

«فَمَنْ أَحَبَّ أَنْ يَبْسَطَ لَهُ فِي رَزْقِهِ وَأَنْ يُسَأَلَهُ فِي أَمْرِهِ فَتَلْيَ جَمِيعُ رَجْمَهُ»

Whoever would love for his sustenance to be made abundant for him and for his time (of death) to be delayed, then let him

[1] (Muhammad 47:22)
join ties with relatives. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Abu Dawud)

To join ties means to avoid hurting one’s relatives; it means to visit them, to pray for them, to help them financially, to order them to do good, to forbid them from evil, and to advise them. Allah Almighty said to His Prophet:

وَأَنْذِرْ عَشَرْيَنَّ إِلَيْهِمْ

And warn your tribe of near kindred[1]

“your neighbors”: Refer to lesson fifteen, where this topic has been discussed.

“your elders”: During a dispute, when one was required to speak before the Prophet ﷺ, the youngest one present attempted to speak; the Prophet ﷺ said:

كُئِلْ كَثِيرًا

Older, older.

Admonishing the young man for having spoken before his elders had the opportunity to speak. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim)

The Prophet ﷺ said:

إِنَّ مِنْ إِجَلاَسِ اللَّهِ غَالَى إِنْ تَزَامَنَ فِي الْبَيْتِ الْمُسْلِمِ وَخَافَ الْيَوْمَ الْأَخَرَ غَالَى

Indeed, from the ways of glorifying Allah is to honor praying Muslim; the one who carries with him the Qur’an, who neither deals extremely with it nor turns away from it; and the just leader. (Recorded by Abu Dawud, and it is Sahih)

He ﷺ also said:

أَلِسْ وَاَنَا مِنْ أَمْ مُّرَحَّمٌ صَغِيرًا وَيَغَفُّرُ شَرْفَ كَبِيرًا

He is not from us who neither shows mercy to the young from us nor knows the honor of the old from us. (Recorded by Abu Dawud and At-Tirmithi and it is Sahih).

[1] (Asb-Shur’aa 26:21-4)
To honor our elders also means to honor our scholars, because by their knowledge and virtues, they too deserve veneration.

"and those younger then you": The Prophet said:

«لا يَتَغَدَّىِّ مَنْ أَمَّهُ يَتَغَدَّى»

He is not from us who does not show mercy to the young from us. (Recorded by Abu Dawud and At-Tirmithi)

He used to show compassion and mercy to children, playing with them and showing kind patience in the face of their whims. For instance, he carried his granddaughter, Ummamah, during prayer. He would play with Al-Hasan and Al-Husain. On one occasion he used rhythmic words to make the brother of Anas bin Malik, Abu ‘Umair feel better. The latter was perhaps feeling sad after his pet bird, Nughair, died, and the Prophet said jokingly:

أَيَا أَبَا عُمَّارِيَّ مَا قَعَلَ اللَّغُرِّ

O Abu ‘Umair, what has An-Nughair done.

"Congratulating someone upon the birth of a child": Because this practice brings happiness into the heart of a Muslim, one should strive to congratulate the new parents, praying for them and for their newborn. Muslim related that Al-Hasan Al-Basri taught a man how to congratulate another on the occasion of a new born: “May you be blessed in what you have been bestowed with; may you thank He that gave; may your child reach the age of reason, and may you be blessed by him being dutiful to you.” In another narration Al-Hasan taught him to say, “May Allâh make him blessed for you and for the nation of Muhammad.” (Recorded by At-Tabarani with a Hasan chain)

After saying that it is recommended to give congratulations upon the birth of a child, Imam An-Nawawi said, “Our companions (i.e., those who are from his school of thought in jurisprudence) said, It is recommended to give congratulations upon the birth of a child, just as Al-Husain, may Allâh be pleased with him, taught a man to say the following: “May Allâh bless you in what you have been given; may He make you thankful to the One Who gave; may your child grow up to maturity; and may you be blessed by him being dutiful to you.” If you are the father and have been congratulated, it is recommended
for you to answer, “May Allâh bless you and send blessings upon you; may He reward you well; may He provide you with one similar; and may He increase your rewards.” It is recommended to say this or something similar.

“Consoling the afflicted”: The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ said:

«فَإِنَّ عَزْرَى أَحَدَهَا لِلَّهِ ﺃُمَوَّرَى ﺃُمْسِكَةَ اسْتَثْقَارًا ﻓِي عَذَابٍ ﻓِيهِ ﻓِي عَذَابٍ يُؤْمِنُ ﺑِهِ ﺑَيُومِ النُّجُومِ»

Whoever consoles his brother believer in his adversity, Allâh will attir him with a green dress on the Day of Judgement, for which he will be envied.

It was recorded by Al-Khattib in Tarikh Baghdad and Ibn ‘Asakir, and there is a supporting narration for it with Ibn Abu Shaybah. It is a Hasan Hadith which Al-Albani graded Hasan in Al-Irâa’ no. 15.

When you console people who are afflicted, you should say those words that will bring them comfort, that will drive away their grief—words that strengthen those that are grieved, making them patient, and satisfied with Allâh’s Decree. You can either use words that have been related from the Prophet ﷺ or you can say any kind words, as long as they do not contradict the Shari’ah. When the Prophet ﷺ was comforting his daughter for her loss, he said:

إِنَّ اللَّهَ مَا أَحَدَّ وَلَهُ تَلَقُّى وَلَا أَغْلَفَ وَلَا يَعْثَبُ إِلَّا أَجْلَاءَ أَمْسِكَى قَلْبِهِ

Indeed to Allâh belongs what He takes, and to Allâh belongs what He gives; everything with him is until an appointed term, so be patient and seek your reward from Him. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim).

An-Nawawi said, “This Hadith is the best form of consoling someone.”

When the Prophet ﷺ met Umm Salamah after her loss, he ﷺ said:

اللَّهُمَّ لِتَمْنَعَنِ اسْتَثْقَارَةَ اسْتَثْقَارِيَّةً ﻓِي ﺍسْتَثْقَارٍ ﻓِي ﺍسْتَثْقَارٍ ﻓِي ﺍسْتَثْقَارٍ ﻓِي وَبَرَاءَةِ وَأَعْفَاءَ ﻟَنَا وَلَهُ ﺑَيُرَبُّ ﺍسْتَثْقَارَةً ﻓِي ﺍسْتَثْقَارٍ ﻓِي ﺍسْتَثْقَارٍ ﻓِي ﺍسْتَثْقَارٍ ﻓِي

O Allâh, forgive Abu Salamah; raise him in ranking with those
whom you have guided, and leave behind for him from his progeny from those who remain. Forgive us and him, O Lord of all that exists; make his grave spacious for him and illuminate it for him. (Recorded by Muslim).

There is no set period, beyond which one should not console someone — some people mistakenly think that the limit is three days, while others have mentioned other limits. In one narration, the Prophet ﷺ consoled the family of Ja'far after three nights.

"And all other Islamic manners...": Islam has legislated many manners for the Muslim, manners that cover every aspect of his life: manners for going to the washroom, for going to the "Majid," for visiting the sick, for sitting in a gathering, for seeking knowledge, for walking in the road, for visiting brothers, for talking, and so on. Though we have mentioned some Islamic manners here, we have certainly not mentioned them all; there are books that deal specifically with Islamic manners, such as *Al-Adab Al-Mufrad* by Ibn Muflih, and *Al-Adab Al-Shar'iyyah* by Al-Bukhari.
A Warning Against *Shirk* (Associating partners with Allâh) And Different Kinds Of Sins

One category of sins is called "The seven grave (and deadly) sins":

1) Associating partners with Allâh (*Shirk*).
2) Magic.
3) Killing a person, an act which Allâh has forbidden, unless there is an Islamic reason.
4) Consuming usury (interest).
5) Consuming the wealth of orphans.
6) Fleeing on the day of battle.
7) Accusing chaste, innocent, believing women of wrongdoing.

These are also great sins:

- Being undutiful to one's parents.
- Cutting off ties with relatives.
- Giving false testimony.
- Making false oaths.
- Hurting one's neighbor.
- Wrongfully shedding the blood of others.
- Wrongfully taking the wealth of others.
- Wrongfully attacking the honor of others.
- Drinking any form of alcohol.
- Gambling.
- Backbiting.
- Spreading false rumors.
- And all other sins that Allâh Almighty and His Messenger ﷺ have prohibited.

★ ★ ★
“The seven grave and deadly sins”: The Prophet ﷺ mentioned them all in one Hadith when he ﷺ said:

الجَنَّةُ لَا تَشْرَكُ بِهِ اللَّهُ وَلَيْسَ هَلْكَ وَلا شَجَرٌ، وَقَلِلَ النَّفْسُ الَّيْبِيْ حَرَّمَ اللهُ إِلَّا يَلْحَنَّو، وَأَقِلَ الزَّبَاء، وَأَقِلَ الْمَالِ الْيَبِيمِ، وَالثَّلُوْبِيْ يَوْمُ الزَّجَافِن، وَقَلِلَ الْمَحْصُرَاتِ المُؤْمِنِينَ الْعَافِيَاتِ

Stay away from the seven grave sins: associating partners with Allāh; magic; killing a person whose life Allāh has made sacred except with a right; consuming usury; consuming the wealth of orphans; fleeing on the day of battle; slandering chaste, innocent, believing women. (Agreed upon)

“Associating partners with Allāh (Shirk)”: Shirk means to dedicate any kind of worship to other than Allāh. (Refer to lesson four, where we have already discussed Shirk and its different categories.) Both Allāh ﷻ — in His Book — and the Prophet ﷺ — in his Sunnah — have warned us against Shirk. Relating to us the words of Luqman, Allāh Almighty says:

لا تَشْرَكُ بِهِ اللَّهُ وَلَيْسَ هَلْكَ وَلا شَجَرٌ

“O my son! Join not in worship others with Allāh. Verily! Joining others in worship with Allāh is a great wrong indeed.”[1]

The Prophet ﷺ said to his Companions:

لا أَنْبِكَمُ يَا أَوْلَي الْكُتُبِ ۚ..."

“Should I inform you of the greatest of the great sins.”

They said, “Yes, O Messenger of Allāh.” He ﷺ said:

الإِسْتَرَكَدُ بِيْنَ اِنْتَيْهِ

“To associate partners with Allāh.” (Agreed upon)

One form of Shirk is to prostrate to anyone other than Allāh; another is to supplicate to anyone other than Allāh or to ask for one’s needs to be fulfilled by anyone other than Allāh; and yet another form is to sacrifice an animal, seeking closeness not to Allāh, but to another.

[1] (Luqman 51:13)
Lesson Seventeen

Basically, it is *Shirk* to dedicate any form of worship to any one other than Allāh, regardless of what the object of worship is: the living, the dead, a grave, a statue, a stone, a tree, an angel, a Prophet, a pious man, an animal, or anything else. This is the only sin that Allāh does not forgive: it requires one to not only repent, but to also re-enter the fold of Islam. Allāh says:

«إِنَّ اِلْلَّهُ لَا يُغْفِرُ أَنْ يُشَرِّكَ بِهِ مَا دَوَىٰ ذَلِكَ لَمَّا يَسْتَبِعَ فَإِذَا كَانَ عَلِيمًا (18)

Verily, Allāh forgives not that partners should be set up with Him in worship, but He forgives except that (anything else) to whom He pleases, and whoever sets up partners with Allāh in worship, he has indeed invented a tremendous sin.[1]

The Muslim submits only to Allāh, prays only to Allāh, and supplicates only to Allāh:

«قُلِ إِنَّ سَلَاتِي وَمَوْلاَيَ وَحْيَ مِنَ الْمَلَائِكَةِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ ﴿١٥﴾ أَشْرِكْ لَمْ تُفْلِكَ ﻷَ ذَٰٓآ إِنَّا أَوَّلُ الْإِلَهِينَ (١٦)

Say: “Verily, my Salat (prayer), my sacrifice, my living, and my dying are for Allāh, the Lord of the ‘Alamīn (mankind, jinns and all that exists).”[2]

One also perpetrates *Shirk* when one believes that Allāh has a wife or a child, far above is Allāh from any of that. Allāh says:

«قُلْ هُوَ الَّذِي أُعْفِنَ ١٠٠ ﴿اللَّهُ الْمَكْرُودُ ﴿١٠١﴾ لَمْ يَكُدْ وَلَمْ يَكُنْ 

Say: “He is Allāh, (the) One; Allāhu ‘S-Samad (Allāh — the Self-Sufficient Master, Whom all creatures need. He neither eats nor drinks). He begets not, nor was He begotten. And there is none coequal or comparable to Him.”[3]

“Magic (soothsaying, or claiming to know the unseen): Magic involves things that occur without us knowing how — the means or

[3] (Al-Kahfus 112:1-4)
the reality is hidden. The ostensible reason for these happenings is when the magician, for instance, ties a knot, says a phrase, or writes something down, all of which he does, intending to affect the person (either his mind, heart, or body) whom he wishes to make the object of nefarious activities, all of which he performs without actually taking physical measures to harm that person.

Both magic and soothsaying are forms of *Kafir* (disbelief): the magician cannot really be a magician unless he has ties with devils, whom he worships instead of worshipping Allah. Allah Almighty says:

«ومَا حَسَرَّ شَيْءٌ مِّنْ نَاسٍ قَالَ وَأَوْلَاهُ، فَكَفَرَوا بِاللهِ وَإِلَى الْبَيْتِ»

«وَمَا يَبْلُمُنَّ مِنْ أَمْرٍ يُقْرِرُ إِلَّا مَنْ يَشَاءُ فَلاَ تَبْتَغُوهُ.»

Sulaiman did not disbelieve, but the *Shayatin* (devils) disbelieved, teaching men magic... but neither of these two (angels) taught anyone (such things) till they had said, “We are only for trial, so disbelieve not (by learning this magic from us).”[1]

A Muslim is forbidden from going to magicians and soothsayers, from asking them, from believing what they speak regarding the unseen, from believing their predictions about the future, regardless of what methods they use (reading palms or crystal balls). Allah Almighty says:

«أَلَآ إِلَيْهِ يَرْجُونَ»

Say: “None in the heavens and the earth knows the *Ghaib* (unseen) except Allah”[2]

And:

«عَلَىٰ حَبِيبِي نَحْزَٰبُ وَعَلَىٰ عَبْدِكَ ۚ أَمَّاؤِنَا إِلَّا مِنْ أَرْضِكَ نَرْسَى إِلَّا مَكْرُكَ دَكَّٰرًا ۚ إِنَّا نَعْلُمُ مِّنْ بَيْنِي بَيْنٍ وَمِنْ خِلْقِكَ رَسُّمًا»

“(He Alone) the All-Knower of the Ghaib (unseen), and He reveals to none His Ghaib (unseen).” Except to a Messenger.

[1] (Al-Baqarah 2:102)
(from mankind) whom He has chosen (He informs him of unseen as much as He likes), and then He makes a band of watching guards (angels) to march before him and behind him.\[1\]

The Islamic punishment for the magician is execution by sword, a ruling that has been related from three of the Prophet’s Companions.

“Killing a person, an act which Allâh has forbidden, unless there is an Islamic reason”: In Islam, it is a grave deed indeed to take the life another, a sin regarding which Allâh has given a stern warning, a warning that involves a painful torment in the Hereafter and a severe punishment in this world — the murderer is executed unless the relatives or guardians of the murdered forgive him. Allâh says:

```
ورمن أسلم ذلك كتبنا على بني إسرائيل أنم من قتل نفساً يقترب نفس أو نفسان في الأرض فكانتا قتل الناس جميعاً ومن أحكاماً فكانتا أخرى الناس جميعاً وفد جأتهما رسلنا بالبينتين ثم إن كسباً ونسترهما بعد ذلك

في الأرض ممولاً
```

Because of that We ordained for the Children of Israel that if anyone killed a person not in retaliation of murder, or (and) to spread mischief in the land — it would be as if he killed all mankind, and if anyone saved a life, it would be as if he saved the life of all mankind. And indeed, there came to them Our Messengers with clear proofs, evidences, and signs, even then after that many of them continued to exceed the limits (e.g., by doing oppression unjustly and exceeding beyond the limits set by Allâh by committing the major sins) in the land!\[2\]

And:

```
ورمن يقتل من دون حق ويتغافل عليه وله نذر فنهب الناس جميعاً فاقترب نفسين

وعليكم السلم وعليكم السلام ورحمة الله وبركاته
```

And whoever kills a believer intentionally, his recompense is

\[1\] (Al-Jinn 72:26-27)
\[2\] (Al-Ma‘idah 5:32)
Hell to abide therein, and the wrath and the curse of Allāh are upon him, and a great punishment is prepared for him.\(^\text{	extsuperscript{[1]}}\)

The Prophet ﷺ said:

«إِنَّا نَكَثَيْنَاهُمَا بِمَا كَانَا يُعَمِّرُونَ فِيهِمَا مِنْ سَبِيلِ الْإِسْلَامِ وَالْكُفُّرَ في النَّارِ»

“If two Muslims meet each other, each with his sword, then the murderer and the murdered are in the Fire.”

Someone asked, “O Messenger of Allāh, (I understand about) the murderer, but why (is) the murdered (punished as well)?” He ﷺ said:

«إِنَّهُ كَانَ حَرَّمًا عَلَى قَالِ صُحِبَهُ»

“He was indeed eager to kill his opponent.” (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim)

The Prophet ﷺ also said:

«لَا يُزَالُ الْأَعْمَى فِي مُشْحُشٍ مِنْ يِنْبَغِي مَا لَمْ يُعْبِسْ مَا حَرَّمَانٌ»

The slave continues to liberty in his religion, as long as he does not spill unlawful blood. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Ahmad)

“Consuming usury (interest)”: Usury is one of the greatest of sins: it destroys the economy and it takes wrongful advantage of those who are in need of money, regardless of whether it is the businessman for his business or the poor man for his basic needs. Basically, usury occurs (at least in one of its forms) when one person lends money to another person for a set period, stipulating that when that period arrives, he pays a specific amount more than what was originally loaned. Therefore the lender and those like him take advantage of those who are in need of money, forcing them to live a life of debt. Taking advantage of businessman, and without incurring any risks in case of losses, the usurer takes a percentage over and above profits received. When the business declines and the businessman is drowned in debt, the usurer will destroy him. But had they been partners, both sharing in profit and loss, one striving with his wealth the other with his business acumen, the wheels of the economy would continue to turn, but this time, for the benefit of all. Allāh says:

\(^{[1]}\) (An-Nisa’ 493)
Lesson Seventeen

O you who believe! Be afraid of Allâh and give up what remains (due to you) from Ribâ (usury) (from now onward), if you are (really) believers. And if you do not do it, then take a notice of war from Allâh and His Messenger but if you repent, you shall have your capital sums. Deal not unjustly (by asking more than your capital sums), and you shall not be dealt with unjustly (by receiving less than your capital sums). And if the debtor is in a hard time (has no money), then grant him time till it is easy for him to repay, but if you remit it by way of charity, that is better for you if you did but know.\[1\]

The Prophet ﷺ said:

"Allâh has cursed both the one who eats usury and the one who gives it. (Recorded by Muslim).

At-Tirmithi recorded it with a Sahîh chain and the addition:

"...and the witnesses and the one who records it.

Usury, in all of its forms, is forbidden, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

"Usury (Ribâ) is seventy-two doors, the least of which is equal to a man committing incest with his mother. (Recorded by At-Tabarani in Al-Ausâf with a Sahîh chain)

"Consuming the wealth of orphans": Allâh Almighty says:

\[8\]

\[1\] (Al-Baqarah 2:278-280)
Verily, those who unjustly consume the property of orphans, they eat up only fire into their bellies, and they will be burnt in the blazing Fire!\(^1\)

When one consumes the wealth of an orphan, he perpetrates one of the great sins, but only if he takes that wealth unlawfully. If the guardian of the orphan is poor, he may take according to need, and the amount he takes that corresponds to his needs is governed by custom. Allâh says:

«وَمَنْ كَانَ قَانِثًا فَلَا يَذْمُحُهُ»

But if he is poor, let him have for himself what is just and reasonable (according to his work).\(^2\)

And:

«وَلَهُمُ الْمَقْرُوْجُ مَا ائْتَيْبَ إِلَّآ أَنْ يَتَّبِعَهُ»

And come not near to the orphan’s property, except to improve it.\(^3\)

The warning regarding those, “who unjustly consume the property of orphans” includes those who literally do so, and those guardians, who because of their dereliction and not because of their greed, allow the orphan’s wealth to dwindle away. For instance, in clearly unsound investments; the words “consume” are used because that is what happens in most cases.

“Fleeing on the day of battle”: Allâh Almighty says:

«وَمَنْ كَانَ فِيَاهُ تَفْرَحُهُ فَفِيَاهُ دُمَّرُهُ إِلَّآ مَكْرَهُ أَوْ مَكْرَهُ إِلَّآ فَدَمَّرَ فَقَدْ بَعِدَ»

And whoever turns his back to them on such a day — unless it be a stratagem of war, or to retreat to a troop (of his own), — he indeed has drawn upon himself wrath from Allâh. And his abode is Hell, and worst indeed is that destination!\(^4\)

If one flees when there is a battle between Muslims fighting in Jihad

\(^1\) (An-Nisa’ 4:11)

\(^2\) (An-Nisa’ 4:6)

\(^3\) (Al-A’am 6:152)

\(^4\) (Al-Adâl 8:16)
Lesson Seventeen

in the cause of Allâh against their enemies, when the two armies face one another, then one is perpetrating a grave sin, for he has forsaken the Muslims and weakened their ranks. When a battle is about to begin and the two armies are present at the place of battle, 'ibad becomes obligatory on those who are present.

"Slanderous" is an innocent, believing women says:

Verily, those who accuse chaste women, who never even think of anything touching their chastity and are good believers, are cursed in this life and in the Hereafter, and for them will be a great torment.\(^1\)

And:

And those who accuse chaste women, and produce not four witnesses, flog them with eighty stripes.\(^2\)

And:

And those who annoy believing men and women undeservingly, bear on themselves the crime of slander and plain sin.\(^3\)

The Prophet \(\text{SAW}\) said:

Whoever accuses a slave he owns, of fornication, will be punished for that on the Day of Judgement (i.e., for accusing) unless what he says is true. (Agreed upon)

---

\(^1\) (An-Nur 24:23)

\(^2\) (An-Nur 24:4)

\(^3\) (Al-Alaq 33:58)
Therefore the Muslim must be careful not to harm believing men and women with his tongue, especially since the Prophet ﷺ said:

وَلَسْلُمْ مِنْ سَلَمَ السَّلِيمُونَ مِنْ لَسَنِىَّ وَلَبَيْنِ

The Muslim is the one from whom the Muslims are safe, from his tongue and hand. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim).

"Being undutiful to one’s parents": After the Prophet ﷺ asked:

لَا أَنْبِئُكُمْ بِأَكْبَرَ الْكَبَارَىَّ

Shall I not inform you of the greatest of great sins...

He mentioned being undutiful to one’s parents among them.
(Agreed upon).

It has been related that the Prophet ﷺ said:

لَا يَشْجُرَ الْجَنَّةُ غَابًا وَلَا مَيْنًا وَلَا مُدْنَى حَمَّارًا وَلَا مُلْوَقٍ بِسَبْعٌ

The disobedient (to his parents) does not enter Paradise, nor does the one who reminds others of his favors (in a harmful way), the one who is addicted to alcohol, and the one who believes in magic. (Recorded by Al-Hakim and Ath-Thahabi graded its chain Hasan in Al-Kaba’ir).

In another narration, the Prophet ﷺ said:

أَعْنَىُ اللَّهُ الْعَجَافَ بِالدُّلْيُّ

Allâh cursed the one who is undutiful to his parents.
(Recorded by An-Nasa’i with a Hasan chain)

Being undutiful to one’s parents means that one rejects the good that has been done to him and it means that one is disobedient to Allâh, so beware, brother Muslim, of this grave sin.

“Cutting off ties with relatives”: Allâh Almighty says:

فَهُدُوْهُمْ إِنْ كَفَّارٌ أَفْتَتْهُمُ الْأَمْرُ وَفَتَتْهُمُ الْمَلَائِكَةُ ۗ أَلَيْكُمْ أَلَيْكُمْ أَذْمَهُمُ اللَّهُ ۗ أَنْقُلِهِمْ إِلَىٰ الْجَنَّةِ وَأَنْقُلِهِمْ إِلَىٰ الْجَحَمِ ۗ ۖ ۚ أَلَيْكُمْ أَلَيْكُمْ أَذْمَهُمُ اللَّهُ

Would you then, if you were given the authority, do mischief in the land, and sever your ties of kinship? Such are they whom Allâh has cursed, so that He has made them deaf and blinded.
their sight.\[1\]

The Prophet ﷺ said:

لا يدخل الجنة قاتل رجيم

He doesn't enter Paradise who severs ties with relatives.

(Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim)

One can sever ties by doing something, and by neglecting to do something, by harming a relative or by not helping him when he is in need.

Az-Zain Al-Iraqi said, "To sever ties with kinship means to do harm to them." Others have said, "To sever ties with kinship means to abstain from doing good to them." When one breaks off ties with relatives, one only harms himself, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

إِنَّ أَعْمَالٍ بَنِي آدمٍ تَعْرَضُ ثُلَّةً خَوْسِيّ كلِّهَا الجَمِيعةَ فَاَلْيَتِبِّلُ عَمَلٌ قَاطِعٍ

Indeed, the deeds of the children of Adam are displayed every Thursday night; no deed from the one who severs ties with relatives will be accepted from him. (Recorded by Ahmad)

"Wrongfully taking the wealth of others...": The Sakaibh refers here to oppression, which is of many kinds: a man can wrong himself, those around him, society, even his enemies. Indeed, Allāh does not love those who oppress; in a Qudsi Hadīth, the Prophet ﷺ related that Allāh Almighty said:

يا عبادي إنني حرمت الظلم على نفسي وجعلته تبيّنكم محرّماً فَلا تظَالَموا

O my worshippers, Indeed I have forbidden Myself from oppression, and I have made it forbidden among you, so do not wrong one another. (Recorded by Muslim, with the explanation of An-Nawawi 16:133)

Wrongdoing is forbidden in all of its forms: the Prophet ﷺ said:

الظلم ظلمات يوم القيامة

[Muhammad 47:22,23]
Wrongdoing will come as darkness on the Day of Judgement. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim)

In summary, oppression is one of the major sins.

One form of oppression is to wrongfully take other people’s wealth: by stealing, usurping, deceiving, or even bribing. Allāh says:

وَأَتِمُّواْ الْفَضْلَ عَلَى الْمُسْلِمِينَ مَعْلُوْمٌ رَبُّكُمُ مَعْلُوْمٌ”

And the male thief and the female thief, cut off their hands, as a recompense for that which they committed, a punishment by way of example from Allāh. And Allāh is All-Powerful, All-Wise. [1]

And Allāh Almighty says:

وَلَا تَكُلُّوا أَموَالَكُمْ يَتَبَعُّواْ بِالْأَبْيَالِ”

And consume not one another’s property unjustly. [2]

The Prophet ﷺ said:

كُلُّ الْمُسْلِمٍ عَلَى الْمُسْلِمِ حَرَاحٌ، دِمَةٌ وَمَانَا بِعَرْضَةٍ”

All of the Muslim is sacred to the Muslim: his blood, his wealth, and his honor. (Recorded by At-Tirmithi who graded it as Hasan)

Islam has strong safeguards to prevent people from unjustly taking other peoples’ wealth: the punishments are so severe in this regard, that those who desire to take away from the safety of society are forced to hesitate, and most of the time desist altogether.

Other forms of wrongdoing include cheating, deception, or betrayal, all of which are forbidden, in business deals, contracts, or in any other dealing. Allāh Almighty says:

وَأَنْزَلْنَا عَلَى الْأَيَّامِ مَبْطُونَ ۖ أَلَىٰ أَنْفُسَكُمْ يَتَبَطَّأُواْ أَلَا يُظْنُّواْ أَنَّهُمْ يَعْطِونُونَ ۖ أَلَا يُعْطُواْ أَنَّهُمْ يَتَبَطَّأُواْ أَلَا يُشْرِكُواْ مَعَ اللَّهِ أُخْرَىٰ أَلَيْنَّ أَنْفُسَكُمْ يَعْطِونُونَ ۖ أَلَا يُشْرِكُواْ مَعَ اللَّهِ أُخْرَىٰ”

[1] (Al-Ma’idah 5:38)
Woe to AlMute, Jfin [those who give less in measure and weight (decrease the rights of others)] Those who, when they have to receive by measure from men, demand full measure And when they have to give by measure or weight to men, give less than due. Think they not that they will be resurrected (for reckoning). On a Great Day The Day when (all) mankind will stand before the Lord of the ‘Alamin (mankind, jinns and all that exists)\[1\]

And Allâh Almighty says:

\[إِنَّا لَلَّهِ وَإِنَّ التَّوْبَةَ لَنَصْبِرُهُ\\[3 pt]\\[3 pt]
\]

Verily, Allâh does not like anyone who is a betrayer of his trust, and indulges in crime.\[2\]

Another form of oppression is to attack people's honor, cursing them, backbiting them, spreading rumors about them, mocking them, or being jealous of them. Islam promotes the building of a pure society, one based on love, brotherhood, and mutual cooperation, which is why Islam is stern regarding those diseases that lead to a decay in society — diseases that make every member think only about his personal benefit. Allâh Almighty says:

\[إِنَّمَا يُؤْمِنُونَ بِلَٰٰتِينَٰۡ وَلَا يَسْتَغْلِبُونَ أَشْرَاقَ الْأَمْسَىٰ وَلَا يَسْتَغْلِبُونَ أَشْرَاقَ الْغَدِّ وَلَا يَسْتَغْلِبُونَ أَشْرَاقَ الْأَيْمنِ وَلَا يَسْتَغْلِبُونَ أَشْرَاقَ الْبَيْنِ وَلَا يَسْتَغْلِبُونَ أَشْرَاقَ الْعَدُودِ وَلَا يَسْتَغْلِبُونَ أَشْرَاقَ الْقُطُّوْسِ وَلَا يَسْتَغْلِبُونَ أَشْرَاقَ الْعَلِيمِ وَلَا يَسْتَغْلِبُونَ أَشْرَاقَ الْمُشْرِكِينَ وَلَا يَسْتَغْلِبُونَ أَشْرَاقَ الْمُهْلِكِ وَلَا يَسْتَغْلِبُونَ أَشْرَاقَ الْمُحْرِكِ وَلَا يَسْتَغْلِبُونَ أَشْرَاقَ الْمَهْرِكِ\\[3 pt]\\[3 pt]
\]

O you who believe! Let not a group scoff at another group, it may be that the latter are better than the former; nor let (some) women scoff at other women, it may be that the latter are better than the former, nor defame one another, nor insult one another by nicknames. How bad is it, to insult one's brother after having faith. And whosoever does not repent, then such are indeed wrongdoers. O you who believe! Avoid

---

\[1\] (Al-Mute, Jfin 85:1-6)

\[2\] (An-Nisa' 4:107)
much suspicion, indeed some suspicions are sins. And spy not, neither backbite one another. Would one of you like to eat the flesh of his dead brother? You would hate it (so hate backbiting). And fear Allah. Verily, Allah is the One Who accepts repentance, Most Merciful.[1]

Islam also fights against racism or class division in society; all are equal: the Arab has no superiority over the non-Arab, neither the white over the black. The only means by which one's value is measured is the religion and piety that is in one's heart; therefore all compete equally in performing good, righteous deeds. Allah Almighty says:

وَمَا مُنذَرَكُمْ مِنْ ذَمَّةِ وَأَنْسِمْ وَجَمَلَتَكُمْ صَفَواً وَقَبَائلَ لَعَلَّهُمْ يَتَبَيَّنُ أَنَّ إِنَّ أَرْضَنَا لَكُمْ حَرِيرٌ

O mankind! We have created you from a male and a female, and made you into nations and tribes, that you may know one another. Verily, the most honorable of you with Allah is the one with the most Taqua. Verily, Allah is All-Knowing, All-Aware.[2]

One of the worst ways of attacking the honor of another is to perpetrate fornication. Fornication ruins one's character, destroys society, causes one to be ignorant of his own father's identity, wastes away families, and wreaks havoc on societal morals. The children that result from fornication feel the true bitterness of the crime when society looks down upon them. Allah Almighty says:

وَلَا تَخَافُوا أَنْ يَأْتِيَكُمْ مَثَلُ كَانَ مُجَبَّرًا وَسَيِّئًا

And come not near to the unlawful sexual intercourse. Verily, it is a Fabisbah [i.e., anything that transgresses its limits (a great sin)], and an evil way.[3]

As we can clearly perceive today, widespread fornication results in the spread of sexually transmitted diseases; the Prophet ﷺ said,

---

[1] (Al-Hujjah 49:11,12)
Lesson Seventeen

فَأَتَبَرَّنَّ الرَّجُلُانِ فِي قُوَّمٍ فَظٍّ حَكِيَّةً حَكَيْتَهَا إِلَّا فَحَسْتُمُ فِي هَٰمَّةٍ
وَالْأَقْرَاضُ الَّذِيٰ لَمْ تَكُنْ فِي أَشَلِّفِهِمْ

When Fabishah pervades a society so much so that people begin to practice it openly, plague will spread among them and so will sicknesses, sicknesses that were nonexistent among their predecessors. (Recorded by Ibn Majah (2:1332) with a Sahih chain)

That is why Islam closed the door to all ways that lead to it: Muslims are commanded to lower their gazes because the forbidden look is the beginning of the path which leads to fornication. Muslim women must cover themselves, protecting themselves and society from the spread of wickedness. At the same time, Islam orders Muslims to marry early. This is in the hope that chaste and honorable families may flourish, the guardians of which provide good training to the children of today so that they may become the noble men of tomorrow.

To harm a Muslim in any way is considered to be a form of oppression. Allâh Almighty says:

وَالَّذِينَ يَوْمَ يَوْمٍ مَّعَ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَالْمُؤْمِنَاتِ يُؤْثِرُونَ مَا أَصْحَبُوا فَقَدْ أَصْحَبُوا بِهَا وَإِنَّا

And those who annoy believing men and women undeservedly, bear on themselves the crime of slander and plain sin.¹¹

The Prophet ﷺ said:

إِنَّ شَيْرَ النَّاسِ مُنْتَظِرَ عَنْدَ اللَّهِ صَبْرٌ وَدُعَاءُ النَّاسِ أَنْقَذَهُمْ فَكِحَّشُوهُ

The people who are in the most miserable position in terms of their ranking with Allâh are those that the people abandon, fearing their evil. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim)

He ﷺ also said:

إِنَّ اللَّهَ بِذَٰلِكَ الْقَابِضُ الْبَيِّنِيُّ

Indeed, Allâh hates the obscene evil. (Recorded by At-Tirmithi

¹¹ (Al-Hazâb 33:58)
and Abu Dawud with a Hasan chain)
In yet another narration, he said,

«المسلمُ أخوه المسلمُ لا يظلمه ولا يحذله ولا يغزوه، يحبُّ الورى من الشرّ أن يحترر أخاه المسلم»

The Muslim is the brother of the Muslim: He neither wrongs him, forsakes him, nor belittles him. Enough evil for a person is to belittle his brother Muslim. (Recorded by Muslim)
He also said:

«سبب المسلم فسوق وقلاة كثير»

To verbally abuse a Muslim is wickedness, to fight him is disbelief. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim)
Other ways to attack someone regarding his honor is backbiting, spreading false rumors, and falsely accusing someone.

“Giving false testimony”\(^{[1]}\): Describing the believers, Allah Almighty said:


And those who do not bear witness to falsehood.\(^{[1]}\)
And:

«كُبْرَاهُمَا أَنْبَعِثُنَآ إِلَيْهِمَا رَبُّكُمَا مُؤَذِّنَاءُ النُّور»

So shun the abomination (worshipping) of idol, and shun lying speech (false statements).\(^{[2]}\)

In a Hadith related by Abu Bakrah, may Allah be pleased with him, the Prophet said:

«لا أنتم بعد أكبر الخناجر: الإسراء بالله، وعفوُ العليلين، وقبول الزور وشمالة النور»

Shall I not inform you of the greatest of great sins: to associate partners with Allah, to be undutiful toward one’s parents, to speak a lie, and to bear false testimony.

\(^{[1]}\) (Al-Furqan 25:72)
\(^{[2]}\) (Al-He. J 22:30)
Lesson Seventeen

The narrator, Abu Bakrah, said, “He continued repeating this phrase until (we became so afraid of his warning that) we wished that he would stop talking.” (Agreed upon).

Imam Ath-Thahabi said that the one who gives a false testimony commits a number of grave wrongs:

1) Lying and slander; Allah says:

«إنَّ اللهَ لا يُحَبَّ ما يَصْبُرُ الذُّنُبَّاتَ»

Verily, Allah guides not one who is a transgressing liar.[1]

2) He has wronged the one who suffered because of his false testimony, the one who lost his wealth, his honor, or sometimes even his soul.

3) He wrongs the one who benefits by his testimony, because he helps him attain forbidden wealth.

4) He has made permissible that which Allah has made inviolable, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

«خَفَّفَ اللَّهُ عَلَى النَّاسِ جَزَاءَ مَا كَانُوا يَكْسَبُونَ»

All of the Muslim is sacred to the Muslim: his wealth, his blood, and his honor. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim).

“Making false oaths”: Allah Almighty says:

وَلَا تَعْيَذَنَّ فِي رَأْيِهِمْ وَتَمْهِدُنَّ فِي ذَلِكَ فَدَمَّرْنَاهُ بَعْدَ بُيُوتِهِ وَبَدَّلْنَاهُ بِأَشْهَرٍ (9)

And make not your oaths, a means of deception among yourselves, lest a foot may slip after being firmly planted, and you may have to taste the evil of having hindered (others) from the path of Allah, and yours will be a great torment.[2]

‘Abdullah bin ‘Umar, may Allah be pleased with them, related that the Messenger of Allah ﷺ said:

الْكَبَائِرُ: الْإِشْرَادُ بِاللَّهِ وَغُفُوْرُ الْوَالِدَينَ وَكُفُّ النَّسَيَّ وَالْيَتِيمَانَ الْعَمَّوْسَ

The great sins are associating partners with Allah, being

[1] (Ghafir 40:28)
undutiful to one’s parents, killing someone, and a lying oath.  
(Recorded by Al-Bukhari)

In Arabic, the word used to describe this oath is *Ghamus*, which comes from *Ghamasa*, which means to dip; therefore it is an oath that dips the one who made it into sin (or into the Hellfire).

In another Hadith, the Messenger of Allah ﷺ said:

«لا يُّنفِّضُ عَلَيْهِمَا اللَّهُ بُيُوتُ الْعَذَابَةِ وَلَا يَرْكَزُ عَلَيْهِمَا وَلَا يَكُونُ عَدَابُ أَيْمَنَ: الْمُسْبِلُ إِلَى الْرَّأْسِ وَالْمَطَالُ وَالْمُخْلَفُ مِنْ بَيْنِ الْحَمِّيْلِ الْكَابِبِ»

On the Day of Judgement, there are three people that Allah will neither speak to nor purify, and for them is a painful punishment: the one who lets his garment hang down below his ankles, the one who does favors and then in a harmful way reminds others about those favors, and the one who pushes the sale of his goods by making false oaths. (Recorded by Muslim)

The Prophet ﷺ also said:

«صَنِّعَ عَلَى بَيْنِي بَيْنَ فَيَّ وَبَيْنَ مَا لَمْ أَفْرَزْهَا مُسْلِمًا أَنْ يَعْبُدُ اللَّهَ وَهُوَ عَلِيَّ»

Whoever makes an oath, intending to (unjustly) take away the wealth of a Muslim, he will meet Allah, Who will be angry with him.

It was asked, “What if he intends to take something small?” He answered:

«وَإِنَّ كَانَ كَثِيرًا مِّنِّ أَزَالَةٍ»

Even it were a small stick taken from the Arak tree. (Recorded by Muslim)

“Hurting one’s neighbor”: The Prophet ﷺ said:

«فَإِنَّ اللَّهَ لاَ يُؤْمِنُ اللَّهَ وَاللَّهَ لاَ يُؤْمِنُ اللَّهَ لاَ يُؤْمِنُ اللَّهَ وَاللَّهَ لاَ يُؤْمِنُ اللَّهَ»

“By Allah, he does not believe; by Allah, he does not believe; by Allah, he does not believe.”

He was asked, “Who, O Messenger of Allah.” He ﷺ said,
The one whose neighbor is not safe from his trouble making.” (Agreed upon).

In the narration of Muslim:

«لا يدخل الجنة من لا يأمن جاره بواقية»

“The one whose neighbor is not safe from his trouble making will not enter Paradise.”

Meaning that his neighbor is not safe from his harm.

The Prophet ﷺ would supplicate:

«اللهم إنني أوعدت بيك من جار السوء في كار الهموم فإن جار اللدتي يتحول»

O Allah! Indeed I seek refuge with You from the evil neighbor in the prestigious abode; for indeed the near neighbor is influential. (Recorded by An-Nasa’i and Al-Bukhari in Al-Adab Al-Mukdrad with a Sabih chain)

On one occasion, the Prophet ﷺ was told about a woman who prayed at night, who fasted during the day, who gave charity, but despite all of that, she would inflict harm on her neighbor with her tongue. The Prophet ﷺ said:

«لا خير فيها هي من أهل الدار»

There is no good in her; she is from the inhabitants of the Fire.

Then the Prophet ﷺ was told about a woman who prayed the compulsory prayers and who would give pieces of cheese for charity; she was further described as being a woman who didn’t harm others. The Messenger of Allah ﷺ said:

«هي من أهل الجنة»

She is from the dwellers of Paradise.

Recorded by Al-Bukhari in Al-Adab Al-Mukadr with a Sabih chain.

He ﷺ said on another occasion:

«من كان يؤمن بالله والملاموم الآخر لم يؤمن بياره»

Whoever believes in Allah and in the Last Day, then he should
not harm his neighbor. (Agreed upon).

Then the Shaikh said, “And other deeds that Allāh has forbidden”: Though there are many other forbidden deeds, there is one specific that I will mention:

“Miserliness”: This sin indicates the wrong kind of individualism: the extreme love of one’s self. The miser hears his wealth, refusing to give even the compulsory charity to the poor and needy, showing his disdain for society, declining to accept the principles of mutual cooperation and brotherhood, principles that both Allāh and His Messenger have ordered us to adopt. Allāh says:

وَلَا يَخْلُقُ الْمَلَأِ مَوْلَىٰٓ إِلاَّ مَا فَتَنُّهُمْ أَمَّا مَا فَتَنُّهُمْ أَلَهُمْ مَثَالُ فَتَنُّهُمْ مِثْلُ الْحَمَّامِ ۖ وَلَعِيدُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَالْمُؤْمِنَاتِ وَأَلَّلِهَا يَقُولُونَ ۖ إِنَّا مِثْلُ الْحَمَّامِ إِلَّٰهُكُمْ مَثَالُ الْحَمَّامِ ۖ وَلَعِيدُ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَالْمُؤْمِنَاتِ وَأَلَّلِهَا يَقُولُونَ ۖ إِنَّا مِثْلُ الْحَمَّامِ إِلَّٰهُكُمْ مَثَالُ الْحَمَّامِ

And let not those who covetously withhold of that which Allāh has bestowed on them of His bounty think that it is good for them (and so they do not pay the obligatory Zakat). Nay, it will be worse for them: the things which they covetously withheld shall be tied to their necks like a collar on the Day of Resurrection. And to Allāh belongs the heritage of the heavens and the earth; and Allāh is Well-Acquainted with all that you do.[1]

Other examples of forbidden actions are to eat the meat of a dead carcass, to eat blood, to eat the meat of a pig, and to slaughter animals, seeking closeness to other than Allāh. Allāh says:

ۚ أَنْفَقْنَا مِنْ أَدْلِيَّتِنَا صُطْحَىٰ مِنْ كُلِّ فَطَنٍ مَا مَرَّ لَهُمْ وَكَنَّا نَزِعُوْنَ مِنْ يَدَّ رَبِّنَا ۖ إِنَّا مِثْلُ الْحَمَّامِ ۖ حَتَّىٰ يَضْرِبَ الْجِشَّةُ وَيَضْرِبَ الْجَمِيرُ ۗ وَأَلَّلِهَا يَقُولُونَ إِنَّا مِثْلُ الْحَمَّامِ إِلَّٰهُكُمْ مَثَالُ الْحَمَّامِ ۖ حَتَّىٰ يَضْرِبَ الْجِشَّةُ وَيَضْرِبَ الْجَمِيرُ ۗ وَأَلَّلِهَا يَقُولُونَ إِنَّا مِثْلُ الْحَمَّامِ إِلَّٰهُكُمْ مَثَالُ الْحَمَّامِ

O you who believe! Eat of the lawful things that We have provided you with, and be grateful to Allāh, if it is indeed He Whom you worship. He has forbidden you only the Ṣawāḥ (dead animals), and blood, and the flesh of swine, and that

which is slaughtered as a sacrifice for others than Allāh. But if one is forced by necessity without willful disobedience nor transgressing due limits, then there is no sin on him. Truly, Allāh is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful.\footnote{[1]}

**Repentance From Perpetrating What Is Forbidden**

Because you will be held accountable for all of your deeds on the Day of Judgement — being rewarded for good and punished for evil — you should stay away from the grave sins and from all other sins. But if you do perpetrate any sin, you should be quick to repent to Allāh, asking Him for forgiveness and protection from further perpetrating evil deeds. A true repentance requires you to do the following:

1) To desist from the sin that you are repenting from.
2) To feel remorse for having perpetrated that sin.
3) To make a firm resolve not to return to it.

And there is a fourth condition if the sin you perpetrated involves the rights of others:

4) To return that which you wrongfully took to its owner or to seek forgiveness from the one you wronged.

These are the conditions of true repentance: if they are met, Allāh will forgive you and not punish you for them. The one who repents from a sin is like he who has no sin. Thereafter, you should continue to ask Allāh for forgiveness; indeed, every Muslim should continually ask for forgiveness, for the grave sins he commits and for the small ones. Allāh says:

\[
قُلْ أَسْتَعُفِّرْ وَأَنْعَمَّ بِيَمَنْ كَانَ عَذَابًا \footnote{[2]} 
\]

I said (to them), “Ask forgiveness from your Lord; verily, He is Oft-Forgiving.”

When one repents often, he shows one of the characteristics of the true believer; Allāh says:

\[
فَلَيُبَيِّنِيِّدْ أَلَّذِينَ أَسْتَرَفُوا عَلَى أَفْسَحِهِمْ لَا يَتَّقُونَ مِنْ عَذَابِ اللَّهِ إِنَّ اللَّهَ يُغَفِّرُ \footnote{[2]} 
\]

\footnote{[1]} (Ab-Beqarab 2:172,173)
\footnote{[2]} (Nal 71:10)
Say: “O My worshippers who have transgressed against themselves! Despair not of the mercy of Allâh, verily Allâh forgives all sins. Truly, He is Oft-Forgiving, Most Merciful.”

And turn in repentance and in obedience with true faith to your Lord and submit to Him (in Islam), before the torment comes upon you, then you will not be helped.\(^{[1]}\)

In general, the following are some of the more prevalent sins that many people take lightly:

- To deem lawful that which Allâh has forbidden, or to deem forbidden that which Allâh has made permissible.
- To believe that the stars and planets have some kind of effect on the lives of people.
- To believe that certain things benefit, when in fact the Creator did not make them so.
- To believe in evil omens — because you hear or see something, for example, to believe that evil will befall you; that is a form of \textit{Shirk} (associating partners with Allâh).
- For you to keep company with hypocrites or wicked people, seeking closeness to them or finding comfort in their company
- To not pray in a calm and peaceful fashion.
- To make a lot of frivolous, extraneous movements during prayer
- For the follower to precede the Imam on purpose during any stage of the prayer.
- To come to the \textit{Majîd} after having eaten onion or garlic or anything else that has a foul odor.
- Without having just cause, for a woman to refuse her husband’s desire to have sexual relations.
- For a woman to seek a divorce from her husband without a legislated reason.
- A practice known in Arabic as \textit{AzZibâr}, i.e., for a man to say to his

\(^{[1]}\) (\textit{AzZumar} 39:53, 54)
wife, “You are to me like my mother,” when he intends to make her forbidden for him: this practice is forbidden based on the Qur’an, the Sunnah, and consensus.
- To have intercourse with one’s wife during her monthly period.
- To have anal sex.
- For you to be unjust with your wives, treating some better than others.
- To be alone with a strange woman, in other words, a woman who is not a Mahram (someone who you can never marry) for you. This practice has become prevalent nowadays, especially in families that keep female servants.
- For a man to shake hands with a strange woman (i.e., one who is not a Mahram).
- As she leaves her home, for a woman to wear perfume, knowing that she will pass by men.
- For a woman to travel without a Mahram.
- For a man to look at a strange woman on purpose.
- For one to feel it is okay when one of his relatives (wives or children) fornicates.
- For one to lie about who his parents really are, or for a man to refuse to acknowledge his true son.
- When one is selling a product, to hide its defects.
- For one to be bid on a product, intending to raise its price, but not intending to actually purchase it.
- After the second call to Friday prayer is made, to engage in trade.
- To give or take bribes.
- To wrongfully usurp land.
- For you to accept a gift when intercession is required of you.
- To receive full services from an employee without paying him his due.
- To give to some of one’s children more than the others.
- Without actually being in need, to ask others for money.
- To seek a loan without intending to pay it back.
- To eat or drink that which is forbidden.
- To use gold and silver utensils or dishes and to eat using them.
- To give a false testimony.
- To listen to musical instruments.
- Backbiting, which is to say about your brother that which he dislikes.
- To spread false rumors between people, intending to create dissension between them.
- To look inside the homes of others without their permission.
- When three are present, for two to speak to the exclusion of the third.
- For men to wear gold, regardless of how they wear it.
- For men to let their garments fall down below the level of their ankles.
- For a woman to wear thin, short, tight, or transparent clothing.
- For a man or a woman to attach false hair to the end of their natural hair, regardless whether that false hair is human or otherwise.
- For men to imitate women or vice versa.
- To dye your hair black.
- To make pictures of that which has a spirit (man or animal); this includes on clothes, on walls, on paper, and so on.
- To lie about one’s dreams.
- Sitting or walking on a grave.
- To relieve yourself in a graveyard.
- When you are relieving yourself, for you to not take cover properly, so that others cannot see you.
- To listen in on other peoples’ conversations when they dislike for you to do that.
- To deal badly with your neighbor.
- To harm people on purpose in the writing of your will.
- Playing dice, a game that relies on chance.
- To curse a believer and to curse someone who doesn’t deserve to
be cursed.
- To wail loudly when mourning.
- To hit someone on the face; or to stamp someone’s face.
- Without a valid Islamic reason, to shun a Muslim for more than three days.
- Haughtiness, pride, vanity, or self-conceit are the qualities that are most disliked in Islam. Allâh says about people who have such qualities:

"أَلَيْسَ فِي جَهَنَّمَ مَنْ مَّثَلَّ لَهُمْ أَحَدُ؟" [Al-Zumar 39:60]

Is there not in Hell an abode for the arrogant ones? The arrogant one is hated by Allâh and by His creation.
Lesson Eighteen
Preparing The Dead Person’s Body, Praying Over Him, And Burying Him

The Details of which are as follows:

The Shaikh said, “Preparing the dead person’s body...”:

Because of widespread ignorance regarding the Islamic rulings for funerals, the Shaikh will — in the following sections — explain those rulings for you. To introduce the topic, however, I wish to discuss the following points:

1) It is compulsory for the Muslim to be patient when he is afflicted with a trial. Therefore he should neither be angry nor show vexation. Allâh Almighty and His Messenger ﷺ often ordered us in the Qur’ân and Sunnah to be patient. But even though patience is required, one may make clear to others his situation or how he feels, with statements such as the following: “I am sick,” or “I am in pain” or “In every situation, all praise is for Allâh.”

2) The Muslim must visit his brother Muslim when he is sick, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

> أَطْعِمُوا الْجَانَّةَ ۖ وَقِدْنِئَالْمَرْيَضَ،َ وَفُكُّوا ٱلْغَيْبَ — ٱلْأَسْبِرَّ

Feed the hungry, visit the sick, and provide means for ransoming the captive. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari)

When you visit a sick Muslim, it is recommended that you invoke Allâh Almighty to cure him and that you counsel him to be patient. Say those words that will be pleasant for him to hear; also, you should not sit with him for too long. When the Prophet ﷺ used to visit the sick, he would say:

> لَا يَبْسُ،َ طَهُورٌ إِنْ شَاءَ ٱللَّهُ

It is alright; this (sickness) will purify you (from your sins) — if Allâh wills. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari)
Lesson Eighteen

You should say this phrase whenever you visit anyone who is sick.

3) Brother Muslim, remember your final destination. To help you do so, reflect on the following topics:

First: What Allah's Book Says Regarding Death

In different ways, death is mentioned 164 times in the Qur'an; here are some of those verses:

كل نفيس داخیلة الموت ولَمَّا توْفَرَتْ أمْرُ تحْمِيْمٍ يَوْمَ الْيَعْمَامَة ۖ فَمَنْ رَضِينَ عَن

Everyone shall taste death. And only on the Day of Resurrection shall you be paid your wages in full. And whoever is removed away from the Fire and admitted to Paradise, he indeed is successful. The life of this world is only the enjoyment of deception (a deceiving thing). \(^{[1]}\)

And:

وَعَاذَت سَكِرَةَ الْمَوْتِ وَلَغَيْنٌ ذَلِكَ مَا كَتَبَ مَعَ يَحِيٍّ

And the stupor of death will come in truth: "This is what you have been avoiding!"\(^{[2]}\)

فَخُذْ إِذَا بَنِيَ الْمَلَائِكَةُ وَأَدْرَكَ جَهَّازَكَ تَنْصُرَونَۖ وَيَسْتَغْفِرُونَۖ وَيَقْتُلُونَ أَئِنِّي أُبَيَّنُ إِلَيْكَ مَكْرَهُ وَلَكَنْ

Then why do you not (intervene) when (the soul of a dying person) reaches the throat? And you at the moment are looking on, But We (i.e., Our angels who take the soul) are nearer to him than you, but you see not.\(^{[3]}\)

And:

فَخُذْ إِذَا بَنِيَ الْمَلَائِكَةُ وَأَدْرَكَ جَهَّازَكَ تَنْصُرَونَۖ وَيَسْتَغْفِرُونَۖ وَيَقْتُلُونَ أَئِنِّي أُبَيَّنُ إِلَيْكَ مَكْرَهُ وَلَكَنْ

[1] (Aal Imran 3:185)
[2] (Qaf 50:19)
Nay, when (the soul) reaches to the collar bone (i.e., up to the throat in its exit), and it will be said: “Who can cure him and save him from death?” And he (the dying person) will conclude that it was (the time) of departing (death); and leg will be joined with another leg (shrouded); the drive will be, on that Day, to your Lord.\(^1\)

**Second: What the Prophet’s Sunnah says about death**

In a *Hadith* related by Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with him, the Prophet ﷺ said:

«أخبروا ذنوتكم الجَذَاهُ»

Remember often the destroyer of pleasures (i.e., death).

(Recorded by An-Tirmithi)

Regarding this *Hadith*, the scholars have said that though its words are few, its meanings are profound and far-reaching, for when one remembers death in a true sense, the present pleasures he is experiencing are spoiled for him, and he is prevented or at least hindered from having long-term expectations about this world.

In another *Hadith*, Abu Hurairah, may Allâh be pleased with him, related that the Prophet ﷺ once visited the grave of his mother: he cried and made those around him cry as well. He ﷺ said:

«استذاتت رضي الله أن أستغفر لها فلم يأذني لي، واستذاتته في أن أؤمنُ بها، فأذن لي، فزوروا ضرورًا فإنها تذكر الموت.»

I sought permission from my Lord to ask forgiveness for her, and He didn’t permit me, and I asked Him permission to visit her grave, and he permitted me, so I visit graves, for verily, doing so reminds one of death. (Recorded by Muslim 3:65, 6:82, Abu Dawud 2:72, An-Nasa’i and Al-Baihaqi)

In a *Hadith* related by Ibn Ma’ud, may Allâh be pleased with him, the Prophet ﷺ said:

«إني لى الأجرة على زيارة ضرورًا فإنها تذكر»

\(^1\) (Al-Qi’amah 75:26-30)
Lesson Eighteen

I used to forbid you from visiting graves, but visit them (now), for doing so makes one turn away from the world while it reminds one of the Hereafter.

Third: Death And Its Severity

1) The scholars’ definition of death: a cutting off, a separation, a transformation, a change of state, and a move from one abode to another.

2) Abu Hudbah Ibrahim bin Hudbah related from Anas bin Malik that the Prophet ﷺ said:

«إِنَّ الْمَعْتَزِيَّةَ أَكَثَرَتِ الْمَوْتَ وَالْمَكَارِضَ الْمَوْتِ، وَأَنْفَقَّةُ عَلَيْهَا لِيُسَلِّمُ بَعْضُهَا عَلَى بَعْضِهَا تَقُولُ عَلَيْكَ السَّلَامُ وَتَقَلِّبُهَا وَتَقْلِبُهَا إِلَى نُوُمٍ أَلْيَانِيَّةٍ»

Indeed, the worshipper experiences the agonies and pangs of death; his joints bid one another peace, saying, “And peace be upon you; you part from me and I part from you until the Day of Judgement.” (It was mentioned by Ibn ‘Iraq in Tanzih Asb-Shari‘ab 2:375, and he attributed it to Ad-Dailami, from Anas.)

In Al-Hijab, Al-Hafiz Abu Nu‘aym recorded a narration from Makhul, who related from Wathilah bin Al-Asqa’ that the Prophet ﷺ said:

«وَالَّذِي نُسِبَ يَعْلَمُ بِمَعَانَّاهُ مَا لِكَ الْمَوْتَ أَشْدَدُ مِنْ ضَرْبٍ بَعْضِهَا»

By the One Who has my soul in His Hand, facing the Angel of Death is more severe than the striking of a sword.

3) ‘Aishah, may Allah be pleased with her, said, “(While he was on his deathbed), the Prophet ﷺ had with him a container of water; he would put his hands into it and then wipe them on his face, saying:

«لَا إِلَيهُ إِلَّا الْلَّهُ إِنَّ الْمَوْتَ أَلْكَر»

None has the right to be worshipped but Allah; indeed, death has its stupors.

Then he raised his hands and said:
With the exalted companions.

Until he died and his hands lowered.” (Recorded by Al-Bukhari in the Book of Battles, the chapter on the Illness of the Prophet ﷺ.)

4) Some of our scholars have said (may Allah have mercy on them), “If even the Prophets, the Messengers, and the righteous ones are thus afflicted, then what are we so busy that we do not think about that time, and why do we delay in preparing ourselves for that situation.”

Say: “That is a great news, from which you turn away.”[1]

Fourth: Preparing For Death

As a Muslim, you should be prepared for death at all times: whether it is day or night, whether you are sleeping or awake. You can practically prepare for it with the following:

1) Faith in the phrase of Taubad and applying it.

2) You must be steadfast in performing your five compulsory, daily prayers in congregation. Regarding the prayer, you should also pray those prayers that are highly recommended, that are voluntary in nature, that are performed in the night — and that includes both the Witr prayer and the Sunnah prayers in general.

3) You must recite the Qur'an, contemplate its meanings, and apply its commands and laws. You should recite it late at night and at the beginning and end of the day; it is also recommended for you to recite it before the compulsory prayers. Finally, you should finish reading the Qur'an in its entirety at least once or twice a month.

4) Study the Sunnah of the Prophet ﷺ follow what he orders and abstain from what he forbids.

5) Keep company with the righteous; seek to gain benefit from them, to improve both your worldly and your religious situation. One way to do that is to study both Allah’s Book and the

[1] (Sad 38:67,68)
Lesson Eighteen

Prophet’s Sunnah with them.

Fifth: Death And Its Signs; A Good Ending
Versus An Evil One

First, it is compulsory upon one who is on his deathbed and upon everyone else to do the following:

1) To write a final testament, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

إِنَّهُ مُجَتَّبٌ لَّيْكَنْ يَبْنِيُّ وَلَدَيْكَ أَنْ تَوْصِيَ فِيهِ يَا أَيُّهَا الْكَفَّارَةُ مَا أَخْلَقْتُهُمْ إِلَّا

No Muslim should sleep two nights when he wants to write something in his final testament except that his will is written down and placed by his head. (Agreed upon)

2) To combine fear with hope: one should fear Allâh’s punishment, punishment which one deserves because of his wrongdoings, while one should also hope for mercy and forgiveness. On one occasion, the Prophet ﷺ went to meet a young man who was dying and he said to him:

كَيْفَ تَجَلَّدْ

“How do you find yourself?”

The young man said, “By Allâh: O Messenger of Allâh, I indeed hope from Allâh and indeed, I fear because of my sins.” The Prophet ﷺ said:

لَا يَجْنُبُنَا فِي قَلْبِ عَيْبٍ فِي مَيْلٍ هَذَا الحَوْضُنُ إِلَّا أَعْفَاهُ اللَّهُ مَا


3) When one is sick and is on the verge of dying, one should especially have hope in Allâh: that He will forgive him, that He will have mercy on him, for indeed, His forgiveness is vast and
His mercy embraces all things. The Prophet ﷺ said:

«لا يعوشن أحدهم إلا وهو يعيش بِالله الطَّلَّانِ»

Let one of you not die except with good thoughts (and hopes) about Allâh.

The Sign of a Good Ending

1) Buraidah bin Al-Husaib, may Allâh be pleased with him, related that he heard the Prophet ﷺ say:

«موت آلمن يحرق الجبين»

The death of a believer is with sweat on his forehead.
(Recorded by Ahmad, An-Nasa’i, At-Tirmithi, Ibn Majah, Ibn Hibban, Al-Hakim and others.)

2) In a Hadîth related by ‘Abdullah bin ‘Amr, the Prophet ﷺ said:

«لا من مسلم يموت يوم الجمعة أو يوم الجمعة إلا وله من الله فئة الغفران»

No Muslim dies on Friday or on Thursday night except that Allâh protects him from the trials of the grave. (Recorded by Ahmad, and Al-Fasawi and it was graded Sahih by Al-Albani in Abkamul Fana’.)

3) One of the signs of a good ending is for one to die while one is performing a good deed, an act of obedience to Allâh Almighty and His Messenger ﷺ, such as to die while praying, fasting, performing Hajj or Umrah, fighting in the way of Allâh, or while calling others to the way of Allâh. If Allâh wishes good for someone, He guides him to perform good deeds when He is about to take his life.

4) Another good indication for someone who has died is for Muslims after him to praise him kindly. Anas, may Allâh be pleased with him, related that when some Muslims passed by a funeral, they praised the deceased in a good way. Upon hearing them, the Prophet ﷺ said:

«وَجَبَّتُهُ»

“It has become binding.”

Then they passed by another funeral and they described the dead person as having bad qualities. So the Prophet ﷺ said:
Lesson Eighteen

"It has become binding."

Then ‘Umar bin Al-Khattab, may Allah be pleased with him, asked, “What has become binding.” He answered:

"This one you praised in a good way, and so Paradise became binding for him. And this one you evaluated as being bad, and so the Fire became binding for him: You are Allah’s witnesses on His earth.” (Agreed upon)

5) Other good signs you may read on the face or body of someone right after he dies:
   i) A smile on his face
   ii) His index finger is pointed
   iii) A shining or illuminated face, which results from hearing glad tidings from the Angel of Death

6. There are also a number of signs that indicate an evil ending; among them are the following:
   i) To die while one is associating partners with Allah or is neglectful in one’s prayers or in any other of Allah and His Messenger’s commands. Some examples of this is for one to die while one is singing, listening to music, watching lewd films, drinking alcohol, or taking drugs.
   ii) After death, some bad signs can be seen on one’s face or body, such as a frown, darkness, a darkness that results from having the Angel of Death giving him news of Allah’s anger. Another sign is blackness on one’s face and body — and we seek protection with Allah from all evil. (Al-Wujzahab by Shaikh ‘Abdur-Rahman Al-Ghith 46-48.)

Supplication And Patience

The loved ones of the deceased who remain after his death must be patient, especially in the early hours after his death, and more especially when one is just given news of a loved one’s death. The
Prophet ﷺ said:

«إِنَّمَا النَّصْرُ عَلَى الْحَرَامِ الأولُ»

Indeed patience is only during the initial shock.

Furthermore, one should supplicate for the deceased and say a well-known phrase that is given in this Hadith:

هَمْ نَغْلُبُ عَلَيْهِ مَعْجَبًا مَّعْجَبًا: إِنَّ اللَّهَ وَإِنَّا إِلَيْهِ رَاجِعُونَ، الْلَّهُمَّ أَجْزِني
في مَعْجَبٍ وَأُحْلِفُ لِي حَيْرًا بِمَتَى، إِنَّ أَجْزَآءَ اللَّهِ تَعَالَى فِي مَعْجَبِهِ
وَأُحْلِفُ لِلَّهِ حَيْرًا بِمَتَى

Whenever a worshipper is afflicted with a calamity and then says, “Indeed we belong to Allâh, and indeed, to Him we are returning; O Allâh, reward me in this calamity of mine and substitute for me that which is better (than what I have lost),” Allâh rewards him because of his calamity and substitutes for him that which is better than what he lost. (Recorded by Muslim)

The Prophet ﷺ also said:

«فَأَيُوَلُ اللَّهُ الْهَالَكِ: مَن يَعْبُدَ اللَّهَ عَلَى حَرَامٍ إِذَا قَضَى صَنَاعَتُهُ مِنْ أَهْلِ الْمَدْيَنَةِ ثُمَّ الحَسَنَيَةَ إِلَّا الْجَاهِلِيَّةَ»

Allâh says, “When I take the prized one from this world of one of my believing worshippers, and when that believing worshipper then seeks reward from me (for that calamity), there is no other reward for him except Paradise.” (Recorded by Ahmad with a Sahih chain)

****

**First:** As one is dying, others should prompt him to say, “None has the right to be worshipped but Allâh,” for the Prophet ﷺ said:

«کُلُوا مَنْ تَعَانِبُونَ مِنَ اللَّهِ إِلَّا اللَّهُ»

Prompt those from you who are dying (those upon whom the
Lesson Eighteen

signs of death are visible) to say, “None has the right to be worshipped except Allâh.” (Recorded by Muslim in his Sabîh)

Second: When you are sure that someone has just died, close his eyes and tie his mouth shut, because the Sunnah indicates these two actions.

“Prompt those from you who are dying”: If you are with a brother Muslim when he is about to die, you should gently instruct him to say the phrase of purity: “None has the right to be worshipped except Allâh.” Remind him until he remembers and says it, and when he says it, say no more to him. But if he then speaks other words, remind him again to say the phrase of purity, in the hope that they will be his last words, so that he enters Paradise. The Prophet ﷺ said:

أَقْلِمُوا مَوْتًا: لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ

Prompt those from you who are dying to say, “Laa Ilaha Illallah” (None has the right to be worshipped except Allâh). (Recorded by Muslim). In another Hadîth, he ﷺ said:

وَمَنْ كَانَ آخَرَتْ فَكَلَّمَهُ ﻟَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ

Whoever’s last words are “Laa Ilaha Illallah” enters Paradise. (Recorded by Abu Dawud and it is Sabîh)

“When you are sure that someone has just died”: The Shaikh said that:

1) You should close his eyes. In a Hadîth related by Umm Salamah, she said, “When the Prophet ﷺ entered upon Abu Salamah, whose eyes were still open, he ﷺ closed them and said:

إِنَّ الْرُّوحَ إِذَا فَضَّلَ الْعَيْنَ الْنَّظِّرِ

When the soul is taken, the sight follows it.

2) You should close his mouth, tying them shut — for example, with a piece of cloth, so that when the body is washed, water does not enter it, and so that the features of the face do not
become distorted.

3) In addition to what the Shaikh mentioned, you should somehow relax the joints of the body immediately after death, making it easier to move the body around, to wash it, and to wrap it up.

4) Some sort of weight should be placed on the stomach of the dead, preventing any waste matter from exiting when the washing is delayed.

5) The body should be covered; ‘Aishah, may Allah be pleased with her, related that when the Prophet ﷺ died, he was enshrouded. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim)

6) The dead should be buried quickly, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

أَشْرَعْنَا بِالجَناَزَةِ فَإِنَّ نَذْرَ صَالِحَةٌ فَحَبْرُ تَقْدِيمُهَا إِلَيْكُمْ، وَإِنَّ نَذْرَ سَوِيٍّ

خَلَقُ فَضْلُ تَصِيَّرُهُ عَنْ رَأْيَكُمْ

Hasten the funeral, for if it (the soul) is righteous, then you are leading it to what is good; and if it is otherwise, then it is evil that you are riddling yourselves of. (Agreed upon)

7) Those who remain behind should be quick in paying off the debts of the deceased. Abu Hurairah related that the Prophet ﷺ said:

ُقِينَ السَّيَامِ مَعَ الْمَدْيَنِيَّةِ حَتَّى يُغْضِبَ عَلَيْهِ

The soul of a believer is suspended by his debt, until it is paid off for him. (Recorded by Al-Tirmithi. See Al-Wa jazab, p. 46.)

Third: It is compulsory to wash the body of the dead Muslim, unless he was a martyr who died on the battlefield, for he is neither washed nor prayed upon; rather, he is simply buried in the clothes he was wearing. The Prophet ﷺ neither washed the dead (Muslims) of Uhud nor did he pray over them.

Fourth: the ‘Aurab of the dead should be covered with a cloth. That cloth should be raised slightly and his
stomach should be squeezed gently. Then the one who is washing the body should take a piece of cloth, wrap it around his hands, and wash the private areas of the body. Next, he should perform ablution on him — the same ablution that is made for prayer. Then he should wash his head and beard with water and Sīdīr (a special plant, whose leaves are crushed and then are used for cleaning) or something similar to it. Next, he should wash the right side of the body, following that with the left. Then he should repeat the whole process for a second and a third time — each time passing his hands on the deceased’s stomach. When he passes his hands over the stomach, some waste matter may be discharged, and if that happens, he should clean it and then block the orifices with cotton or something similar. If the orifice doesn’t hold together (discharges keep coming out), he may cover them with special clay or he may use any other technique or material known in modern-day medicine, such as plaster.

“**It is compulsory to wash...**”: When a Muslim dies, whether he be young or old, whether part of his body remains or the whole of it, it is compulsory to wash his corpse, the exception being the martyr of the battlefield, who died at the hands of the disbelievers while he was fighting in the way of Allāh. The Prophet ﷺ said,

> لا تعًسَلُوهُمّم إِنَّ اللَّهَ جَزَّاهُمْ أَوْ نَفَعَ اللَّهُ هُمْ فِي جَهَّالِهِمْ

Do not wash them, for every injury and every drop of blood will exude the odor of musk on the Day of Judgement.
(Recorded by Ahmad with a Sahīh chain)

**The Virtues Of Washing A Corpse**

In a Hadīth related by Abu Ra‘f, may Allāh be pleased with him, the Prophet ﷺ said:
Whoever washes a (dead) Muslim and then keeps to himself (what he saw of the body), Allāh forgives him forty times.

In another narration, the Hadīth ends:

"خُرُجَ مِنْ دُوَّارِيْهِ کَبَّرُهُ وَلَدْنَهُ أَمْثَلُهُمَا"

He will be freed from sins, so that he will be like he was on the day his mother gave him birth.

In yet another narration, instead of forty times, the Hadīth ends:

"أَرَبَّعِيْنَ كَبَّرُهُمَا"

He will be forgiven for forty great sins.

"وَمَنْ خُرِجَ مِنْ دُوَّارِيْهِ الْيَوْمُ الْيَمِينَةَ مِنْ سَلْسُلِيْهِ، وَإِسْتَقْرَىَ الْجَنَّةَ، وَمَنْ خُرِجَ مِنْ حُمْرَةِ فَأَجَرْيَهُ هِيَا أَجْرَىْ الْلَّهُ لَهُ أَجْرُ مَشْكَنُ أَشْكَنْ إِنَّهَا إِلَىْ الْيَوْمِ الْيَمِينَةَا"

And whoever shrouds him, Allāh will clothe him with the Sundus and I斯塔braq of Paradise on the Day of Judgement. And whoever digs a grave to cover him in, Allāh will reward him with a dwelling near Him on the Day or Judgement. (Recorded by Al-Hakim and Al-Bāhai. It was also recorded by At-Tahārān in Al-Kābir with the wording “forty great sins” and it was graded Sahih by Al-Albānī in Abkamul Jana‘i‘z.)

By Fulfilling Two Conditions, The One Who Washes The Corpse Of A Muslim Receives A Great Reward:

1) He must cover the body of the corpse, making sure no one sees the corpse’s private parts, and then he must not inform others about the distasteful things he saw.

2) He should seek Allāh’s reward for that, not seeking any worldly reward, not even thankfulness from others: it is an established principle in the Shari‘ah that Allāh accepts only those acts of worship that are done purely for Him.

What is the Sunnah in regards to washing the deceased? Umm ‘Aṭiyyah, may Allāh be pleased with her, related that as she and others were washing the body of the Prophet’s daughter, Zainab, the
Lesson Eighteen

Prophet entered and said:

«أغسلها ثلاثًا أو خمسًا أو سبعًا أو أكثر من ذلك إذا رأيت ذلك يماءً وسأله»

"Wash her three times, or five, or seven, or more if you deem that that should be done; wash her with water and Sirdr."

Umm 'Atiyah then asked, "An odd number:" He said,

«نعم واعمل في الأخيرة كافورًا أو سبتًا من الكافور. إنما فرغم فاتيهم»

"Yes, and in the last washing use camphor or something from camphor. Then when you are finished, inform me."

Umm 'Atiyah later said, "When we finished, he gave us a loincloth and said:

«أشعرها إليها»

"Make her wear it."

And we combed her hair into three braids (in one narration: ‘we undid her hair and washed it’). So we divided her hair into three sections: two braids and her forelock, which we arranged behind her. And the Messenger of Allah said to us:

«ابدأ بفي اليمين وهذا نطقك ووضوء الخرجاء»

"Begin with the right side and with the areas of ablution."

(Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim)

We should be careful who we choose to wash our dead, for Ibn ‘Umar, may Allah be pleased with him, said, "Let only the trustworthy ones wash your dead." (See Irna’ul-Ghali by Al-Albani)

The trustworthy one is he who is steadfast in performing his five compulsory prayers in congregation, who is known for his honor, manners, trust, and good dealings. (Al-Wajizah 53-54)

How To Wash The Dead[1]

- Who should wash the dead body of a Muslim? The Muslim may write in his testimony that he wants a specific person to wash him; otherwise, his father or grandfather and his son or

[1] Taken from Al-Wajizah, p. 59 and what is after that, with some revisions.
grandchildren should wash him. In case that the dead person did not assign someone to wash him, his family should choose an honest, trustworthy man to do the job; and a similar ruling applies to a woman.

- The place of the washing should be covered on all sides with a roof.

- The one responsible for washing the dead (i.e., who has made intention to wash the corpse) may choose two people from those who attend the funeral to witness the washing. First, he should choose someone who shows signs of being a righteous man, so that he may teach him the Sunnah in regards to washing. Next, he should choose someone who has signs of sinning on his face, so that he can see the state of the dead, in the hope that it will serve as an admonition, in the hope that he will return to the way of Allah (and enough of an admonition is death itself).

- When the one in charge of washing is actually washing the corpse, no one should be allowed to enter the room, except for those whom he needs — such as the two we mentioned above; it is disliked for others to be present.

**What May The One Who Is Washing Use?**

- He may wear a surgical mask, to protect his nose and mouth from foul odors.

- He may wear some form of plastic covering over his clothes to prevent filth or even any Sidr or camphor from staining his clothes.

- He may wear gloves: first to avoid direct contact with the corpse and second to prevent filth from reaching his hands.

- And he may wear protective covering over his shoes to prevent filth from getting to them.

**Preparing The Water And The Sidr In A Washing Container:**

- The container should be filled with an amount of water that is proportionate to the size of the corpse.

- Then the Sidr (the leaves of a special plant that are crushed and then used for cleaning) should be brought.

- For every coffee-size cup of Sidr, 4 liters of water should be used.
So the small-sized person should have 4 liters of water used along with a coffee-sized cup of Sidr. Someone bigger than him may have 8 liters of water along with 2 coffee-sized cup of Sidr. More may be used in the same proportion if the size of the corpse is greater, and less may be used in the same proportion if the size of the corpse is smaller.

**Preparing The Camphor And The Water:**

For every four liters of water, 2 cubes of camphor (a special chemical with an aromatic smell) should be used; this is the amount used for the small body. So the above-average-sized body may need eight liters of water and four cubes of camphor. The greater the size of the body the more water and camphor should be used, but in the same proportion, and the smaller the size of the body the less water and camphor should be used, but also in the same proportion.

**Note:** There are two kinds of camphor: it either comes soft so that it can be ground with one's hands or it comes hard, so that a special instrument is needed to crush it, so that in the end, it becomes like particles of sugar.

**Before Washing The Body:**

1) A large cloth should be used to cover the *Aurab* of the body, which is the area from one's navel to one's knees.

2) The clothes should be removed:

   i) If the body and its joints are still loose and pliant enough that the clothes can easily be removed, they should be removed and washed so that one in need may benefit from them.

   ii) If the body is hard — perhaps it wasn’t softened after death or perhaps because of a long stay in a freezer — the clothes should be removed using scissors. The cutting should begin at the right cuff until the neck, then the left cuff until the neck. Then the pockets should be cut until the end of the garment; care should be taken so that when the clothes are removed, the cloth above the body remains steady, so that no private area of the corpse becomes exposed. If the corpse is wearing pants, then the cutting can take place either from the right or the left of the protective cloth above. The body can then be turned over to the left and to the right so that the
pieces of clothing are removed, but again, it must be made sure that the cloth above always covers the 'Aurab of the body.

iii) If the fingernails or toenails are long, the one who is cleaning the body may clip them; he may also shave the armpit hair if it is dense; if it is short, he may pluck that hair; and he may also trim the moustache of the deceased.

iv) The nose and mouth of the deceased should be cleaned and then blocked off with cotton, only to be removed after the body is washed completely.

v) If the body is so dirty that water and Sidar cannot remove the filth, then the following mixture can be used:
   a) Two spoons of grated soap.
   b) Two spoons of shampoo.
   c) Two spoons of disinfectant.
   d) Three large glasses of water.

All of the above should be mixed together and then used to clean the body with a sponge. The one who is washing should begin with the head, continue to the face; thereafter, he should turn the body on its left side, so that he can scrub the right side of the body that is facing up; then he does the same on the other side. When washing the private parts, he should insert his hands from underneath the covering, always making sure that the cloth continues to cover the 'Aurab of the corpse. Now that the mixture has been scrubbed all over, water should be brought and again, the one who is washing should begin with the head, then the face, then turning the body on its left side, washing the right side, and then the opposite. In this way, both the mixture and the filth are removed.

Note: The mixture should be increased and decreased in proportion to the size of the body. After cleaning the body, or if the body is already clean, we may begin with the following:

1) If the body is pilled, it should be placed in a semi-seated position; then someone should squeeze the stomach gently three times, so that any waste matter that is about to come out may come out; the one who is washing the body should wrap a rag around his hand, and from underneath the cloth, clean both the front and
rear private parts, removing any waste. While he is doing that, someone else should continually pour water over his hands from above.

If, however, the body is hard — because it was not made pliant or because it came from the freezer — it is enough to simply open the legs; after that is accomplished, the one who is washing should insert his hands from underneath the cloth and clean the private areas, both in the front and the rear. If he sees that the waste continues to come out of the orifices, he should wash them for a second and a third time; but if waste still continues after that, then he may use a piece of cloth to block up the orifice, and then he can keep the cloth in place by using a bandage.

2) The one who is washing should then join the deceased’s hands together, saying “Bismillah (In the Name of Allâh).” Then he should:

- Wash the hands of the deceased three times.
- Wipe over the mouth and nose three times each.
- Wash the face three times.
- Wash the right forearm three times and then the left forearm three times.
- With wet hands, wipe over the head, going back and forth, and then over the ears, as in the Islamic ablution.
- Then he should wash the right foot three times, followed by the left foot three times.

3) Then he should bring Sidr, washing the head and face, lathering them with the Sidr; thereafter, he should rub the Sidr all over the body, beginning with the right side, from the shoulders until he reaches the feet; and then the same with the left side. On both sides, when he is rubbing the private areas, he should do so by inserting his hands underneath the cloth. Then he should repeat the washing a second time with water and Sidr.

4) This time, camphor should be used in washing the head, face, right side of the body (beginning with the shoulders until he reaches the feet), and left side of the body. And again, when dealing with the private areas, to apply the camphor, he should insert his hands from under the cloth. It should be known that
camphor is a kind of perfume: though it hardens the body and makes it cold, it is poisonous to insects.

5) Another towel should be brought: every part of the body that is visible should be dried with it, such as the face, hands, shoulders, chest, back, and calves. Then this wet towel should be placed over the cloth that covers the private areas of the body: if the former is applied gently, it absorbs much that is wet underneath, and thus the body is ready for shrouding.

**Some Important Points To Consider**

1) When dealing with a body that has been mutilated or injured in some way or another, the afflicted area should be cleaned and then wrapped with cotton, which should be covered with a covering that is made of the following mixture: water, Sidr, and camphor.

2) The ruling for washing is the same for males and females above the age of seven, except that the hair of females should be tied in three braids. Children under the age of seven have no 'Awrab, so a male may wash a female and vice versa, washing the body three times without making the Islamic ablution. The condition, however, is that if a male is washing the corpse of a female under the age of seven or vice versa, the one who is washing must be a Mahram (i.e., one who the deceased could never marry while alive) of the deceased.

Men may not wash women other than their wives and women may not wash men other than their husbands. The Messenger of Allāh ﷺ once said to ‘Aishah,

"ما أضرِّكِ لَوْ مَاتَتْ أُمُّيَّةً فَيَغْسَلُونَا وَكَفَّارَاتُنَا وَقَمْتُونَا دَخَلْتُنَا عَلَيْكَ وَكَفَّارَاتُنَا!"

"It will not harm you that you should die before me, that I should wash you, then enshroud you, then pray over you, and then bury you.” (Recorded by Ahmad in Al-Musnad).

After the Prophet ﷺ died, ‘Aishah said:

"لاَمَا اسْتَمَنَّتْ مِنْ أَقْرَىِّ مَا أَسْتَمَنَّتْ مَا عَبَّسَ رَسُولَ اللَّهِ ﷺ إِلَّا يَسِيرَتُها!"

"If I would now face the matter that is now behind me, no one would have washed the Messenger of Allāh ﷺ except for his wives.” (Recorded by Ahmad in Al-Musnad)
3) The miscarried fetus that dies before it reaches four months is neither washed nor enshrouded nor prayed over; rather a hole is simply dug for it, and it is buried. But the miscarried fetus that is older than four months is a human being because the *Rub* (soul) has been blown into it; therefore it takes the ruling of the child that is under seven years of age: it is washed, named, and the *Aqiqah* is performed for it.

4) When washing the body, one should use water that is suitable to the weather, just as is done for people who are alive: in the summer, hot water should not be used, and in the winter, cold water should not be used.

5) If in its mouth there is a gold tooth that is embedded, the body should not be harmed: the tooth should not be removed; however, if the tooth is not embedded, but is easily removable, it should be removed. That is if the mouth is open; if it is closed, it should not be disturbed in any of the two above-mentioned situations.

It should also be known that were the one washing the body to simply pour water over every part of the corpse, then that would be sufficient.

The Shaikh said that a special kind of clay might be needed to block the orifices, referring to clay that has no sand in it.

If more than three times is required to clean the body, then that is permissible; also care should be taken to clean the hidden areas, such as behind one’s knees, in one’s armpits and navel. Based on what is related from Ibn ‘Umar, these areas should be perfumed.

To give special status to the body parts that touch the floor during prostration, the one washing the body may apply perfume to those areas. It would even be a good thing to apply perfume over the entire body, which is what was done to Anas and Ibn‘Umar, may Allah be pleased with them. One can also use steam aromas for the body; the Prophet ﷺ said:

إِذَا جَعَلَ فِي جَسَامِهِ أَطْرَشَةً فَأَجْعَلُوهُ تَلَانًا

If you are going to use perfumed incense for the dead body, then use it three times. (Recorded by Ibn Abi Shaitbah).
When A Body Cannot Be Washed, Tayammum Should Be Performed

If water is not available for washing the corpse, or if a man dies among a group of women or vice versa, Tayammum should be performed on the corpse; it should then be enshrined, prayed upon, and then buried. Just as the Junub (one in a major state of impurity) performs Tayammum when water is not available, so too should Tayammum be performed on the corpse when water is not available or cannot be used. The Prophet ﷺ said:

"إِنَّا نَجَلَبَ الْمَرَّةَ اِبْنِ رَجُالٍ أَيُّهَا سَبِيلُ مِنْهَا أَيُّهَا الْمَرَّةَ عَلَيْهَا، وَالرَّجُلُ ذِّلَّةً مَعَ نِسٍّاهُ\"

If a woman who lives among men dies and there is no other woman with them, and when a man dies among women and there is no other man among them, Tayammum is performed on them and then they are buried. (Recorded by Abu Dawud in his book Al-Masalik and Al-Baihaqi)

The people referred to in this Hadith are of the same status of he who finds no water.

Fifth: The best way to enshroud a male body is to enshroud it in three white sheets, using neither shirt nor turban. And as the Prophet ﷺ did, the sheets should be wrapped around the body. However, there is no harm in wrapping the body in a shirt, a loincloth, and a wrapping.

A woman is enshruded in five garments: a shirt, veil, loincloth, and two wrappings. A male child may be enshruded in one or three garments, and a female child is enshruded in a shirt and two wrappings.

All that is mentioned above is recommended. In terms of what is compulsory for males and females, children and adults, they must be wrapped in at least one garment that
covers the entire body. However, if the deceased was in a state of *ihram*, meaning that he was in the inviolable state of a pilgrim, then he should simply be washed with water and *Sihr*, and enshrouded in the dress of the pilgrim (one lower garment and one upper garment) or in some other dress. Neither his head nor his face should be covered, and no perfume is to be used on him, because he will be raised (in the same state of *ihram*) on the Day of Judgement, speaking the famous phrase (*Labbaik...*) of the pilgrim. That the pilgrim is an exception is related in an authentic *Hadith*. If the one who died in a state of *ihram* is a woman, then she is enshrouded like anyone else, except for the following rulings: no perfume is to be used, and though her face and hands are not to be covered with the veil and gloves, they are to be covered with the sheets that are used for her shrouding, the same sheets that we mentioned when we described the enshrouding of a woman.

**Sixth:** The most deserving person to wash the body, to pray over it, and to bury it is the person who was chosen for the task by the deceased. If no one was chosen by the deceased, the next worthy person for the task is the father, followed by the grandfather, followed by the closest male relatives — that is, if the deceased is a male.

The most deserving person to wash the female is also the person who was chosen by the deceased. The next deserving person is the mother, then the grandmother, followed in succession by her closest female relatives. A husband may wash his wife and vice versa, because Abu Bakr washed his wife and because ‘Ali also washed his wife, Fatimah, may Allāh be pleased with them all.
The Ruling On Enshrouding The Dead
And How To Go About It

When the deceased Muslim is washed, it is compulsory to enshroud it, with a garment that covers the entire body. Mus‘ab bin ‘Umair, may Allâh be pleased with him, one of the martyrs in the battle of Uhud, was enshruded in a garment that was short in length, so the Prophet ﷺ ordered his Companions to cover his head and upper body with the garment and to cover his legs with lemon grass.
(Recorded by Al-Bukhari)

This indicates that it is compulsory to cover the entire body. The lemon grass was used because no other garment made of cloth was available to them.

How To Enshroud The Deceased

The majority of scholars agree that the garment used should be thick enough that it doesn’t reveal the contours or the color of the body, a ruling that applies to men and women, the exception being for the one who is in a state of Ibram. The best cloth that one can be enshruded in is mentioned in a Hadîth related by ‘Aishah, may Allâh be pleased with her, recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim, and in the following Hadîth:

«أحسن ما رزتم الله رزح في فوزكم ومساحكم البياض... الحديث»

The best thing to visit Allâh with in your graves and in your Majâls is with white... (Recorded by Ibn Majah)

First Step: Measurements of the Shroud

1) We must take into consideration the size of the deceased. If, in width, he measures 30 cm, then 90 cm of cloth is used; if, in width, he measures 40 cm, then 120 cm of cloth is needed; and if his width is 50 cm, 150 cm of cloth is needed.

2) Next, we may take into consideration the height of the deceased. If he is 180 cm tall, we will need to add 60 cm of cloth; if he is 150 cm tall, we will need to add 50 cm of cloth; if he is 120 cm tall, we will need to add 40 cm of cloth. The additional cloth is needed to tie the shroud above the head and below the feet.
Lesson Eighteen

Second Step: Enshrouding the Body

1) How to enshroud a man:

   Based on the Hadith of 'Aishah, may Allah be pleased with her, a man is enshrouded in three garments; she said, "The Messenger of Allah ﷺ was enshrouded in three white garments made from cotton; neither shirt nor turban was used; he was placed inside of the garments and was then wrapped." (Recorded in the Six Books, also by Ibn Jarud and Al-Baihaqi)

   i) The straps used to tie the shroud are taken from the width of the shroud itself, so if the body's width measure 60 cm, for example, the width of the shroud should measure 180 cm, and the straps used to tie the corpse can be taken from that width; the number of straps should be odd — 7, for example.

   ii) If the body is 180 cm tall, we add 60 cm, and the shroud becomes 240 cm in length. The three shrouds should be placed one on top of the other on the bier (frame used for carrying the corpse), and the longest of the shrouds is to be placed beside the head.

   Note: The measurements for the shrouds and the belts are known from experience; otherwise, there are no specific measurements mentioned in the Shafi’i.

   iii) A Tubban (a garment that covers the lower body, but is one piece only and has no legs) is cut from cloth, and it measures 100 cm in length by 25 cm in width. It should be placed on top of the shrouds, underneath the buttocks of the body. A piece of cotton is placed on the Tubban, as well as a mixture of perfume and camphor; the mixture should also be applied to the shroud that is on top: two cups of musk and four cubes of camphor (the quantity should be reduced if the body is smaller).

   iv) The body should then be placed on top of the shrouds, still with a cloth on top to cover the private areas. Then any kind of perfume stick should be applied on the places of prostration, honoring prostration to Allah. Then the perfume should be applied to the rest of the body, followed by areas that are difficult to reach, such as behind the knees. Then the
arms of the deceased should be placed parallel to its sides. The Tubban is then tied on the body to prevent any impurities that may continue to discharge, protecting the shrouds and making sure that the purity of the deceased continues until it is buried.

v) Next, the head and legs should be placed and wrapped in the right side of the first shroud, followed by the left side, at which point the covering over the body is removed. The same procedure should then be carried out using the second and the third shrouds.

vi) The first belt is used to tie the head, and whatever is extra from the shrouds should be returned to the face. Then the legs are tied. The remaining seven belts are then evenly distributed over the body; they should be tied on the left side, making it easy to loosen the knots when the body is placed on his right side in the grave.

2) How to enshroud a woman:

It is recommended to use five pieces for a woman: 2 wrappings, a shirt, a loincloth, and a veil. If she measures 50 cm in width and 150 cm in length, the width of the wrappings should be 150 cm, from which the belts are taken, and again, the straps should be in odd number — seven, for example. Since she is 150 cm tall, 200 cm of cloth should be used. The straps are placed on the bier first, and then the shrouds. The length and width of the shrouds follows the same principles as those outlined for men.

i) The cutting of the shirt: The shirt is measured two times the length from the shoulders to the end of the ankles. An opening is cut in the middle, from which the head enters. The upper part is of a width of 90 cm.

ii) The loincloth should be 90 cm in width and 150 cm in length.

iii) The veil is 90 square centimeters.

iv) The Tubban should measure 25 cm by 90 cm. It is placed on top of the loincloth, so that it is directly underneath the buttocks of the deceased. A small amount of cotton is placed on it, as well as a mixture of perfume and camphor, and the same mixture is spread over the loincloth and shirt. For all
female corpses, the length of the shirt, loincloth, and veil is 90 cm.

v) The corpse is then carried and placed on top of the shrouds with the body covering still in place. The Tubban is the first to be tied, to prevent any waste from discharging onto the shrouds. The right part of the loincloth is tied and then the left side. The body is rolled inside, until the body covering is no longer needed and is discarded. The head is then placed inside of the shirt, after which it is placed on the rest of the body, with the sides of the garment being placed underneath the body. Next, the veil is brought: the head, its hair, and the face are veiled.

vi) The wrappings (shrouds): The head is placed on top and then is rolled inside of the right side of the first wrapping, followed by her legs. Then her head and legs are placed and rolled into the left side of the first wrapping. Next, the same is done with the second wrapping.

vii) The straps: First the head is tied and then the feet. Whatever is left over from both ends is returned to the head and the feet, and is tied with the extra length of the strap. Next, the remaining five straps are tied evenly over the body, with the knots on the left side, making it easy to loosen them when the body is placed on its right side inside of the grave.

Note:

1) A young boy under the age of seven is enshrouded with one sheet that is big enough to cover his entire body, or with three sheets.

2) A young girl under the age of seven is enshrouded with a shirt and two wrappings.

3) Musk should be applied between the shrouds used for the deceased. Abu Sa'id Al-Khudri, may Allah be pleased with him, related that the Prophet ﷺ said:

«أُفِّضِقْ الْبَّيْدُ الْأُمْوَشَكَ»

The best perfume is musk. (Recorded by Muslim)

Ibn Al-Munthir said, “The majority of the scholars we know are of the
view that a woman should be enshrusted in seven sheets...that is preferred because while she was alive, a woman’s *Aurab* is larger than the area of a man’s *Aurab*. While she was alive and in a state of *Ibram*, the best state to be in, she wore stitched clothing, so she may wear stitched clothing after her death. On the other hand, when alive, a man in a state of *Ibram* is not allowed to wear stitched clothing. Therefore because men and women differ in their clothing while they are living, they also differ after they are dead.” (*Al-Mughni* 3:391).

A man may wash the body of his wife and vice versa. ‘Aishah, may Allâh be pleased with her, said, “If I were to face now that which is behind me, no one would have washed the Prophet except for his wives.” (Recorded by Abu Dawud and Ibn Majah). In another *Hadith*, she said, “The Prophet ﷺ once returned to me after a funeral in Al-Baqi’ (famous graveyard in Al-Madinah), and I had such a great headache that I was saying, “Oh, my head.” He ﷺ said:

`إِذَا أَنَا أَرَادُ اسْتَخْطَافَكَ فَخُذْ فَيۡ تَ لِي فَمَنْ أَخَذَكَ فَخُذْ كَتِبَى عَلَيْهِ قَالَتْهُ` ُّلِكَ اللَّهُ أَنتَ لَهُ`ٰثَ انْصَوْفَى

Rather me (as well), Oh, my head. It would not hurt you were you to die before me, and then I washed you, enshrusted you, prayed over you, and buried you. (Recorded by Ahmad and *Al-Daraquni*)

The Shaikh mentioned that Abu Bakr, may Allâh be pleased with him, washed the body of his wife; he was referring to Asma’ bint ‘Umâs Al-Kath’amiyyah, may Allâh be pleased with her, who accepted Islam in the early days of Makkah. She emigrated with Jafari, may Allâh be pleased with him, her husband at the time. When Jafari was martyred, Abu Bakr married her, and when he died, ‘Ali, may Allâh be pleased with her, married her.

---

**Seventh:** How to pray over the dead: “Saying *Takbir* four times; after the first time, one should recite *Al-Fatihah*, and it is also good to recite a short *Suâb* after that, or
even one verse or two — a practice that is based on an authentic Hadith related by Ibn ‘Abbas, may Allah be pleased with them.

After the second Takbir, one should send blessings upon the Prophet ﷺ just as one does so in the seated position of the prayer. Then he should say the Takbir for a third time, and say:

“O Allah, forgive our living and our dead, those present and those absent, our young and our old, our males and our females. O Allah, whom among us You keep alive, then let such a life be upon Islam, and whom among us You take unto Yourself, then let such a death be upon faith. O Allah, forgive and have mercy upon him, excuse him and pardon him, and make honorable his reception. Expand his entry, and cleanse him with water, snow, and ice, and purify him of sin as a white robe is purified of filth. Exchange his home for a better home, and his family for a better family, and his spouse for a better spouse. Admit him into Paradise, protect him from the punishment of the grave and the torment of the Fire; make spacious for him his grave and illuminate it for him. O Allah, do not deprive us of his reward and do not let us stray after him.”

Then one should make the fourth Takbir, after which one says one Taslim to the right.

With each Takbir, it is recommended to raise one’s hands. And of course, the pronouns change according to who it is that died: if it is a female: “O Allah, forgive her”; if it is more than one person that died, “O Allah, forgive them.” And if two people died, the Arabic languages accommodates the dual as well, so that one says, “the two of them.”

If the deceased is a child who has not yet reached the age of puberty, rather than supplicating for his forgiveness one
should say, “O Allah, make him a preceding reward and a stored treasure for his parents, and an answered intercessor. O Allah, through him, make heavy their Scales and magnify their reward. Unite him with the righteous believers, place him under the care of Ibrahim, and protect him by Your mercy from the torment of Hell.”

The Sunnah is for the Imam to stand parallel to the head of the deceased male, and parallel to the middle of the deceased female. If the funeral prayer is for more than one person, the male body should be placed closest to the Imam. If there are children as well, then the male children are placed before the female adults, who are to be placed before the female children. The head of the male child should be parallel to the head of the male adult, and the middle part of the woman’s body should be parallel to the head of the male adult. The same applies to the female child; her head is parallel to the head of the female adult, and the middle part of her body is parallel to the head of the male adult. Those praying with the Imam should all stand behind him, unless there remains one who finds no place behind him; he may stand to the Imam’s right.

“How to pray over the dead...”: It is Fardh Kifayah (communal obligation) to participate in a Muslim’s funeral: if some of the Muslims perform it, the rest are absolved from the obligation. Indeed, the Prophet ﷺ used to pray over deceased Muslims. But when a Muslim died, leaving outstanding debts without making provision to have them repaid, the Prophet ﷺ wouldn’t pray over that person; instead, he would say to his Companions,

"صلاة علي صاحبكم"

Pray over your companion. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari)
Lesson Eighteen

The Conditions of Praying Over The Dead

The same conditions that apply to a regular prayer apply to the funeral prayer; for example, then, one must be in a state of purity, one must cover one's 'Aurab, and one must face the Qiblab. Because the Prophet ﷺ called the funeral prayer a prayer when he said:

«ضلوا علیّ صاحبكم»

Pray over your companion.

It is given all of the rulings of any other regular prayer.

Elements That Are Compulsory To The Funeral Prayer

1) To stand, but only for one who is able.
2) Intention, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

«إِنَّمَا الْأَعْمَالُ لِلْيَدَيْنِ»

Indeed, deeds are only by their intentions.
3) Recitation of Al-Fatihah or praising Allâh.
4) Sending blessings and peace upon the Prophet ﷺ.
5) The four Takbirs.
6) Supplication.
7) The final Taslim.

How To Perform The Funeral Prayer

1) The bodies are placed in the direction of the Qiblab.
2) As the Imam stands for the prayer, his followers should stand behind him in three or more rows, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

«فَهُنَّ صَلِّي عَلَيْهِ نَائِثًا صَلِّي فَقَدْ أَوْجَبْتُ»

Whoever has three rows pray over him, then it becomes necessary (i.e., Paradise). (Recorded by At-Tirmithi who graded it Hasan)

4) The worshipper should raise his hands, intending to pray over the one who has died, or if they are more than one, those who died, saying, "Allahu Akbar (Allâh is the Most Great).”
5) The Shaikh said that he should read Al-Fatihah and then a short
**Surah.** Here, the Shaikh is alluding to a Hadith related by Talhah bin ‘Abdullah bin ‘Awf, who said, “I prayed behind Ibn ‘Abbas, may Allah be pleased with them, over a funeral; he recited the Opening of the Book (Al-Fatihah) and then another Surah at such a voice that he made us hear what he was reciting. When the prayer ended, I took his hand, asked him about what he did, and he answered, ‘I only read out loud for you to learn that it is Sunnah and right (to do so).’” (Recorded by Al-Bukhari and Muslim)

6) Then he should say the Takbir and send blessings and peace upon the Prophet ﷺ.

7) Then he should say the Takbir and supplicate for the dead.

8) Then he should say the final Takbir.

9) At this point, if he wishes, he may supplicate and then say the Taslim to end the prayer, or he may (after the fourth Takbir) end the prayer immediately, in both cases by saying the Taslim once. From the Sunnah, we know that the funeral prayer commences when the Imam says the Takbir; he then recites Al-Fatihah silently. Next, he sends blessings upon the Prophet ﷺ after which he supplicates for the dead. And then he ends the prayer by saying the Taslim.

**The Wording Of The Supplication To Be Used During The Funeral Prayer**

There are many different wordings related from the Prophet ﷺ regarding the funeral prayer; any one of them is sufficient; the Shaikh mentioned one wording and here is another:

“O Allah, so-and-so is under Your care and protection, so protect him from the trial of the grave and from the torment of the Fire. Indeed You are faithful and truthful. Forgive and have mercy upon him, surely You are the Oft-Forgiving, The Most Merciful. O Allah, forgive our living and our dead, those present and those absent, our young and our old, our males and our females. O Allah, whom among us You keep alive, then let such a life be upon Islam, and whom among us You take unto Yourself, then let such a death be upon faith. O Allah, do not deprive us of his reward and do not let us stray after him.”
If the deceased is a child, then one should supplicate:

"O Allah, make him a stored treasure, and a preceding reward for his parents. O Allah, through him, make heavy their Scales and magnify their reward. Do not deprive us and them of his reward, and do not put us or them to trial after him. O Allah, unite him with the righteous believers from before, place him under the care of Ibrahim, and exchange his home for a better home, his family for a better family. O Allah, keep him safe from the trials of the grave and from the torment of the Fire."

Both of the above-mentioned supplications are authentic; the supplication that the Shaikh mentioned is found in a Hadith narrated by Abu Hurairah, which is related by Muslim and others.

"The Sunnah is for the Imam to stand...": Abu Ghalib Al-Khayyat related that he witnessed Anas bin Malik pray over the body of a man; during the prayer, Anas stood parallel to the head of the body. When the body was carried off, the body of a woman from the Quraysh was brought. After Abu Hamzah (Anas) was told who she was, he prayed over her, but this time, he stood parallel to the middle of her body. Abu Ghalib said, "Among us on that day was Al-Ala' bin Ziyad Al-Adwi; when Al-Ala' noticed the difference between the way Anas stood over the man and over the woman, he said, 'O Abu Hamzah, did the Prophet ﷺ stand the same way that you stood in relation to the man and in relation to the woman.' He said, 'Yes.' Al-Ala' turned to us and said, 'Memorize (this Sunnah).'” (Recorded by Abu Dawud, At-Tirmithi, and Ibn Majah)

In one narration, Nafi' reported that Ibn 'Umar prayed over nine deceased Muslims at one time. He placed them after the Imam and the women after the Qiblah. He lined the women up in one row, and he placed the corpse of Umm Kulthum, the daughter of Ali, and wife of 'Umar bin Al-Khattab with her son, Zaid, together. The Imam at that time was Sa'id bin Al-As, and among the followers were Ibn 'Abbas, Abu Hurairah, Abu Sa'id, and Abu Qatadah. When the young boy's body was placed beside the Imam (and before the women), one of the men present complained and later related, "I argued against that, and as I looked at Ibn 'Abbas, Abu Hurairah, Abu Sa'id, and Abu Qatadah, I said, 'What is this!' And they said, 'This is the Sunnah.'” (Recorded by 'Abdur-Razzaq, An-Nasa'i and Ibn Jarud)
Following The Funeral Procession

It is Sunnah to follow the funeral procession until the body is buried, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

«عُودُوا الأَمْرِضٍ وَصَلِّوا تَحْيَاةً لِلْجَناَئِيْدِ مَّكْرُوْمَ الْجَناَزَةِ»

Visit the sick and walk with funerals: they will remind you of the Hereafter. (Recorded by Muslim)

It is recommended to walk in a fast pace when carrying the body to the grave, for the Prophet ﷺ said:

«أَشْرَعُوا إِذْ يُنَكَّرُ صَالِحَةُ فَخْبَرْنَ بِكُلِّمَةٍ ذَيْلَ»

Be quick, for if the soul is righteous, then it is good that you are taking him to.

It is recommended to walk in front of the body, for that was the practice of the Prophet ﷺ, Abu Bakr, and ‘Umar. (Recorded by Abu Dawud, An-Nasa’i and others)

As for the virtues of walking with a funeral, the Prophet ﷺ said:

«لَيْفَ أَنْ تَلْقَّى جَنَّةَ مَعَانِي إِيمَانَكَ وَحَبَّاسَتَا، وَكَانَ مَعَهَا حَكَّى يَضَلِّلُ عَلَيْهَا وَيَنْفُرُ مِنْ خَيْرِهَا، كَيْفَانَ بُرْجَعُ مِنْ الأَحْيَاءِ يَتَرَاكَ، أَلِ فَيَرْطَانَ فَإِنَّ أَحْيَانَ (وَكَانَ فَرَجَّحَ عَظِيمَ فَرْطُ العبْرَاءِ)، وَمَعَ صَلَّى عَلَيْهَا لَمْ يَرْجِعَ قَبْلَ أَنْ يَنْذِقَ فَإِلَّا يُبْرِعَ بَيْنَ يَرْطَانَ»

When one follows the funeral of a Muslim, having faith and seeking his reward with Allāh, and when one stays with the funeral until the body is prayed over and its burial is completed, then he returns with two Qirats (a large measurement) of reward, each Qirat is the size of Uhud. When one prays over it, but returns before it is buried, then he returns with one Qirat. (Recorded by Al-Bukhari)

Eighth: How to bury the dead: It is legislated for the grave to be dug to a depth equal to
man being buried. Inside of the grave, there should also be a hole dug (this hole is called a \textit{Lubá}) on the side that is in the direction of the \textit{Qiblát}. The body should then be placed on his right side in the \textit{Lubá}. The knot of the shroud should be loosened; after it is loosened, it should not be removed, but left alone. The face of the deceased should not be exposed, regardless whether the body is female or male. Then bricks should be placed on the \textit{Lubá} and plastered, so that the body is protected from dirt. If bricks are not available, then tablets or stones or wood may be used: anything to protect the body from dirt. Next, dirt is poured down, and it is recommended to say, \textit{“Bismillâh wa’Alâ Millâtî Rasoolillâh. (In the Name of Allâh, and upon the way of the Messenger of Allâh).”} The ground of the grave should be raised to a level equal to the span of a hand. If possible, pebbles should be placed above the grave and it should be sprinkled with water.

It is legislated for those who participated in the burial to stand beside the grave (after the burial) and supplicate for the deceased. When the Prophet ﷺ would finish burying a body, he would stand by the grave and say:

\begin{quote}
\textit{“A’sûrû fîkum, wa’A’sálû lâta’i’tum, kâliîa’tulâyîn, kâliîa’tulâyîn”}
\end{quote}

Ask forgiveness for your brother, and ask (Allâh) to make him firm, for indeed, he is being asked right now.

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{c}
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{c}
\textbf{The Burial}
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

To bury the dead, which means to hide the body completely underneath the dirt of the ground, is \textit{Fardh Kifayah} (a communal obligation: at least some of the Muslims must perform it). Allâh Almighty says:
Then He causes Him to die, and puts him in his grave.[1] There are certain rulings regarding the Islamic burial:

1) The grave should be deep enough to prevent predators and birds from reaching the body and to prevent the odor of the body from harming those above the ground. The Prophet ﷺ said:

»أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخْرِيْواْ أَعْمَنُواْ أَخ� "Dig, dig deep, do it well, and bury two or three in one grave.”

His Companions asked, “Who should we place first, O Messenger of Allâh ﷺ?” He said:

»أَلْقُواْ أَكْتُبَتِهِمْ فِي ٍّلَٰهِ "Give precedence to whoever from them had more of the Qur’an with him.” (Recorded by At-Tirmithi who graded it Sahîh)

No more than one body should be buried in a single grave except when necessary, such as when there are a lot of bodies (which happens very often after battles).

2) A hole in the side of the grave should be dug, though a hole in the middle of the grave is permitted; the latter is called a Labd, while the former is called a Shaqq. The Prophet ﷺ said:

»الْأَحْدَ اَلْبَنْيَانِ ِّلَبْدَ "The Labd is for us while the Shaqq is for others.

Recorded by Ahmad, Abu Dawûd, and At-Tirmithi. In its chain is a disparaged narrator but some of the people of knowledge consider it Sahâb.

3) Each person who is present for the burial should pour down dirt three times with his hands; he should throw the dirt into the grave from the side where the head of the deceased is, for that is what the Prophet ﷺ is described as having done as recorded by Ibn Majah with a chain that there is no harm in.

[1] (Abasa 80:21)
4) The corpse should be placed in the grave from the back, if possible; then he should be directed to face the Qiblah and placed on his right side. The knot of his shroud should be loosened, but his face should not be exposed. The person placing the corpse down says, “In the Name of Allah, upon the way of the Messenger of Allah ﷺ,” for that is what the Prophet ﷺ said. (Recorded by Abu Dawud and Al-Hakim who graded it Sahih)

5) The woman’s grave should be covered with some kind of a cloth while she is being placed in the grave and in the Laid. Our pious predecessors would do that for women, but not for men.

---

Ninth: If one has not prayed over the deceased before the burial, it is legislated for him to pray over it after the burial, because the Prophet ﷺ did that; however, it must be performed within the period of a month. If the period is longer than that, then it is not legislated to pray over the grave, because it has not been reported that the Prophet ﷺ prayed over a grave when more than one month expired after the burial.

Tenth: It is not permissible for the relatives of the deceased to prepare food for others; the noble Companion, Jarir bin ‘Abdullah Al-Bajali, may Allah be pleased with him, said, “We used to consider gathering at the place of the deceased’s relatives and the preparation of food after the burial as being a form of Niyyabah (wailing).” (Recorded by Imam Ahmad with a Hasan chain)

While it is forbidden for the relatives of the deceased to prepare food for others, others may prepare food for them, especially in the case of relatives and neighbors, because it then becomes recommended. When the Prophet ﷺ heard
about the death of Ja'far bin Abi Talib, may Allâh be pleased with him, in Syria, he ordered his family to prepare food for the family of Ja'far; he said:

"إِنَّا أَنَاَهِمُّ مَا يَشَاءُهُمْ"

A matter has come to them that preoccupies them.

It is not wrong for the relatives of the deceased to invite neighbors or others to partake in the food that was given to them; we know of no time limit for that in the Shari'ah.

Eleventh: A woman is not allowed to mourn over the deceased for more than three days unless the deceased is her husband, in which case she must mourn for four months and ten days; but if she is pregnant, her mourning continues only until she delivers her baby. Both these rulings are based on the authentic Sunnah.

As for a man, he is not allowed to mourn at all, not for his relatives and not for anyone else.

Twelfth: It is legislated for men to visit graves every now and then, to supplicate for the deceased, to ask Allâh to have mercy on them, and to remember death and what comes after it. The Prophet ﷺ said:

"أَوْفُواْ الْجَهَرِ، إِنَّهَا تَذَكَّرُكُمْ عَنِ الْأَجَلِّ"

Visit graves, for verily, doing so will remind you of the Hereafter. (Recorded by Imam Muslim in his Sahîh)

The Prophet ﷺ taught his Companions to say when they visit the graves:

"سَلَّمُواْ عَلَيْهِمْ أَهْلَ الْجَهَرِ مِنِّيِّ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَالْمُسْلِمِينَ، وَإِنِّيْ إِنِّيْ سَأَلَ اللَّهُ يَكُمْ لَجِئْتُونَ، نَسَأَلَ اللَّهُ لَنَا وَلَكُمْ الْغَفَآءَةَ، بَرَحْتُمُ اللَّهُمَّ عَلَىِّ الْمُؤْمِنِينَ وَالْمُسْلِمِينَ"

Peace be upon you all, O inhabitants of the graves, among the believers and the Muslims. Verily we will, Allâh willing, be
united with you, we ask Allâh for well-being for us and you. May Allâh have mercy on those that parted early from us and those that parted late.

As for women, it is not for them to visit graves, for the Prophet ﷺ cursed females who visit graves. Also, it is feared that by their visits, trials may result, not to mention their lack of patience. Similarly, they may not follow the funeral procession to the graveyard because the Prophet ﷺ forbade them from doing so. The funeral prayer, however, whether it is performed in the Ma'jid or anywhere else, is legislated for both men and women.

This is the last of what has been compiled here.

O Allâh, send prayers and salutations on Muhammad, his family, and his Companions.

*************
Study Questions

To make the book more beneficial and to allow for the material to sink into the minds of students, we have put together these questions, which may be used for competitions regarding the understanding of this book — if Allâh wills:

1) What should one do if, when as a youngster, he missed out on the opportunity of learning? And what is your obligation to those of your relatives and elders who missed that opportunity? How should you deal with them when you are teaching them, and who is your example in that regard?

2) What is the ruling for learning that which Allâh has made obligatory upon every Muslim, and how should one go about learning those matters?

3) Using a minimum of words, Rabî’ bin ‘Amir explained the task of the Messenger’s mission and the duty for the Muslims after him. Discuss what Rabî’ said to Rustum of Persia.

4) Islam is the final religion and it came to put matters in their proper place. Discuss this statement, clarifying the importance of the Messenger’s mission.

5) Despite the merciless attack upon Islam, one sees that people are entering the fold of Islam in flocks. What is the reason for this phenomenon?

6) The questions regarding the Tafsîr of the chapters studied follow one pattern:

i) Read Surah [...]; recite it correctly, applying the rules of Tafsîr (rules of reciting the Qur’an). Why is Surah [...] thus called? How does it relate to the chapter before it? What is its subject matter? Explain the meaning of the following words found in it: ...., ...., ...., ....? And in what context or for what reason was the chapter revealed?

ii) Without exceeding three lines, discuss its overall meaning. Then enumerate those benefits that we can derive from it.

7) What is the ruling regarding the Isti’âthab and the Basmalab for the one who is praying? When does he read them? And what is the meaning of Isti’âthab? Explain the meaning of Ar-Rahman and Ar-Rahim, clarifying the difference between the two. And
what is the wisdom behind the *Ist'iihab*?  

8) Enumerate the pillars of Islam, explaining the pillar "*La'a Ilaha Ilallah*," its conditions, and its meaning.  

9) What are the virtues of the two testimonies, and what is their status?  

10) Define prayer. What is its ruling and what is the ruling regarding one who abandons it?  

11) Discuss the significance of *Zakat*, fasting Ramadhan, and *Hajj* for the Muslim.  

12) Define *Iman*, both according to its meaning in the Arabic language and its meaning in the *Shari'ah*.  

13) Do deeds come under the heading of *Iman*? Support your answer with proof.  

14) What are the false implications that result from taking deeds outside of the term *Iman*?  

15) Our pious predecessors gave certain proofs which show that *Iman* increases and decreases—mention some of those proofs.  

16) How do we infer from the following proofs the fact that *Iman* both increases and decreases:  
   i) The Prophetﷺ said:  
   
   "الأيمنُ يَهْبُ وَسِقُونُ سُبْحَانَ أَعَالَاهَا قُوْلُ لا إِلَى إِلَهٍ إِلَّا اللَّهُ وَأَنْثَا إِفْعَالِهِ
   الأَذَى عَنِ الطَّرِيقِ وَالْحَيَاءِ شَعْبَةَ فَنِ الإِيَمانَ"  

   *Iman* consists of more than seventy branches; the highest of them is the saying, "*La'a Ilaha Ilallah*" and the lowest of them is removing something harmful from the path; and modesty (*Haya*) is one of the branches of *Iman*.  

   ii) The Prophetﷺ said:  
   
   "فَمَنْ رَأَى وَلَكُمْ مَنْ كَرَرَ الْبُغْرَةَ وَهُوَ يَبِعُو... الحديث"  

   Whoever from you sees an evil, let him change it with his hand...  

17) In what matter does the religion come together? Support your answer with proof.  

18) What is the meaning of Islam? Support your answer with proof.
19) When do ‘Iman’ and ‘Islam’ have one meaning? And when are their meanings different from one another?

20) What is the meaning of Iman? Support your answer with proof.

21) Can we designate the term Iman for outwardly performed deeds, and how so?

22) When does one complete the Iman and Islam that are obligatory upon him?

23) What do we mean by the “branches” in “the branches of Iman”? What is the difference between the branches of Iman and its pillars?

24) Are the pillars of Iman and its branches at one level in terms of belief and action?

25) Can the qualities of Iman and hypocrisy be combined in one person?

26) Give one proof to show that rejecting An-Rububiyyah negates one’s faith.

27) What is the difference between rejecting An-Rububiyyah and rejecting the fact that Allâh deserves worship?

28) What is the ruling regarding taking intermediaries or intercessors in the worship of Allâh?

29) Is it correct to seek judgement from other than Allâh’s Shari’ah? Support your answer with proof.

30) Clarify the ruling regarding the following matters, supporting your answer with proof.
   i) Mocking Allâh, the Qur’an, or His Messenger — even if one does so in a joking manner.
   ii) Believing that a specific person may go outside of the boundaries of Muhammad’s guidance.
   iii) Believing that some people are exempt from all or some religious duties.

31) Give examples of those deeds that nullify Iman.

32) Define both the major and the minor sin, giving an example for each. And support your answer with proof.

33) What is the view of the People of Sunnah regarding one who
Study Questions

perpetrates a major sin?
34) What is a sin? And when does a sin cause one to exit from the religion?
35) What effect does a sin have on one’s faith?
36) Why did the wife of Fir‘awn disdain those worldly pleasures she had? And why did she invoke Allāh to save her from Fir‘awn and his deeds?
37) In what way does faith in the Unseen cause love to flourish in society?
38) What are the implications of having faith in Allāh?
39) What does Taubah Ar-Rubah'yyahab mean? And how does it differ from Taubah Al-Ulub’yyahab?
40) Has anyone from previous nations rejected Taubah Ar-Rubah'yyahab? Clarify.
41) What does it mean to have Iman in Allāh’s Names and Attributes?
42) What are the angels? What was the belief of the people of ignorance regarding them?
43) What is the ruling regarding belief in the angels? Support your answer with proof.
44) Iman in the angels comprises of certain matters — mention them.
45) Mention some of the tasks of specific angels — giving one proof for each task.
46) What is the relation of angels with:
   i) Mankind.
   ii) The believers.
   iii) The disbelievers.
47) There are many fruits that are reaped by having Iman in the angels; mention some of them.
48) What is the meaning of Kutub in the Arabic language? And as a term in the Shari'ah?
49) What is the ruling regarding Iman in the Books that Allāh sent down to His Messengers? Support your answer by giving one
50) What are the matters that come under Iman in the Books?

51) Mention a few proofs that point to the distortion that occurred in the Tawrah and the Injil.

52) The Books that the Jews and Christians possess today cannot be correctly ascribed to Allâh. Mention those proofs that confirm this statement. One of those proofs is a clear verse from the Qur’ân.

53) What is the meaning of Qur’ân in the Arabic language? And in the Sâra’îb? What does it mean to have Iman in the Qur’ân?

54) What do we mean when we say that the Qur’ân is Allâh’s Speech? Support your answer with proof.

55) Why did Allâh guarantee to preserve the Noble Qur’ân as opposed to the previously revealed Books? And what do we mean when we say that Allâh guarantees to preserve the Qur’ân?

56) Define Nabî (Prophet) according to its meaning in the Arabic language, and why is a Prophet called a Nabî?

57) What is the difference between a Nabî (Prophet) and a Rasul (Messenger)?

58) Is the status of Prophethood achieved through human efforts? What do we mean when we say that Prophethood is a divine gift from Allâh? Support your answer with proof.

59) Discuss some qualities of the Messengers, supporting your answer with proof.

60) What is the ruling on one having Iman in only some of the Messengers? And who is the best of the Messengers?

61) Is it obligatory to have Iman in those Prophets that weren’t mentioned in the Qur’ân?

62) What are the implications of having Iman in Muhammad ﷺ?

63) Mention proofs that point to the finality of Prophethood, and that Muhammad ﷺ is the final Prophet and Messenger.

64) What does Iman in the Hereafter signify?

65) The Messenger of Allâh ﷺ informed us of some events that will take place after death — mention some of them.
66) Explain how we affirm Iman in the Last Day in light of the following proofs:

a) The Statement of Allah:

"إِنَّ ائْتَيْنَاهُمَا وَأَلْقَيْنَاهُمَا هَادِيَّةً وَغَيْبَةً وَفَيْنَ مِنَ الَّذِينَ يُحَمِّلُونَ الْآخِرَةَ وَيَعْمَلُونَ صَالِحًا فَلَتَعْلَمُوا أَنَّ رَبَّهُمْ عِنْدَ رَبِّيْهِمْ

Verily, those who believe and those who are Christians and Jews, and Sabians, whoever believes in Allah and the Last Day and do righteous good deeds shall have their reward with their Lord.\[1\]

b) And:

"لَعَلَّكُمْ أَمْرُنَا تَوَّلَّوا وَمُنْعُوكُمْ بِمَا تَصْرَفَتُوا بِهِ لَمْ يَكُنْ مَنْ مَدْرَسٌ مُّنَّا وَهَذَا الْآخِرُ الْخَالِصُ لِلَّهِ وَالْكِتَابَ وَالْبَيِّنَاتِ وَمَا أَطْلَقْنَا عَلَيْهِ أَجْمَائْنَاءَ دُوَى الْخَتَامَ وَالْبَيِّنَاتِ

It is not Al-Biir (piety, righteousness, and each and every act of obedience to Allah, etc.) that you turn your faces towards east and (or) west (in prayers); but Al-Biir is (the quality of) the one who believes in Allah, the Last Day, the Angels, the Book, the Prophets and gives his wealth, in spite of love for it, to the kinsfolk, to the orphans, and to Al-Masakin (the poor), and to the wayfarer, and to those who ask, and to set slaves free...\[2\]

c) And:

"إِنَّ الْآخِرَةَ لَخَيْرٌ مَّبَالٌ حَيْثُ تَظِنُّونَ

Then (again), surely, you will be resurrected on the Day of Resurrection.\[3\]

d) When the Prophet ﷺ was asked about Iman, he ﷺ said:

"إِنَّمَا أُوتِينَا بِاللَّهِ وَمُلُوكِهِ وَرَسُولِهِ وَالْأَخَرَ مَا أُوتُّونَ بِحَبَّةٍ مَّمَّا خَلَقَ

To believe in Allâh, in His Angels, in His Books, in the Last Day, and to believe in Divine Preordainment (Al-Qadar), both the good and bad of it.

67) What is the ruling regarding Iman in the questioning of the two angels, and in the bliss and punishment of the grave? Mention proofs along with your answer.

68) What are the proofs that establish the coming of the Hour? Does anyone know when the Hour will come? Support your answer with proofs.

69) What is the difference between the greater signs of the Day of Judgement and the smaller signs? Give an example for each.

70) What does the Trumpet refer to? What are the results that will occur when it is blown into?

71) What does the Resurrection mean? What is the ruling for having Iman in it? Give proofs to support your answer.

72) What stance do the polytheists take regarding Iman in the Resurrection?

73) Refute those who reject the Resurrection, giving proof from the Shari'ah, as well as material and rational proof. Explain how those proofs refute their belief.

74) What is the Ha'ajib? What are the proofs that establish it?

75) Define some of the qualities of the Ha'ajib.

76) Define the Mizan (Scale of deeds). Is it real? Support your answer with proof.

77) What is the Sirat? Does anyone enter Paradise without having to cross over it? Support your answer with proof.

78) Mention certain proofs that establish the Sirat and its qualities.

79) What is the Shârâfâ'ah? What are its conditions? What prevents it from occurring?

80) Can people seek intercession from other than Allâh? Support your answer with proof.

81) What are the different kinds of Shârâfâ'ah? What kind is specific to the Prophet ﷺ?

82) What is meant by Paradise and Hell? Are they created? Support your answer with proof.
83) Where are Paradise and Hell located? Will they cease to exist one day? Support your answer with proof.

84) Who are the dwellers of Paradise, and who are dwellers of the Hellfire?

85) What does Al-Qadar mean? What does Iman in Al-Qadar mean? What is your proof?

86) What do we mean when we say that evil is not ascribed to Allâh Almighty?

87) How many levels of Iman in Al-Qadar are there? List the levels, giving proof for each.

88) What benefit lies in the prohibition of delving into the topic of Al-Qadar?

89) What is the belief of our pious predecessors regarding Divine Preordainment? Support your answer with proof.

90) Some may use Al-Qadar to argue that it is okay to leave Allâh’s Commands and Orders. What is the ruling regarding this view? Support your answer with proof.

91) Some people refer to Al-Qadar when they are afflicted with a hardship. What is the ruling regarding this practice and why? And what is your proof?

92) How does man differ from all other animals?

93) What is the purpose behind man being created? And what path has been laid out for him?

94) How is Iman considered to be life for the heart?

95) Why does Iman lead to peace and tranquility?

96) What effects does Iman in Al-Qadar and in recompense have on the individual and society?

97) Mention some of the effects of Iman in the life of the individual and society.

98) Discuss the different kinds of Shīrīn that the author mentioned, and clarify the ruling on the following:

i) Magic

ii) ʿAṣ-Ṣuqūṭa and ʿAṣ-Tamaʿīm

iii) ʿAṣ-Ruqūṣ
99) How many conditions are there for the prayer? Clarify the pillars and obligatory components of the prayer.

100) List some of the Sunnah actions and sayings of prayer.

101) Briefly outline those actions that render one's prayer void.

102) Clarify the obligatory actions of ablution, mentioning a proof for each action. And list the different ways in which one's ablution is nullified.

103) List the seven grave (or deadly) sins that the Prophet mentioned in a well-known Hadith.

104) List some of the manners and characteristics that Islam legislated for the Muslim. Discuss how a Muslim must apply those characteristics.

105) Discuss the funeral prayer, considering the following points:
   i) What should one do when visiting a sick person who is going through the pangs of death?
   ii) The ruling of writing a final testament for a sick person.
   iii) How to wash the dead.
   iv) How to enshroud the dead, both when the deceased is male or female.
   v) The ruling of praying over the deceased and how to perform the prayer.
   vi) Who should wash the dead? What if the deceased is male and dies among a group comprised purely of females, and what about the opposite?
   vii) What is the ruling for the Labd? How should one supplicate for the dead?

---

         ❀ ❀ ❀

---